COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, ITALIAN AND FRENCH

Learn & Compare 4 Languages Simultaneously

- Includes over 1000 illustrative examples
- Provides 560 easy-to-follow charts and tables
- Contains 138 geographical, historical, and cultural facts

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

Comparative Grammar of Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French

Learn and Compare 4 Languages Simultaneously

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

To all language lovers like me.

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

PC
59'
.P48
2018

CONTENTS

PREFACE TO THE LEARNER

"Aut inveniam viam aut faciam" -
I shall either find a way or make one

Hello, my friends.

Spanish: Hola, mis amigos.

Portuguese: Olá, meus amigos.

Italian: Ciao, i miei amici.

French: Salut, mes amis.

Nowadays thousands of grammar books, textbooks, outlines, references and language guides of Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are published year by year. However, all of them teach these languages separately. Here you will find a comparative grammar of the four major Romance languages together based on their grammatical and lexical similarities for you, lovers of foreign languages, to learn and compare Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French simultaneously. It is an audacious endeavor to find or create a novel way of learning to speak several languages and becoming a multilingual person.

Below I will discuss six reasons why I decided to write this book and why you need it. Also, I will try to answer such questions as whether it is possible and not confusing to learn several languages simultaneously, and why you should ever learn Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Six reasons why this book was written and why you need it.

1. I began studying the Romance languages in 2007. When I first started to learn the French language and literature at the Department of Romance and Germanic languages of Derzhavin

Tambov State University I found myself totally captivated by Latin-based languages.

In my second year, I took additional classes of Spanish and started learning Italian and Portuguese by myself. While studying these four languages, I gradually realized how incredibly similar Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are and how amazing it would be to have a special course which would enable students to learn them at the same time in order to get a certain level of knowledge of the four major Romance languages.

Since a university academic program would not offer courses like that, I started to search for a book that would teach Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French simultaneously but, to my surprise and regret, a book like that had never been written. So I decided to write a Comparative Grammar of Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French to use it in my own future courses.

This book is written for readers like you who are fond of or would like to learn Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French simultaneously or just to get an all-round knowledge of all these four Romance languages. It is designed not only for beginners who do not have an extensive knowledge of grammar, yet need a guide through the grammatical concepts of all mentioned above languages, but also intermediate and advanced students who would like to have a reference book of several Romance languages at once.

2. I spent many years learning these languages separately, which was a complete waste of time before I realized it. This book will hopefully save you a great deal of time and allow you to study and compare at a glance the four main Neo-Latin languages. How I wish I had a book like this ten years ago!

3. Global processes of integration, exchange of human resources, intellectual and material products, and information between countries show great progress in entering a period of multilingualism where knowledge of only one foreign language is no longer sufficient. The foundation of the European Union and creation of a common economic and social space between the countries and people of Europe gave rise to the issue of multilingualism and teaching and learning of multiple languages. Knowledge of foreign languages is fast becoming a necessary requirement for those who are involved in international business, tourism, culture and education. This book offers you four

languages to learn, which will make you feel at home wherever you go, whether as a tourist or businessman.

4. Learning several languages simultaneously or one by one will train and strengthen your memory and can help stave off such terrible diseases as Alzheimer's.

5. If you have never studied several languages at once before and you like challenges, then you should definitely try it. Because it is a really entertaining and challenging task to do.

6. Finally, this book will teach you how to say "house" in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French and the plural form of the word. You will know how to count in four languages and what sounds different animals make in these four languages.

Is it possible to learn several languages simultaneously?

Yes, it is. It is a well-known fact that all the Romance languages originated from Latin, or from Vulgar Latin to be precise. Vulgar Latin was spoken by ordinary citizens living throughout all the provinces of the Roman Empire.

Due to active expansion, the Romans managed to spread and popularize their language all over Western and Eastern Europe, making other nations and tribes speak Latin. By that time, the conquered nations already had their own languages and dialects and, therefore, the classical form of Latin gradually changed under the influence of the linguistic peculiarities and habits of local people. The changes were so dramatic that they eventually led to the development of the Romance languages, which retained significant grammatical and lexical similarities and mutual intelligibility.

Therefore, the significant grammatical and lexical convergence will allow the simultaneously study of several Romance languages.

Below are some examples that demonstrate apparent lexical similarities between Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Count from one to ten

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
un(o), una	um, uma	uno, una	un, une	*one*
dos	dois, duas	due	deux	*two*
tres	três	tre	trois	*three*
cuatro	quatro	quattro	quatre	*four*
cinco	cinco	cinque	cinq	*five*
seis	seis	sei	six	*six*
siete	sete	sette	sept	*seven*
ocho	oito	otto	huit	*eight*
nueve	nove	nove	neuf	*nine*
diez	dez	dieci	dix	*ten*

Several common verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
sonar	soar	sonare	sonner	*to ring*
haber (tener)	haver (ter)	avere	avoir	*to have*
hacer	fazer	fare	faire	*to do*
sentir	sentir	sentire	sentir	*to feel, to sense*

Some other commonly used verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hombre	homem	uomo	homme	*man*
pan	pão	pane	pain	*bread*
cielo	ceu	cielo	ciel	*sky*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hierba	erva	erba	herbe	*grass*
vivo	vivo	vivo	vif	*alive*
blanco	branco	bianco	blanc	*white*
venir	vir	venire	venir	*to come*

If Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are so similar,
would not it be confusing to learn them together?

The answer is no. In order to avoid mess and confusion in learning, I suggest 8 tips on how to effectively study these four languages:

1. To make the process of learning better structured and more effective, learn the grammatical rules and phrases of these four languages in a fixed and strict sequence. These languages have already been put in a strict order for you to learn. The sequence is this: at first you read a rule or phrase in Spanish => then in Portuguese => then Italian => and finally in French. You should get used to this particular sequence in order to avoid confusion.

2. As Leonardo da Vinci once said, "Study without desire spoils the memory, and it retains nothing that it takes in." Motivate yourself and develop an overwhelming and strong desire to learn and master Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Motivation and understanding of how important the knowledge of these languages is to you is the key to success. Constantly remind yourself why you need to learn several or all of these languages and where you are going to use them.

3. Try to read and memorize the rules of each chapter at least twice before starting with the next one. If you genuinely wish to improve your Spanish, Portuguese, Italian or French, return and revise each chapter over again. Practice makes perfect. Remember that.

4. While reading new rules, phrases and constructions, try to make up your own sentences and examples using the rules that you just learned.

5. Use this book with a pencil to underline rules or constructions that you feel are important and which you may use later on in conversation.

6. Revise comparative grammar of Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French from time to time. Because our brain tends to forget all the grammar rules we've learned so rapidly, we constantly need to refresh our memory by reviewing and repeating them at times.

7. Practice your Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and/or French in real conversations with native speakers no matter how good or bad you know those languages. Use these language every day and at every opportunity both in the streets and on the internet, on social networks or different online chats. Learning is an active process. You will never learn a language until you practice it with people.

8. Your final goal is to speak Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and/or French. Therefore, use your notebook or any device to record all the new words and phrases you hear while practicing your languages with people or watching TV or listening radio in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian or French.

Why you should learn Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

That is very simple. The Romance languages are the most widely spread in the world by number of speakers. Besides the most widely spoken languages, which are Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, there are also Catalan, Galician, Romansh, Romanian, Franco-Provençal, Sardinian and others that belong to the Romance languages. It is quite difficult to determine the exact number of languages belonging to the Romance group as there are no accurate methods of division between a "language" and a "dialect".

Nowadays around 7 billion people live on Earth and over 800 million people speak the Romance languages in Europe,

South and North America, Africa and Asia. Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are spoken in France, Switzerland, Belgium, Spain, Portugal, Italy and other European countries.

Spanish and Portuguese are natively spoken or enjoy official status in almost all the countries of South and Central America (Mexico, Colombia, Argentina, Venezuela, Peru, Ecuador, Chile, Cuba, Bolivia, Paraguay, Uruguay, Brazil, etc.). French, Portuguese and Spanish have official status in a wide range of countries in Africa. In Arabic countries of North Africa (mostly Morocco, Tunisia and Algeria) French is the second spoken language. People of Western and Central African countries (Guinea, Ivory Coast, Gabon, Central African Republic, Cameroon, Republic of the Congo, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Togo, Benin, Senegal, Mali, etc.) speak French as their native or second language. Spanish is the official language of Equatorial Guinea and Portuguese is the official language of six countries in Africa (Angola, Mozambique, Guinea-Bissau, Cape Verde and Sao Tome and Principe). In Asia, Portuguese is one of the official languages in Macau and East Timor.

There is a large number of television programs and radio programs broadcasting, countless books, newspapers, magazines and journals are published worldwide in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Furthermore, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are official languages of the European Union, the United Nations (Spanish and French), as well as many other international organizations, communities, congresses and conferences.

Thus, the Romance languages play a significant role in the world, arouse genuine interest and have obvious practical benefit for learners.

In conclusion, I would like to sincerely thank you for purchasing the book and your interest in it. I hope it will help you improve your languages. If I can help you in any way, please do not hesitate to contact me. I would be glad to answer any questions and share ideas related to multilingualism and learning multiple languages simultaneously. I also welcome any remarks from readers.

Mikhail Petrunin

Email: petrunin.mikh5@gmail.com

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

SYMBOLS

> – becomes, changes to

/ – or, alternative forms or meanings

Sp. – Spanish

Port. – Portuguese

It. – Italian

Fr. – French

Lat. – Latin

Braz. Port. – Brazilian Portuguese

Euro. Port. – European Portuguese

Masc. - Masculine

Fem. - Feminine

Pl. - Plural

Cons. - Consonant

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

Letter names and Pronunciations

The alphabet of the Romance languages is based on the Latin alphabet with several specific letters. The Spanish alphabet consists of 27 letters, Portuguese alphabet encompasses 26 letters, Italian alphabet has 21 letters and French alphabet includes 26 letters.

Remember that Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French pronunciation of some of the letters differ between particular regions and areas, especially between Peninsular and Latin American Spanish or European Portuguese and Brazilian Portuguese. The only way to pronounce and understand Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French correctly is to listen and try to copy native speakers.

However, below is the table that shows letters, their names and pronunciation in Spanish (Peninsular and Latin American), Portuguese (European and Brazilian), Italian and French:

Spanish			Portuguese			Italian			French		
Letter	Name	Phoneme	Letter	Name	Phoneme	Letter	Name	Phoneme	Letter	Name	Phoneme
Aa	a	/a/	Aa	á	/a/	Aa	a	/a/	Aa	a	/ɑ/
Bb	be	/b/	Bb	bê	/be/	Bb	bi	/b/	Bb	bé	/be/
Cc	ce	/k/ /θ/	Cc	cê	/se/	Cc	ci	/k/ or /tʃ/	Cc	cé	/se/

1

Spanish			Portuguese			Italian			French		
Dd	de	/d/	**Dd**	dê	/de/	**Dd**	di	/d/	**Dd**	dé	/de/
Ee	e	/e/	**Ee**	é or ê	/ɛ/, /e/	**Ee**	e	/e/ or /ɛ/	**Ee**	e	/ə/
Ff	efe	/f/	**Ff**	efe	/'ɛfi/	**Ff**	effe	/f/	**Ff**	effe	/ɛf/
Gg	ge	/g/ /x/	**Gg**	gê	/ʒe/	**Gg**	gi	/g/ or /dʒ/	**Gg**	gé	/ʒe/
Hh	hache	silent	**Hh**	agá	/a'ga/	**Hh**	acca	Ø silent	**Hh**	ache	/aʃ/
Ii	i	/i/	**Ii**	i	/i/	**Ii**	i	/i/ or /j/	**Ii**	i	/i/
Jj	jota	/x/	**Jj**	jota	/'ʒɔte/	—	—	—	**Jj**	ji	/ʒi/
Kk	ka	/k/	**Kk**	cá	/ka/	—	—	—	**Kk**	ka	/kɑ/
Ll	ele	/l/	**Ll**	ele	/'ɛli/	**Ll**	elle	/l/	**Ll**	elle	/ɛl/
Mm	eme	/m/	**Mm**	eme	/'emi/	**Mm**	emme	/m/	**Mm**	emme	/ɛm/
Nn	ene	/n/	**Nn**	ene	/'eni/	**Nn**	enne	/n/	**Nn**	enne	/ɛn/
Ññ	eñe	/ɲ/	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Spanish			Portuguese			Italian			French		
Oo	o	/o/	**Oo**	ó or ô	/ɔ/, /o/	**Oo**	o	/o/ or /ɔ/	**Oo**	o	/o/
Pp	pe	/p/	**Pp**	pê	/pe/	**Pp**	pi	/p/	**Pp**	pé	/pe/
Qq	cu	/k/	**Qq**	quê	/ke/	**Qq**	cu	/k/	**Qq**	qu	/ky/
Rr	erre	/ɾ/, /r/	**Rr**	erre or rê	/ˈɛʁi/	**Rr**	erre	/r/	**Rr**	erre	/ɛʁ/
Ss	ese	/s/	**Ss**	esse or s i	/ˈɛsi/	**Ss**	esse	/s/ or /z/	**Ss**	esse	/ɛs/
Tt	te	/t/	**Tt**	tê	/te/	**Tt**	ti	/t/	**Tt**	té	/te/
Uu	u	/u/	**Uu**	u	/u/	**Uu**	u	/u/ or /w/	**Uu**	u	/y/
Vv	uve, ve	/b/	**Vv**	vê	/ve/	**Vv**	vi, vu	/v/	**Vv**	vé	/ve/
Ww	uve (ve) doble	/gw/, /b/	**Ww**	dáblio or d uplo vê	/ˈdab liu/	—	—	—	**Ww**	dou ble vé	/dubl əve/
Xx	equis	/ks/, /x/, /s/	**Xx**	xis	/ʃis/	—	—	—	**Xx**	ixe	/iks/
Yy	ye, i grie ga	/ɟ/, /i/	**Yy**	ípsi lon	/ˈipsi lõ/	—	—	—	**Yy**	i gre c	/igʁe k/

3

Spanish			Portuguese			Italian			French		
Zz	zeta	/θ/	Zz	zê	/ze/	Zz	zeta	/ ts/ or / dz/	Zz	zède	/ zɛd/

NOTE:

Spanish

Despite the fact that the letters k and w are part of the Spanish alphabet, they are used only in loanwords.

Italian

The letters j, k, w, x and y are used for loanwords and foreign names.

French

The letters w and k are used only in loanwords and regional words.

Digraphs

The Romance languages use digraphs. Digraphs are pairs of letters that symbolize a single sound and are usually not included in the alphabet.

Study the following digraphs that exist in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Grapheme	**ch**	**ch**	**sc**	**ch**

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Pronunciation	/tʃ/	/ʃ/	1) /ʃ/ (before -i and -e); 2) /sk/ (before other letters)	/ʃ/
Example	o**ch**o	**ch**uva	1) **sci**alo; 2) **sc**alo	**ch**at
English approximation	As the English **ch**ur**ch**	As the English **sh**ip	As the English 1) **sh**ip; 2) **sk**y	As the English **sh**ip
Grapheme	**ll**	**lh**	**gli**	**ll**
Pronunciation	/ʎ/, [ʝ] or [dʒ] (depending on the dialect)	/ʎ/	/ʎ/ (before -i)	/j/
Example	**ll**ave	mu**lh**er	mi**gli**ore	bi**ll**e
English approximation	As the English mi**lli**on, **y**es or **J**ess	As the English mi**lli**on	As the English mi**lli**on	As the English **y**es

5

	Spanish	**Portuguese**	**Italian**	**French**
Grapheme	**qu**	**qu**	**sch**	**qu**
Pronunciation	/k, kʷ/	/k, kʷ/	/k/ (used before i, e)	/k/
Example	**qu**ise	**qu**ase	**sch**erno	**qu**and
English approximation	As the English scan	As the English scan	As the English scan	As the English scan
Grapheme	**gu**	**gu**	**gh**	——
Pronunciation	/g, gʷ/	/g, gʷ/	/g/ (used before i, e)	——
Example	**gu**erra	**gu**erra	**gh**iro	——
English approximation	As the English ago	As the English ago	As the English ago	——
Grapheme	**ñ***	**nh**	**gn**	**gn**
Pronunciation	/ɲ/	/ɲ/	/ɲ/	/ɲ/

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Example	mañana	amanha	guadagna re	gagner
English approximation	As the English canyon	As the English canyon	As the English canyon	As the English canyon
Grapheme	rr	rr	——	——
Pronunciation	/ʀ/	/ʀ/	——	——
Example	perro	carro	——	——
English approximation	trilled or rolled <r>	trilled <r>	——	——

*ñ is considered as a letter, not a digraph in Spanish. It is put in the table in order to demonstrate the sound ɲ.

Diacritics

A diacritic (diacritical mark or diacritical sign) is a glyph which is added to a letter.

Below are all the diacritics that are used in the Romance languages:

Diacritics	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
The acute	á, é, í, ó, ú	á, é, í, ó, ú	é, ó	é
The grave		à	à, è, ì, ò, ù	à, è, ù
The circumflex		â, ê, ô		ê
The cedilla		ç		ç
The diaeresis	ü			ë
The tilde	ñ	ã, õ		

NOTE:

Spanish

In Spanish, **the acute** is used on a vowel in a stressed syllable. It's usually used in words which have irregular stress patterns. Furthermore, in Spanish the acute can also be used: 1) to distinguish words with similar spelling, for example: **si** - if and **sí** - yes. 2) to distinguish interrogative and exclamatory pronouns, for instance: **donde** - where and **¿dónde?** - where?.

Spanish uses diaeresis only over **u** - **ü** so that it is pronounced as /w/ in the combinations **gue** and **gui**, where **u** is usually silent. Observe the following: **vergüenza** - shame.

Unlike many other letters that use diacritic marks in Spanish **ñ** is considered a letter. It is put in the table in order to demonstrate that it is formed by placing a tilde (also referred to as virgulilla in Spanish) on top of **n** (upper- or lowercase).

8

Portuguese

In Portuguese, the acute and **the circumflex** show stress and vowel height. **The grave** denotes **crasis**. **The tilde** indicates nasalization. **The cedilla** represents the of a historical palatalization.

Italian

In Italian, **the acute** and **the grave** are used to mark a stressed syllable. Moreover, **the acute** can also be used to distinguish between words that are spelled similarly, for example: **e** - and; **è** - is.

French

In French, **the grave** indicates the sound /ɛ/ when over **e** - **è**, for instance: **mère** - mother. Also, it can be used to distinguish words that have similar pronunciation, for instance: **a** - has and **à** - to. **The acute** can only be used over é in order to make the sound /e/: **épée** - sword. **The circumflex** normally marks an **s**, which once followed the vowel in Latin. Observe the following: **fête** - party in French used to be **festum** in Latin. **The cedilla** transforms hard **c** (before the vowels a, o and u) into **ç**, which is pronounced as /s/, for example: **ça** - that. **The diaeresis** means that two adjacent vowels should be pronounced separately (without diaeresis they would be pronounced as one). Study the following: **baïonnette** - bayonet.

9

Diphthongs

Diphthong is a combination of two different vowels sounds within the same syllable, for example: *ow [əu]* -> low. Knowing diphthongs will help learners with pronunciation and spelling.

The table below demonstrates diphthongs used in the Romance languages:

Spanish		Portuguese		Italian		French	
Dipht hong	*Pronu nciati on*	*Dipht hong*	*Pronu nciati on*	*Dipht hong*	*Pronu nciati on*	*Dipht hong*	*Pronu nciati on*
falling		*oral*		*falling*		*diphthongs*	
ai	/ai/	ai, ái	/aj/	ai	/ai/	ai	/ɛ,e/
au	/au/	au, áu	/aw/	au	/au/	au	/o/
ey	/ei/	ei, êi	/ej/	ei	/ei/	ei	/ɛ/
eu	/eu/	eu, éu	/ew/ /ɛw/	eu	/eu/	eu	/œ,ø/
oy	/oi/	oi, ói	/ɲ/	oi	/oi/	oi	/wa/ /wɛ/
ou	/ou/	ou	/ow/	____	____	ou	/u,w/
uy	/ui/	____	____	ui	/ui/	ui	/ɥi/ /ɥɛ/
rising		____	____	rising		____	____
ia	/ja/	____	____	ia	/ja/	____	____

Spanish		Portuguese		Italian		French	
ie	/je/	____	____	ie	/je/	ie, iè	/jɛ/ /jɛ/
io	/jo/	____	____	io	/jo/	____	____
iu	/ju/	iu	/iw/	iu	/ju/	____	____
ua	/wa/	ua	/wa/	ua	/wa/	____	____
ue	/we/	ue	/we/	ue	/we/	____	____
ui	/wi/	ui, uí	/wi/	ui	/wi/	____	____
uo	/wo/	uo	/wo/ /wɔ/ /wu/	uo	/wo/	____	____
____	____	nasal		____	____	____	____
____	____	ãe	/ɐj/	____	____	____	____
____	____	ão	/ɐw/	____	____	____	____
____	____	õe	/õj/	____	____	____	____

NOTE:
French diphthongs are also considered to be vocalic digraphs in some grammar books.

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

A noun is a word that names a living being, different things or ideas, for instance, man, prosperity, shop.

Gender of Nouns

Latin, as a forefather of modern Romance languages, had three genders, which were masculine, feminine and neuter. After Latin ceased its existence most words that belonged to masculine and feminine retained the same gender later on in French, Italian, Spanish and Portuguese, although there are still some exceptions. The Latin neuter gender most often became masculine in today's modern Romance languages.

Thus, unlike Latin, the daughter languages, which are Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, ended up having only two genders: masculine and feminine.

Nouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French referring to a man, such as brother, son, father, etc., are generally masculine. Those that were associated with a woman, such as sister, daughter, mother, etc., are generally feminine.

Did you know?

Mexico is the largest Spanish-speaking country with over 127 million people.

However, there is a general rule helping to identify the gender of nouns, as they are classified into gender groups in accordance with their endings. In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian most nouns that end in *−o* are masculine, and almost all nouns ending in *−a* are feminine.

NOTE:

In French, unlike the above-mentioned languages, it is not so easy to identify gender by noun ending. However, most nouns form their feminine gender by

adding −e to the end of the noun (in this case the last consonant is pronounced). To learn gender effectively one should memorize nouns along with their definite article in French.

Below is the table demonstrating masculine and feminine endings in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian		French	
masc.	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*
-o	**-a**	**N/A**	**-e**

Example:

	Spanish	**Portuguese**	**Italian**	**French**	**English**
masc,	edificio	edifício	edificio	bâtiment	building
femi.	puerta	porta	porta	porte	door

Nevertheless, this rule has a number of exceptions:

1. Words derived from Greek and ending in *−ma, −ta* (in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian) and *−me, −at* (in French), are masculine:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el aroma	o aroma	l'aroma	l'arome	*aroma*
el clima	o clima	il clima	le climat	*climate*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el diagrama	o diagrama	il diagramma	le diagramme	*diagram*
el dilema	o dilema	il dilemma	le dilemme	*dilemma*
el diploma	o diploma	il diploma	le diplôme	*diploma*
el dogma	o dogma	il dogma	le dogme	*dogma*
el drama	o drama	il dramma	le drame	*drama*
el emblema	o emblema	l'emblema	l'emblème	*emblem*
el enigma	o enigma	l'enigma	*l'énigme	*enigma*
el esquema	o esquema	lo schema	le schème	*scheme*
el fantasma	o fantasma	il fantasma	le phantôme	*ghost*
el holograma	o holograma	l'ologramma	le hologramme	*hologram*
el idioma	o idioma	l'idioma	l'idiome (le langage)	*language*
el poema	o poema	il poema	le poème	*poem*
el poeta	o poeta	il poeta	le poète	*poet*
el problema	o problema	il problema	le problème	*problem*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el programa	o programa	il programma	le programme	*program*
el síntoma	o sintoma	il sintomo	le symptôme	*symptom*
el sistema	o sistema	il sistema	le système	*system*
el telegrama	o telegrama	il telegramma	le télégramme	*telegram*
el tema	o tema	il tema	le thème	*theme/ topic*
el trauma	o trauma	il trauma	le trauma	*trauma*

NOTE:

*In French the noun **l'énigme** is feminine.*

1. In Spanish and Portuguese there are also several nouns ending in −*a* that are *masculine*:

Sp. el map**a**; Port. o map**a** − map

Sp. el dí**a**; Port. o di**a** − day

Sp. el sof**á**; Port. o sof**á** − sofa

Sp. el planet**a**; Port. o planet**a** - planet

NOTE:

*In French such words as **map** and **planet** are <u>feminine</u> (Fr. **la carte** − map, la planète −planet). While **day** and **sofa** are <u>masculine</u> (Fr. **le jour** − day, **le sofa** − sofa).*

*In Italian the word **map** is feminine (It. **la mappa** − map), whereas **day, sofa** and*

planet are *masculine:* (It. *il giorno* – day, It. *lo sofa* – sofa, *il planeta* – planet).

2. Several nouns ending in –*o* or a **consonant** are *feminine* in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Sp. la mano, Port. a mão, It. la mano, Fr. la main – hand;

Sp. la moto, Port. a moto, It. la moto, Fr. la moto – motorcycle;

Sp. la foto, Port. a foto, It. la foto, Fr. la photo – photograph;

Sp. la radio, Port. o rádio, It. la radio, Fr. la radio — radio.

NOTE:

In Portuguese the noun **o rádio** is *masculine*.

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French nouns that end in –*e* or a **consonant** are *either gender*. This is mainly owing to the fact that there is a vast number of both masculine and feminine nouns that end in –*e* or a **consonant**. Below are examples of some common masculine and feminine nouns ending in –*e* or a **consonant**.

For instance, the following words ending in –*e* or **consonant** (*l, r, s(-i), n, m, d*) are *masculine*:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el café	o café	il caffe	le café	*coffee*
el puente	*a ponte	il ponte	le pont	*bridge*
el mes	o mês	il mese	le mois	*month*
el animal	o animal	l'animale	le animal	*animal*
el país	o país	il paese	le pays	*country*
el pie	o pé	il piede	le pied	*foot*

16

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el mar	o mar	il mare	*la mer*	sea

NOTE:

*In Portuguese the noun **a ponte** is feminine.*

*In French the noun **la mer** is feminine.*

Conversely, the following nouns that end in −*e* or **consonant** (*l*, *r*, *s(-i)*, *n*, *m*, *d*) are feminine:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la base	a base	la base	la base	*base*
la clase	a clase	la classe	la classe	*class*
el hambre	a fome	la fame	la faim	*hunger*
la muerte	a morte	la morte	*la mort*	*death*
la noche	a noite	la notte	*la nuit*	*night*
la parte	a parte	la parte	la partie	*part*
la crisis	a crise	la crisi	la crise	*crisis*
la elipsis	a elipse	l'ellissi	l'ellipse	*ellipsis*
la tesis	a tese	la tesi	la thèse	*thesis*
la carne	a carne	la carne	la viande	*meat*
la flor	a flor	*il fiore*	la fleur	*flower*

NOTE:

*In Spanish the noun **el hambre** is masculine.*

> *In Italian the noun **il fiore** is <u>masculine</u>.*
> *Even though French nouns **la mort** and **la**
> **nuit** end in t, they retain the <u>feminine</u>.*

The above demonstrates that French words ending in −**e**
are mostly <u>feminine</u>, which proves the general rule.

Nouns having the following endings, which are
predominantly common and typical for Spanish, Portuguese,
Italian and French, are usually <u>masculine</u>:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
-o (el viento)	**-o** (o vento)	**-o** (il vento)	**-** (le vent)
-ismo (el periodismo)	**-ismo** (o jornalismo)	**-ismo** (il giornalismo)	**-isme** (le journalisme)
-asmo (el sarcasmo)	**-asmo** (o sarcasmo)	**-asmo** (el sarcasmo)	**-asme** (le sarcasme)
-mento (el momento)	**-mento** (o momento)	**-ment, -** **mento** (il momento)	**-ment** (le moment)
-al (el general)	**-al** (o general)	**-ale** (il generale)	**-al** (le général)
-aculo (el espectáculo)	**-áculo** (o espetáculo)	**-acolo** (lo spettacolo)	**-acle** (le spectacle)
-in (el jardín)	**-im** (o jardim)	**-ino** (il giardino)	**-in** (le jardin)
-ón (el camión, el limón)	**-ão** (o caminhão, o limão)	**-on, -one** (il camion, il limone)	**-on** (le camion, le citron)
-aje (el garaje)	**-em** (*<u>a garagem</u>)	**-age** (il garage)	**-age** (le garage)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
-or (el interruptor)	**-or** (o interruptor)	**-ore** (l'interruttore)	**-eur** (l'interrupteur)

NOTE:

In Portuguese the noun **a garagem** is feminine.

However, the French system of noun flexion is considered to be more difficult than similar one of other Romance languages. It is worth considering the endings that refer to masculine gender in French: *-eau, -ier, -teur, -ail, -ard, -as, -at, -et, -is, -on, -aire, -oir.*

Nouns with the following endings are usually *feminine*:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
-ción, -sión (producción, formación, decisión)	**-ção, -são** (produção, formação, decisão)	**-zione, -sione** (produzione, formazione, decisione)	**-tion, -sion** (production, formation, décision)
-d, -ud, -dad (verdad, virtud)	**-ude -dade** (verdade, virtude)	**-tù, -tà** (verità, virtù)	**-té, -tude** (vérité, certitude)
-az, -ez, -oz (paz, voz, vez)	**-az, -ez, -oz** (paz, voz, vez)	**-ce** (pace, voce)	**-x** (paix, voix)
-encia (concurrencia)	**-ência** (concorrência)	**-enza** (conoscenza, concorrenza)	**-ance, -ence** (connaissance, concurrence)
-cie (especie)	**-cies** (espécies)	**-cie** (specie)	**-èce** (espèce)

Forming the Feminine

Most Spanish, Portuguese and Italian nouns that end in *–o* form their feminine by changing the ending into *–a*. The French feminine is formed by changing endings into *–e.*

Nouns ending in a consonant form the feminine by adding *–a* in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian and *–e* in French.

The table shows the ways of forming the feminine in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian		French	
masc.	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*
-o	-a	N\A	-e
-cons.	+a	-cons.	+e

It is extremely important to pay particular attention to the formation of the feminine in French, as it requires the alteration of a noun stem.

Masculine	**Feminine**
-eur un dans**eur** - *danser*	**-euse** une dans**euse** - *danser*
-teur un institu**teur** - *teacher*	**-trice** une institu**trice** - *teacher*
-f un veu**f** - *widower*	**-ve** une veu**ve** - *widow*
-x un épou**x** - *spouse*	**-se** une épou**se** - *spouse*
-eau un jum**eau** - *twin*	**-elle** une jum**elle** - *twin*

-t un chat - *cat (male)*   -tte une chatte - *cat (female)*

-er, -ier un écolier -   -ière une écolière - *schoolchild*
schoolchild

NOTE:

In French nasal vowels that end in -en, -ien, -on, -ion, -an stop being so, and while forming the feminine the final consonant doubles: -nne (ex. Fr, le chien - la chienne - dog - bitch).

We can see from the table that French differs in terms of forming the feminine of nouns from the other three Roman languages.

Many words designating titles and professions form the feminine gender by the use of typically feminine endings: Sp. -esa, -isa, -ina, -triz, Port. -esa, -essa, -isa, -ina, -triz; It. -essa, -ina, -trice; Fr. -esse, -ïne, -trice, -teuse.

Duke– Duchess   *Hero - Heroine*

Sp. (*-esa*) el duque – la   Sp. (*-ina*) el héroe – la
    duquesa;   heroína;

Port. (*-esa*) o duque – a   Port. (*-ina*) o herói – a
    duquesa;   heroína;

It. (*-essa*) il duca – la   It. (*-ina*) l'eroe – l'eroina;
    duchessa;
                                    Fr. (*-ïne*) l'héros – l'héroïne.
Fr. (*-esse*) le duc – la
    duchesse.

Actor - Actress   *Poet - Poetess*

Sp. (*-triz*) el actor – la ac*triz*;

Port. (*-triz*) o ator – a a*triz*;

It. (*-trice*) il attore – l'at*trice*;

Fr. (*-trice*) l'acteur – l'ac*trice*.

Sp. (*-isa*) el poeta – la poet*isa*;

Port. (*-isa*) o poeta – a poet*isa*;

It. (*-essa*) il poeta – la poet*essa*;

Fr. (*-esse*) le poète – la poét*esse*.

There are also pairs of words denoting male and female:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el hombre	o homem	il uomo	l'homme	*man*
la mujer	a mulher	la donna	la femme	*woman*
el marido	o marido	il marito	le mari	*husband*
la esposa	a esposa	la sposa	l'épouse	*wife*
el muchacho	o rapaz	il ragazzo	le garçon	*boy*
la muchacha	a rapariga	la ragazza	la fille	*girl*
el padre	o pai	il padre	le père	*father*
la madre	a mãe	la madre	la mère	*mother*
la reina	a rainha	la regina	la reine	*queen*
el caballo	o cavalo	il cavallo	le cheval	*horse*
la yegua	a égua	la giumenta	la jument	*mare*
el toro	o boi	il toro	le taureau	*bull*
la vaca	a vaca	la vacca	la vache	*cow*
el carnero	o carneiro	il montone	le mouton	*ram*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la oveja	a ovelha	la pecora	la brebis	*ewe*
el gallo	o galo	il gallo	le coq	*cockerel, rooster*
la gallina	a galinha	la gallina	la poule	*hen*

Plural Forms of Nouns

Did you know?

Italian isn't only spoken in Italy. It has official or co-official status in Switzerland, San Marino, the Vatican City and Slovenia.

Most Spanish, Portuguese and French nouns form their plural by adding an **-s**. In Italian, nouns form the plural by changing the masculine ending **-o** to **-i**, and the feminine ending **-a** is changed to **-e**. There are also some nouns ending in **-e**. The plural forms of these nouns is formed by changing the **-e** to **-i** (regardless of the gender).

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
masculine singular	libr**o**	livr**o**	libr**o**	livre
masculine plural	libr**os**	livr**os**	libr**i**	livre**s**
feminine singular	págin**a**	págin**a**	pagin**a**	pag**e**
feminine plural	págin**as**	págin**as**	pagin**e**	page**s**

Besides the general rules presented the above, there are also other ways of forming the plural in Spanish, Portuguese Italian and French. Each of these considered Romance languages has its special cases of forming the plural, which require particular consideration, as this phenomenon significantly distinguishes one from the other without leaving any possibility of simultaneous comparison.

Special Cases of Forming the Plural Nouns

Spanish

In this case, Spanish language is by far the simplest for learning, as it has the least number of divergent forms from the general ways of forming the plural of nouns.

- Nouns ending in a consonant, *−y* or a stressed vowel (except − *é*), form the plural by adding the *−es*:

> **Did you know?**
>
> *Kinshasa (12 million) is the world's largest French speaking city, ahead of Paris (over 11 million), Abidjan (4.8 million) and Montréal (3.6 million).*

el país − los países − country − countries;

la ciudad − las ciudades − city − cities;

el rey − los reyes − king − kings;

la ley − las leyes − law − laws;

el rubí − los rubies − ruby − rubies

- It is notable that the nouns ending in −z, change the −z to −c while forming the plural.

la voz − las voces − voice − voices.

la vez − las veces − time − times.

Portuguese

The Portuguese language has a wide number of ways of forming the plural of nouns.

Below is a table showing all the rules of forming the plural.

Singular	Plural	Example
-ão	ões -ães (to be remembered) -ãos (to be remembered)	a acç**ão** – as acç**ões** (European Portuguese) a aç**ão** – as aç**ões** (Brazilian Portuguese) (*action - actions*); o c**ão** – os c**ães** (*dog - dogs*); o rm**ão** – os irm**ãos** (*brother - brothers*).
-em, -im, -om, -um	-ns	a imag**em** – as imag**ens** - (*image - images*)
-al, -ol, -ul	-ais, -is, -uis	o anim**al** – os anim**ais** - (*animal - animals*)
-el, -il (unstressed)	-eis	o an**el** – os an**éis** (*ring - rings*)
-il (stressed.)	-is	o carr**il** – os carr**is** (*rail - rails*)
-n, -r, -z, -s	+es	o rapa**z** – os rapa**zes** (*guy - guys*)

- As we can see from the table the majority of nouns ending in – *ão* form their plural by changing the ending into –*ões*:

o cora**ção** - os cora**ções** - heart - hearts

The following nouns add **–ães** and **–ãos** endings when forming the plural in Portuguese:

o p**ão** – os p**ães** – bread – loaves of bread

o alem**ão** – os alem**ães** – the German – the Germans

a m**ão** – as m**ãos** – hand – hands

Italian

.   The Italian language also has various peculiarities while forming noun plurals. It is necessary to consider them as it prevents the learners from spelling and grammatical mistakes.

- There are many nouns ending in **–ista** that refer to professions. If these nouns refer to a man they take the ending **–isti** in the plural and when they refer to a woman these nouns end in **–iste** in the plural. Below are the examples demonstrating this rule:

Masculine	Feminine
Il giornal**ista** – i giornal**isti**	la giornal**ista** – le giornal**iste**
Il dent**ista** – i dent**isti**	la dent**ista** – le dent**isti**
il farmac**ista** – i farmac**isti**	la farmac**ista** – le farmac**iste**

- Nouns ending in **–ca** and **–ga** form their plural in **–chi** and **–ghi** if masculine, in **–che** and **–ghe** if feminine, thus retaining the velar consonant \k\ and \g\ of the singular.

Masculine	**Feminine**
Il monar*ca* – i monar*chi* – monarch	la bar*ca* – le bar*che* – boat
Il patriar*ca* – i patriar*chi* – patriarch	la basili*ca* – le basili*che*
il colle*ga* – i colle*ghi* – colleague	l'ami*ca* – le ami*che* – friend
lo strate*ga* – gli strate*ghi* - strategist	la mos*ca* – le mos*che* – fly
	la pes*ca* – le pes*che* - peach

NOTE:

*In Italian **Belga** (the Belgian) loses the hard sound in the masculine plural: **Belgi**; but keeps it in the feminine: **Belghe**.*

- Feminine nouns that end in –*cia* and –*gia* (with an unstressed *i*) form their plural in –*ce* and –*ge*.

> la boc*cia* – le boc*ce* – carafe
>
> la doc*cia* – le doc*ce* – shower
>
> la piog*gia* – le piog*ge* – rain
>
> la provin*cia* – le provin*ce* – province
>
> la vali*gia* – le vali*ge* – suitcase

- Nouns ending in -*cia* and -*gia* (with a stressed *i*) form regular plurals with -*cie* and -*gie*:

> la farma*cia* – le farma*cie* – drugstore
>
> la s*cia* – le s*cie* – trail
>
> la bu*gia* – le bu*gie* – lie
>
> l'aller*gia* – le aller*gie* – allergy

27

Below is a table showing the summarized information for the three previous rules of forming the plural:

Singular	Plural	
	masc.	*fem.*
-co, -go (masc.); -ca, -ga (fem.)	**-chi, -ghi**	**-che, -ghe**
-cia, -gia (*i* unstressed)		**−ce, −ge**
-cìa, -gìa (*i* stressed)		**-cìe, -gìe**

- Some masculine and feminine nouns that end with a stressed vowel do not alter in the plural:

Did you know?

Portuguese is the sixth most spoken language in the world. It is spoken by 275 million people worldwide.

la città - le città – *city*

la tribù – le tribù – *tribe*

la verità – le verità - *truth*

la virtù – le virtù – *virtue*

l'università – le università – *university*

French

The plural determinant of the Romance languages is the morpheme **−s** for all the nouns. However, since in modern French the ending **−s** is not pronounced at all, the formation of the plural involves by vowel gradation or change of phonetic form of determiners.

The table below shows the divergent ways of forming the plural of nouns.

Singular	Plural	Example
-eu	**-x**	un j**eu** - des jeu**x** *(game - games)*
-eau		un tabl**eau** - des tableau**x** *(picture - pictures)*
-au		un noy**au** - des noyau**x** *(kernel - kernels)*
-al	**-aux**	un journ**al** - des journ**aux** *(newspaper - newspapers)*
-ail		un trav**ail** - des trav**aux** *(work - works)*

NOTE:

*Some nouns ending in **-eu, -al, -ail** form their plural by adding **-s**:*

> *un pn**eu** - des pn**eus** (tyre - tyres)*
>
> *un b**al** - des b**als** (ball - balls)*
>
> *un évent**ail** - des évent**ails** (fan - fans)*
>
> *un carnav**al** - des carnav**als** (carnival - carnival)*
>
> *un festiv**al** - des festiv**als** (festival - festivals)*
>
> *un r**ail** - des r**ails** (rail - rails)*

Nouns which are always Plural

Did you know?

Spanish is the second largest natively spoken language in the world (about 450 million) after Chinese (over 1 billion), but before English (around 360 million).

Despite the fact that Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French have a number of divergent ways of forming the plural of nouns, they still combine convergent ways of using nouns.

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French there is a wide range of nouns that are used in the plural only and do not have their singular forms:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
las afueras	os arredores	i dintorni	les environs	*surroundings*
los bienes	os bens	le carabattole	les biens	*belongings*
los anales	os anais	i annali	les annales	*annals*
las gafas	os óculos	i occhiali	les lunettes	*glasses*
los grillos	as correntes	i ferri	les fers	*shackles*
los dulces	os doces	i dolciumi	les douceurs	*sweeties*
los pantalones	as calças	i pantaloni	les pantalons	*pants*

NOTE:

*In French such words as **sweeties** and **pants** can be used in the singular form as well.*

Nouns which are always Singular

There is also a range of nouns that are used in the singular. They are:

A. **Proper names**: Juan, María, el Nevá, Moscú, España.

B. **Corners of the earth and things that are the only ones in their way:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el sur	o sul	il sud	le sud	*south*
el norte	o norte	il nord	le nord	*north*
el horizonte	o horizonte	l`orizzonte	l`horizon	*horizon*
el sol	o sol	il sole	le soleil	*sun*
la luna	a lua	la luna	la lune	*moon*

C. **Matters, materials and precious metal:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el oro	o ouro	l`oro	l`or	*gold*
la leche	o leite	il latte	le lait	*milk*
el pan	o pão	il pane	le pain	*bread*
el carbón	o carvão	il carbone	le charbon	*coal*

D. **Abstract conceptions, human qualities:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la existencia	a existência	la esistenza	l`existence	*existence*
la alegría	a alegria	la allegria	la allégresse	*joy*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el orgullo	o orgulho	il orgoglio	l`orgueil	*pride*

E. Collective nouns:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la gente	o povo	il popolo	le peuple	*people, nation*
el dinero	o dinheiro	**i soldi*	l'argent	*money*
la juventud	a juventude	la gioventu	la jeunesse	*youth, young people*

NOTE:

In Italian i soldi is used in plural.

F. Some nouns that usually have the suffix –*ismo* meaning scientific, political, literary, etc. directions, names of sciences and religions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el impresionismo	o impress-ionismo	l'impress-ionismo	l'impress-ionnisme	*impress-ionism*
la lógica	a lógica	la logica	la logique	*logic*
el budismo	o budismo	il buddismo	le bouddhisme	*buddhism*
la medicina	a medicina	la medicina	la medicine	*medicine*

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

An adjective is a word that describes a person or thing, such as their size, shape, appearance, colour and other qualities, for instance, big, round, beautiful, red.

Gender of Adjectives

Did you know?

Italian is the fourth most studied foreign language in the United States after Spanish, French and German.

Unlike in English, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French adjectives usually agree with nouns in gender and number. Just like nouns, masculine forms of adjectives in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian end in −**o**, and those of feminine have the ending −**a**.

In French, in comparison with above-mentioned languages, it is not so easy to identify gender by adjective ending. However, most adjectives form their feminine gender by adding −**e** to the end of the adjective (in this case last consonant is pronounced).

Below is the table demonstrating the endings of adjectives and some examples supporting the rule.

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian		French	
masc.	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*
-o	**-a**	**N\A**	**-e**
Ex. Sp. blanc**o**, Port. branc**o**, It. bianc**o** (*white*)	Ex. Sp. blanc**a**, Port. branc**a**, It. bianc**a** (*white*)	Ex. Fr. blanc (*white*)	Ex. Fr. blanch**e** (*white*)

It should be noted that adjectives in Romance languages are usually placed after the noun rather than before.

33

Masculine (singular)	Feminine (singular)
Sp. el libro *negro*, Port. o livro *preto*, It. il libro *nero*, Fr. le livre *noir* – *black* book.	Sp. la casa *blanca*, Port. a casa *branca*, It. la casa *bianca*, Fr. la maison *blanche* – *white* house.

Forming the Feminine

Did you know?

French is a working language of the UN, the EU, NATO, the International Red Cross, the African Union, the Arab League and other international organizations.

Just like nouns, Spanish, Portuguese and Italian adjectives ending in –*o* form their feminine by changing the ending into –*a*. French feminine is formed by changing endings into –*e*. Nouns ending in consonant form the feminine by adding –*a* in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian and –*e* in French.

However, it is extremely important to give particular attention to the formation of the feminine in Portuguese and French, as there are some special ways of forming it.

Portuguese

A. Adjectives that end in –*eu* have their feminine form in –*eia*:

Europ*eu* – Europ*eia* (*European*)

B. Adjectives ending in –*ão* forming their feminine in –*ã*, –*oa* or –*ona*:

Alem*ão* – Alem*ã* (*German*); brincalh*ão* – brincalh*ona* (*playful*)

C. Most adjectives that end in –*a*, *-e*, *-ar*, *-l*, *-m*, and –*z* in the masculine retain absolutely the same form in the feminine:

Portuguese

pessimist**a** – *pessimist*	crue**l** – *cruel*
doc**e** – *sweet*	possíve**l** – *possible*
fort**e** – *strong*	fáci**l** – *easy*
pobr**e** – *poor*	difíci**l** – *difficult*
grand**e** – *big*	genti**l** – *charming*
trist**e** – *sad*	úti**l** – *useful*
quent**e** – *hot*	rui**m** – *bad*
origina**l** – *original*	jove**m** – *young*
sensíve**l** – *sensitive*	feli**z** – *happy*
principa**l** – *main*	capa**z** – *capable*
terríve**l** – *terrible*	

NOTE:

Like in Portuguese, in Spanish, many adjectives ending in -a, -e, -ar, -l, -m, -n and -z in the masculine are also used in the same way in the feminine. Observe the following:

Spanish

pesimist**a**– *pessimist*	crue**l** – *cruel*
dulc**e** – *sweet*	posibl**e** – *possible*
fuert**e** – *strong*	fáci**l** – *easy*
pobr**e** – *poor*	difíci**l** – *difficult*
grand**e** – *big*	genti**l** – *charming*
trist**e** – *sad*	úti**l** – *useful*

35

Spanish	
caliente – *hot*	ruin – *bad*
original – *original*	joven – *young*
sensible – *sensitive*	feliz – *happy*
principal – *main*	capaz – *capable*
terrible – *terrible*	

Unlike in Spanish and Portuguese, <u>in Italian and French</u>, some of these adjectives have their masculine and feminine forms. Study the following:

Italian	French	English
pessimista	pessimiste	*pessimist*
dolce	doux (*fem.* douce)	*sweet*
forte	fort (*fem.* forte)	*strong*
povero (*fem.* povera)	pauvre	*poor*
grande	grand (*fem.* grande)	*big*
triste	triste	*sad*
caldo (*fem.* calda)	chaud (*fem.* chaude)	*hot*
originale	original (*fem.* originale)	*original*
sensibile	sensible	*sensitive*

36

Italian	French	English
principale	principal (*fem.* principale)	*main*
terribile	terrible	*terrible*
crudele	cruel (*fem.* cruelle)	*cruel*
possibile	possible	*possible*
facile	facile	*easy*
difficile	difficile	*difficult*
gentile	gentil (*fem.* gentille)	*nice*
utile	utile	*useful*
cattivo (*fem.* cattiva)	mauvais (mauvaise)	*bad*
giovane	jeune	*young*
felice	heureux (*fem.* heureuse)	*happy*
capace	capable	*capable*

French

A. Adjectives that end in *-on, -en, -el, -eil, -il, -et,* and in *-s* double the final consonant before adding *-e*:

Masculine	*Feminine*	
b**on**	b**onne**	*good*

37

parisi*en*	parisi*enne*	*Parisian*
cru*el*	cru*elle*	*cruel*
par*eil*	par*eille*	*similar*
gent*il*	gent*ille*	*nice*
mu*et*	mu*ette*	*silent*
gro*s*	gro*sse*	*big, fat*

B. Adjectives that end in −*et* alter their −*et* to −*ète* in order to form the feminine:

Masculine	*Feminine*	
compl*et*	compl*ète*	*complete*
discr*et*	discr*ète*	*discreet*
secr*et*	secr*ète*	*secret*

Exception

prêt	prête	*ready*

C. Adjectives that end in −*er* change their −*er* to −*ère* in order to form the feminine:

Masculine	*Feminine*	
ch*er*	ch*ère*	*dear, expensive*
derni*er*	derni*ère*	*last*
enti*er*	enti*ère*	*entire*
fi*er*	fi*ère*	*proud*
premi*er*	premi*ère*	*first*

38

D. Adjectives that end in —*x* change the —*x* to —*se* while forming the feminine:

Masculine	Feminine	
amoureu*x*	amoureu*se*	*in love*
courageu*x*	courageu*se*	*courageous*
curieu*x*	curieu*se*	*curious*
ennuyeu*x*	ennuyeu*se*	*boring*
heureu*x*	heureu*se*	*happy*
jalou*x*	jalou*se*	*jealous*
sérieu*x*	sérieu*se*	*serious*
dou*x*	**douce*	*sweet*
rou*x*	rou*sse*	*reddish brown*
fau*x*	fau*sse*	*false*

NOTE:
*Remember that the word **doux** is **douce** in the feminine.*

E. Adjectives that end in —*eur* usually form their feminine by changing the —*eur* to —*euse* if such adjectives are derived from verbs. Otherwise the ending is —*rice*:

Masculine	Feminine	
ment*eur*	ment*euse*	*lying*
flatt*eur*	flatt*euse*	*flattering*
tromp*eur*	tromp*euse*	*deceitful*
act*eur*	act*rice*	*acting*
protect*eur*	protect*rice*	*protecting*

Exception

antéri**eur**	antéri**eure**	*anterior*
extéri**eur**	extéri**eure**	*exterior*
meill**eur**	meill**eure**	*better, best*
maj**eur**	maj**eure**	*major*
min**eur**	min**eure**	*minor*
supéri**eur**	supéri**eure**	*superior*

NOTE:

The exception words form the feminine according to the general rule of forming the feminine by adding -e to the masculine.

F. Adjectives that end in *–f* in the masculine alter their *–f* to *–ve* in order to form the feminine:

Masculine	*Feminine*	
acti**f**	acti**ve**	*active*
attenti**f**	attenti**ve**	*attentive*
bre**f**	brè**ve**	*brief*
neu**f**	neu**ve**	*new*
sporti**f**	sporti**ve**	*athletic*
vi**f**	vi**ve**	*alive*

G. Adjectives ending in *–c* change their *–c* to *–che* in order to form the feminine:

Masculine	*Feminine*

blan**c**	blan**che**	*white*
fran**c**	fran**che**	*frank*
se**c**	sè**che**	*dry*

Exception

gre**c**	grec**que**	*Greek*
public	publi**que**	*public*

NOTE:

*The exception words add the ending -**que** to the masculine in order form the feminine.*

H. Irregular adjective which are different in the feminine:

Masculine	*Feminine*	
long	longue	*long*
favori	favorite	*favorite*
malin	maline	*sly*
frais	fraîche	*fresh*
beau	belle	*beautiful*

Plural Forms of Adjectives

Spanish, Portuguese and French adjectives form their plural in the same way as nouns i.e. by adding an −**s**. In Italian adjectives form the plural by changing the masculine ending −**o** to −**i**, and the feminine ending −**a** is changed to −**e**. There are also some nouns ending in −**e**. The plural forms of these nouns is formed be changing the −**e** to −**i**.

Masculine (plural)	Feminine (plural)
Sp. los libros negros,	Sp. las casas blancas,
Port. os livros pretos,	Port. as casas brancas,
It. i libri neri,	It. le case bianche,
Fr. les livres noirs.	Fr. les maisons blanches
– black *books*.	– white *houses*.

Did you know?

Spanish is the third most used language on the Internet. Around 8% of Internet users interact in Spanish.

Below is the comparative table demonstrating similarity of masculine and feminine endings along with the singular and plural number of adjective in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French languages.

Endings of masculine and feminine gender and singular and plural number of adjectives in Romance languages.

	Spanish		Portuguese		Italian		French	
	masc.	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*
Singular	-o	-a	-o	-a	-o, -e	-a	N\A	-e
Plural	-s	-s	-s	-s	-i	-e	-s'	-s

Besides general rules presented the above, there are also other ways (special cases) of forming the plural of adjective in Spanish, Portuguese Italian and French, which tend to follow the same rules as nouns (**See p.23**).

Peculiarities of Adjective Use

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French have similar grammatical rules of adjective use.

‣ As it has been mentioned before, adjectives, as a rule, are placed after a noun. However, some adjectives can be placed before a noun. Here are the most common adjectives:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
bello, lindo, guapo, bonito	belo, lindo, bonito	bello	beau, joli	*beautiful*
joven	jovem	giovane	jeune.	*young*
viejo	velho	vecchio	vieux	*old*
pequeño	pequeno	piccolo	petit	*small, little*
rico	rico	ricco	riche	*rich*

Study the following:

Sp. Una *linda* casa;

Port. Uma *bela* casa;

It. Una *bella* casa;

Fr. Une *belle* maison.

- A *beautiful* house

‣ Some adjectives have different lexical meanings depending on their position to the noun (before/after). Let us consider the most common of them:

Sp. *grande*, Port. *grande*, It. *grande*, Fr. *grand*:

(Sp. *grande*, Port. *grande*, It. *grande*, Fr. *grand*) + *noun* = *great*;

noun + (Sp. *grande*, Port. *grande*, It. *grande*, Fr. *grand*) = *big*

Did you know?

Brazil was a Portuguese colony for more than 300 years and gained its independence in 1822.

Sp. **bueno**, Port. **bom**, It. **buono**, Fr. **bon**:

(Sp. *bueno*, Port. *bom*, It. *buono*, Fr. *bon)* + *noun = kind*;

noun + (Sp. *bueno*, Port. *bom*, It. *buono*, Fr. *bon) = good*

Sp. **malo**, Port. **mau**, It. **malo, cattivo**, Fr. **mauvais**:

(Sp. *malo*, Port. *mau*, It. *malo, cattivo*, Fr. *mauvais)* + *noun = wrong*;

noun + (Sp. *malo*, Port. *mau*, It. *malo, cattivo*, Fr. *mauvais) = bad*

Sp. **nuevo**, Port. **novo**, It. **nuovo**, Fr. **nouveau**:

(Sp. *nuevo*, Port. *novo*, It. *nuovo*, Fr. *nouveau)* + *noun = recently got*;

noun. + (Sp. *nuevo*, Port. *novo*, It. *nuovo*, Fr. *nouveau) = brand-new*

Sp. **pobre**, Port. **pobre**, It. **povero**, Fr. **pauvre**:

(Sp. *pobre*, Port. *pobre*, It. *povero*, Fr. *pauvre)* + *noun = unfortunate, miserable*;

noun + (Sp. *pobre*, Port. *pobre*, It. *povero*, Fr. *pauvre) = poor*

Sp. **verdadero**, Port. **verdadeiro**, It. **vero**, Fr. **honnête, vrai**:

(Sp. *verdadero*, Port. *verdadeiro*, It. *vero*, Fr. *honnête, vrai)* + *noun = real*;

noun + (Sp. *verdadero*, Port. *verdadeiro*, It. *vero*, Fr. *honnête*, *vrai*) = *true*.

▸ There are patterns that substitute relative adjectives in Romance languages and consist of preposition ***de, a*** + ***noun*** (prepositions It. ***in*** and Fr. ***en*** are also used in Italian and French in this way) and which designate material, phenomenon and etc. They are used without an article:

Sp. una casa ***de madera***,

Port. uma casa ***de madeira***,

It. una casa ***di legno***,

Fr. une maison ***en bois***

– ***wooden*** house,

Sp. una moneda ***de oro***,

Port. uma moeda ***de ouro***,

It. una moneta ***d'oro***,

Fr. une pièce ***d'or***

– ***golden*** coin.

It is also possible to combine the preposition ***de*** with other parts of speech meaning relative adjective:

Sp. el periódico ***de ayer***,

Port. o jornal ***de ontem***,

It. il giornale ***di ieri***,

Fr. le journal ***d'hier***

– ***yesterday's*** newspaper.

45

➤ In Spanish and Italian there are adjectives with shortened forms.

Spanish adjectives such as **bueno** (*good*), **malo** (*bad*), **primero** (*first*), **tercero** (*third*), **uno** (*one*), **alguno** (*some*) and **ninguno** (*any*) drop their final **−o** before masculine singular nouns. And words **alguno** and **ninguno** get a written accent above the **u** in the shortened form:

> **Did you know?**
>
> The capital city of Italy - Rome is 3000 years old.

Sp. un **buen** amigo – *a good friend*,

Sp. **mal** tiempo – *bad weather*,

Sp. el **tercer** día – *the third day*,

Sp. **ningún** muchacho – *any boy*.

The singular form **grande** (*big*) is mostly shortened to gran before nouns of either gender:

Sp. una **gran** competición – *a great competition*,

Sp. un **gran** riesgo – *a great risk*.

In Italian the adjectives **bello** (*beautiful, handsome*), **grande** (*big*), **buono** (*good*) and **nessuno** (*no, not one*) get shortened forms before a noun.

Italian **Bello**

Gender (before nouns beginning with)	Singular	Plural
Masc. consonant	**bel** (il bel ragazzo)	**bei** (i bei ragazzi)

Masc. z, s plus consonant	**bello** (il bello zio)	**begli** (i begli zii)
Masc. vowel	**bell'** (il bell'uomo)	**begli** (i begli uomini)
Fem. consonant	**bella** (la bella zia)	**belle** (le belle zie)
Fem. vowel	**bell'** (la bell'estate)	**belle** (le belle amiche)

Italian **Grande**

In Italian the adjective ***grande*** can be shortened to ***gran*** before *masculine* and *feminine* nouns beginning with a ***consonant*** other than ***z, s*** plus a ***consonant*** and ***ps***. With those that begin with ***z, s*** plus a ***consonant, ps*** or a ***vowel, grande*** is used.

Masculine	Feminine
un **gran** signore – *a great gentleman*	una **gran** signora – *a great lady*
un **grande** zio – *a great uncle*	una **grande** zia – *a great aunt*
un **grande** studente – *a great student*	una ***grande*** studentessa – *a great student*
un ***grande*** psichiatra – *a great psychiatrist*	una ***grande*** psichiatra – *a great psychiatrist*
un ***grande*** artista – *a great artist*	una ***grande*** artista – *a great artist*

However, the adjective ***grande*** becomes ***grand'*** before a masculine noun that begin with ***u: un grand'uomo*** – *a great man*.

Italian **Buono** and **Nessuno**

Buono and *nessuno* are usually shortened to *buon* and *nessun* before all *masculine* nouns except those that begin with *z*, *s* plus a **consonant** or *ps*. *Buona* and *nessuna* which are feminine forms are used with all *feminine* nouns that begin with a **consonant**. Forms *buon'* and *nessun'* are used before *feminine* nouns starting with a vowel. *Nessuno* has no plural forms. *Buono* and *buona* have the following plural forms: *buoni*, *buone*.

Masculine	Feminine
un **buono** zio - *a kind uncle*	una **buona** zia - *a kind aunt*
un **buon** ragazzo - *a kind boy*	una **buona** ragazza - *a kind girl*
un **buon** amico - *a good friend*	una **buon'**amica - *a good friend*

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

An adverb is a word that can be used with verbs, adjectives or other adverbs giving more information about where, when, how, or in what circumstances something happens, for instance, there, yesterday, suddenly, excellently.

Use of Adverbs

Generally speaking, adverbs are used with:

‣ verbs (run quickly, speak loudly, laugh happily),

‣ adjectives (rather boring, gravely ill, immensely glad),

‣ other adverbs (too slowly, very well, really fast)

Forming Adverbs from Adjectives. Adverbs Ending in -mente (-ment)

Did you know?

Portuguese is the official language of 9 countries (Angola, Brazil, Cape Verde, East Timor, Equatorial Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Mozambique, Portugal and São Tomé and Príncipe), with over 250 million speakers.

In English adverbs are usually formed by adding −*ly* to the end of the adjective (happy – happily). In Romance languages many adverbs of manner are formed with the suffix −*mente* (in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian) and −*ment* (in French). This suffix originated from the Latin suffix of the feminine gender *mens* (-*mente* in instrumental case). Thus, the modern suffix −*mente* (−*ment*) inherited its compatibility with the feminine adjectives. Also, unlike adjectives, adverbs are invariable which means that they do not vary according to the gender, number or person of the word that they are modifying.

Therefore, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian many adverbs end in –*mente* (in French –*ment*). This is usually added to the end of the feminine singular form of the adjective.

Below is the table demonstrating the examples of adverb forming from the adjectives.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
lento(-_a_) = lent_a_mente	lento(-_a_) = lent_a_mente	lento(-_a_) = lent_a_mente	lent(-_e_) = lent_e_ment	slow = slow**ly**
rápido(-_a_) = rápid_a_men te	rápido(-_a_) = rapid_a_mente	rapido(-_a_) = rapid_a_mente	rapide = rapid_e_ment	quick = quick**ly**

Peculiarities of Adverb Use

It is also worth mentioning the peculiarities of adverb formation.

Did you know?

French is taught in every country of the world, with around 100 million students.

French

French adjectives ending in a vowel rather than –*e*, drop the feminine ending –*e* and add –*ment* while forming the adverb: *vrai* (masc.) – *vraie* (fem.) – *true* = *vraiment* (*truly*).

French adjectives, which end in –*ant* and –*ent* (except lent and present), change *nt* to *m* and add –*ment* to the adverb: *constant* – *constamment* (*constant* – *constantly*); *récent* – *récemment* (*recent* – *recently*).

Italian

In Italian language adjectives ending in −*le* or −*re* before a ***vowel***, drop the vowel −*e* and add −***ment***: ***facile*** − ***facilmente*** (*easy − easily*).

Other Adverbs

Adverbs of manner

There are some common adverbs of manner which tell us how something is done.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
bien	bem	bene	bien	*well*
mal	mal	male	mal	*badly/ poorly*
así	assim	così	ainsi	*thus*
deprisa	depressa	presto	vite	*quickly*
despacio	devagar	adagio	lentement	*slowly*
mejor	melhor	meglio	mieux	*better*
peor	pior	peggio	pire	*worse*

Adverbs of place

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aquí	aqui, cá	qui	ici, là	*here*
ahí, allí	aí, ali, lá, acolá	là, lì; ci, vi, colà	là, là-bas	*there*
cerca	perto	vicino, appresso	près	*near*
lejos	longe	lontano	loin	*far*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
enfrente, frente a	diante, à frente de	di fronte	en face de	*in front of*
atrás, detrás	atrás, detrás	(di)dietro, indietro	en arrière, par derrière	*behind*
arriba	acima	in alto, (di) sopra	en haut, au-dessus	*above*
arriba	em cima	in alto, (di) sopra	en haut	*on*
de (desde) arriba, por encima	por cima	per sopra,	par-dessus, par en haut	*over*
por abajo	abaixo	sotto, (in) giù, verso il basso	en bas	*below*
debajo	embaixo	giu, (di) sotto, a / in basso	en dessous	*under*
dentro, en el interior	dentro	(al di) dentro, all'interno	dedans, à l'intérieur	*in, inside*
fuera, en el exterior	fora	fuori, all'esterno	dehors, à l'extérieur	*out, outside*
dónde	onde	dove	où	*where*
en alguna parte	em algum lugar	da qualche parte	quelque part	*somewhere*

Adverbs of time

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hoy	hoje	oggi	aujourd'hui	*today*
ayer	ontem	ieri	hier	*yesterday*
mañana	amanhã	domani	demain	*tomorrow*
ahora	agora	ora, adesso	maintenant	*now*
antes	antes	prima	avant	*before*
después, luego	depois, logo, após	dopo, poi	puis, après, ensuite	*after, later*
temprano	cedo	presto	tôt	*early*
tarde	tarde	tardi	tard	*late*
entonces	então	allora	alors	*then*
ya	já	già	déjà	*already*
aún	ainda	ancora	encore	*yet, still*
en fin	enfim	al fine	enfin; à la fin	*at last*
siempre	sempre	sempre	toujours	*always, still*
nunca, jamás	nunca, jamais	mai	jamais	*never*
a veces, de vez en cuando	às vezes, de vez em quando	qualche volta, a volte, di tanto in tanto	parfois, de temps en temps	*sometimes, once in a while*

Adverbs of intensity

53

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
poco	pouco	poco, un poco, un po'	un peu	*a little*
muy, mucho	muito	molto	très	*very*
más	mais	più	plus	*more*
menos	menos	meno	moins	*less*
demasi-ado	demasiado, demais	troppo	trop	*too much*
tanto	tanto	tanto	autant	*as much*
tan	tão	cosi, tanto	tellement, tant	*so much/ many*
bastante	bastante	abbastanza	assez	*enough*
casi	quase	quasi	presque	*almost*
cuanto	quanto	quanto	combien	*how much*

Adverbs of doubt

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tal vez, puede ser	talvez, pode ser	forse	peut-être	*perhaps, maybe*
por casualidad	por acaso	per caso	par hasard	*by chance*
posible-mente	possivel-mente	possibil-mente	possible-ment	*possibly*
probable-mente	provavel-mente	probabil-mente	probable-ment	*probably*

Adverbs expressing affirmation

54

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cierta-mente	certamente	certamente	certaine-ment	*certainly*
realmente, efectiva-mente	realmente, efetivamente	realmente, effettiva-mente	réellement, effective-ment	*really*
exacta-mente	exatamente	esattamente	exactement	*exactly*

Adverbs expressing exclusion

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
sólo, solamente	só, somente	solo, solamente	seulement	*only*
únicamente	unicamente	unicamente	uniquement	*merely*
simple-mente	simples-mente	semplice-mente	simplement	*simply*
apenas	apenas	appena	à peine	*hardly, just*

Adverbs composed of several words

Adverbs can also consist of more than one word, for example:

<p style="text-align:center">Sp. sin ninguna duda,</p>

<p style="text-align:center">Port. sem dúvida,</p>

<p style="text-align:center">It. senza dubbio,</p>

<p style="text-align:center">Fr. sans aucun doute</p>

<p style="text-align:center">– without a doubt.</p>

Adverbial phrases

There are some fixed phrases which have an adverbial function. Below are some common ones:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a ciegas	a cegas	alla cieca	à l'aveuglette	*blindly/in the dark*
en serio	a sério	sul serio	au sérieux	*take seriously*
a pie	a pé	a piedi	à pied	*on foot*
a mano	a mão	a mano	à la main	*by/at hand*
a escondidas	em segredo	in segreto	en secret	*in secret*

It is also possible to build such phrases by using the following constructions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
con + abstract noun	**com +** abstract noun	**con +** abstract noun	**avec +** abstract noun
de manera + adjective	**de maneira** + adjective	**di\in maniera +** adjective	**de manière** + adjective
de modo + adjective	**de modo +** adjective	**di modo +** adjective	**de mode +** adjective
de forma + adjective	**de forma +** adjective	**di forma +** adjective	**de forme +** adjective
de carácter + adjective	**de caráter +** adjective	**di carattere** + adjective	**de caractère** + adjective

Examples:

Sp. Lo hace *con* alegría,

Port. Ele faz isso **com** alegria,

It. Lo fa **con** gioia,

Fr. Il le fait **avec** joie.

- *He does it with joy.*

Sp. Ella habla **de manera** formal,

Port. Ela fala **de maneira** formal,

It. Lei parla **in maniera** formale,

Fr. Elle parle **de manière** formelle.

- *She speaks in a formal manner.*

Position of Adverbs

In English adverbs can be put in different places in a sentence. In Romance languages adverbs follow verbs or are placed before the adjective.

Did you know?

Italian is considered the universal language of classic music, with numerous loanwords such as a capella, maestro, orchestra and soprano.

Sp. El trabaja **mucho**;

Port. Ele trabalha **muito**;

It. Lui lavora **mòlto**;

Fr. Il travaille **beaucoup**.

- He works **a lot**.

Sp. Ella come **poco**;

Port. Ela come **pouco**;

It. Lei mangia **poco**;

Fr. Elle mange **peu**.

- She *eats a little*.

However, in French such short and common adverbs as *bien, assez, beaucoup, déjà, encore, enfin, jamais, mieux, toujours, trop, vite,* etc., are placed between auxiliary verb and past participle (Fr. Elle a *bien* chanté – *She sang well*).

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

Did you know?

Spanish is the third most used language on the Internet. Around 8% of Internet users interact in Spanish.

Comparative constructions are mainly used to convey inequality or equality. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs in English usually uses the *–er* form, where it is added to the end of the adverb or adjective, or *more* or *less* in front of them, for instance shorter, longer, more/less intelligent.

The superlative degree of comparison of adverbs and adjectives in English has *–est* attached to the end of them or *most* or *least* in front of them, for instance the shortest, the longest, the most/the least intelligent.

Like in English, in Romance languages there are also different degrees of comparison which are comparative and superlative. In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian there also exists absolute superlative degree of comparison.

Below is the table that demonstrates comparative constructions of Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
The Comparative				

58

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tan... como	tão... como/ quanto	così/ tanto... come/ quanto	aussi... que	as...as
(Es tan inteligente como yo.)	(Ele é tão inteligente quanto eu.)	(È così intelligent e come me.)	(Il est aussi intelligent que moi.)	(He is as intelligent as I am.)
más... que	mais... (do) que	più... di/ che	plus... que	more... than
(Este libro es más interesante que este)	(Este livro é mais interessante do que este)	(Questo libro è più interessante di quello)	(Ce livre est plus intéressant que celui- là)	(This book is more interesting than that one)
menos... que	menos... (do) que	meno... di/che	moins... que	less... than
(Este vestido es menos hermoso que este)	(Este vestido é menos bonito do que isso)	(Questo vestito è meno bello di quello)	(Cette robe est moins belle que cela)	(This dress is less beautiful than that one.)

NOTE: *In Portuguese* **do que** *is used to compare nouns, and* **que** *is used to compare adjectives.*

The superlative of an adjective and adverb is usually formed by adding the definite article to the comparative form. In

such construction the preposition (Sp. *de*, Port. *de*, It. *di*, Fr. *de*) is used and follows the superlative when it means *in*.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
The Superlative				
el/la/los/ las/lo más...(de) (Este muchacho es *el más* inteligente *de* la clase)	*o/a/os/as mais... (de)* (Este menino é *o mais* inteligente *da* classe)	*il/la/i/le più... (di)* (Questo ragazzo è *il più* intelligent e *della* classe)	*le/la/les plus... (de)* (Ce garçon est *le plus* intelligent *de* la classe)	*the most* (*This boy is the most intelligent in the class*)
el/la/los/ las/lo menos... (de) (Este muchacho es *el menos* inteligente *de* la clase)	*o/a/os/as menos... (de)* (Este menino é *o menos* inteligente *da* classe)	*il/la/i/le meno... (di)* (Questo ragazzo è *il meno* intelligent e *della* classe)	*le/la/les moins... (de)* (Ce garçon est *le moins* intelligent *de* la classe)	*the least* (*This boy is the least intelligent in the class*)

As mentioned before, Spanish, Portuguese and Italian also have the absolute superlative degree of comparison. The absolute superlative is usually formed by adding the suffix Sp. *–ísimo (–ísimamente* with adverbs), Port. *–íssimo*, It. *–íssimo* to an adjective or an adverb after dropping the last vowel. This conveys the meaning of *most, very* and *extremely*.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	English
bonito – *muy bonito*	bonito – bonit**íssimo**	bello – bell**issimo**	*handsome – most handsome*
inteligente – inteligent**ísi mo**	inteligente – inteligent**íssi mo**	intelligente – intelligent**issi mo**	*intelligent – extremely intelligent*
bien - *muy bien*	bem – bon**íssimo**	bene – ben**issimo**	*well – very well*
malo - mal**ísimo**	mal – mal**íssimo**	male – mal**issimo**	*badly – very badly*

Note that Spanish **bonito** and **bien** form the absolute superlative by adding **muy** before an adjective or an adverb.

However, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, there are some spelling changes while adding the suffix *–ísimo, –íssimo* and *–issimo*.

Spanish:

1. The endings *–co* and *–go* are changed according to the general norms of pronunciation and spelling:

   po**co** – poqu**ísimo** - *little - the most little;*

   lar**go** – largu**ísimo** - *long - the longest;*

2. Most adjectives that end in *–ble* change it to *–bil* before *– ísimo*:

   ama**ble** – amabil**ísimo** - *nice - the nicest.*

Portuguese:

1. Adjectives ending in *–vel* change into *–bilíssimo*:

   agradá**vel** – agrada**bilíssimo** - *pleasant - the most pleasant;*

   horrí**vel** – horri**bilíssimo** - *horrible - the most horrible.*

61

2. Adjectives ending in *—m* change into *—níssimo*:

comu*m* – comu*níssimo* - *common - the most common.*

3. Adjectives ending in *–z* change into *–císsimo*:

feli*z* – feli*císsimo* - *happy - the happiest.*

4. Adjectives that end in *–ão* change into *–aníssimo*:

s*ão* – s*aníssimo* - *healthy - the healthiest.*

Italian:

1. the endings *–co*, *–go*, and *–ga* must add *h* to the adjective before adding *–issimo* in order to preserve the hard sound:

stan*co* – stanch*issimo* - *tired - the most tired*;

lar*go* – largh*issimo* - *large - the largest.*

However, the absolute superlative can also be made by placing an appropriate adverb before the adjective:

Sp. Peter es *muy* gentil,

Port. Peter é *muito* gentil,

It. Peter è *molto* gentile

– *Peter is **very** polite.*

Very (Sp. **muy**, Port. **muito**, It. **molto**, Fr. **très**) is one of the most common adverbs used in sentences, but below is the list of other adverbs which can definitely help you enrich your language.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
bastante	bastante	abbastanza	assez	*enough*
excepciona lmente	excepcional mente	eccezional mente	exceptionn ellement	*exception ally*
excesiva- mente	excessiva- mente	eccessiva- mente	excessive ment	*excessive ly*
extraordin ariamente	extraordinar iamente	straordinari amente	extraordin airement	*extraordi narily*
extremada mente	extrema- mente	estrema- mente	extrême- ment	*extreme- ly*
grande- mente	grande- mente	grande- mente	grande- ment	*greatly*
imensa- mente	imensa- mente	immensa- mente	immensé ment	*immense -ly*
terrible- mente	terrivel- mente	terribil- mente	terrible- ment	*terribly*

Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives

There are some adjectives and adverbs which have irregular forms for the comparative and superlative. Below is the table presenting the most common of them:

Forms	Spanish	Portug uese	Italian	French	English
Adjectives					
positive	bueno	bom	buono	bon	*good*
comparative	mejor	melhor	migliore	meilleur	*better*

Forms	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
superlative	el mejor	o melhor	il migliore	le meilleur	*the best*
absolute	óptimo	ótimo	ottimo	N\A	*very good*
positive	malo	mau	cattivo	mauvais	*bad*
comparative	peor	pior	peggiore	pire	*worse*
superlative	el peor	o pior	il peggiore	le pire	*the worst*
absolute	pésimo	péssimo	pessimo	N\A	*very bad*
positive	grande	grande	grande	grand	*big*
comparative	mayor (*or* mas grande)	maior	maggiore	plus grand	*bigger*
superlative	el mayor (*or* el mas grande)	o maior	il maggiore	le plus grand	*the biggest*
absolute	máximo	máximo	massimo	N\A	*very big*
positive	pequeño	pequeno	piccolo	petit	*small*
comparative	menor (*or* mas pequeño)	menor	minore	plus petit	*smaller*
superlative	el menor (*or* el mas pequeño)	o menor	il minore	le plus petit	*the smallest*
absolute	mínimo	mínimo	minimo	N\A	*very small*
Adverbs					
positive	bien	bem	bene	bien	*well*
comparative	mejor	melhor	meglio	mieux	*better*

Forms	Spanish	Portug uese	Italian	French	English
superlative	el mejor	o melhor	il meglio	le mieux	*the best*
absolute	N\A	bon-íssimo	ben-issimo	N\A	*very well*
positive	mal	mal	male	mal	*badly*
comparative	peor	pior	peggio	pire	*worse*
superlative	el peor	o pior	il peggio	le pire	*the worst*
absolute	malísimo	péssimo	mal-issimo	N\A	*very badly*
positive	mucho	muito	molto	beaucoup	*many/ much*
comparative	más	mais	più	plus	*more*
superlative	el más	o mais	il più	le plus	*the most*
absolute	much-ísimo	muit-íssimo	molt-issimo	N\A	N\A
positive	poco	pouco	poco	peu	*little*
comparative	menos	menos	meno	moins	*less*
superlative	el menos	o menos	il meno	le moins	*the least*
absolute	poqu-ísimo	pouqu-íssimo	poch-issimo	N\A	N\A

NOTE:

In French adjectives such as **petit** and **grand** have regular forms of comparatives and superlatives. However **petit** can also be used as **moindre** (comparative) and **le moindre** (superlative).

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

An article is a word (the, a and an) which is placed in front of a noun.

Types of Article in English

1. The definite article **the** is normally used to identify a certain person or thing: *I'm going to **the** cinema*.

2. The indefinite article **a** or **an** is usually used to indicate something unfamiliar or unspecific: *He has **a** car*.

3. The partitive articles **some** or **any** (or no word) are used while talking about quantities or amounts: *We have **some** milk*.

Origin of Articles in Romance Languages. Definite and Indefinite Articles. Gender.

The definite article came into use in the period of transition from vulgar Latin to the Romance languages themselves, indicating connections of a noun in the context. For languages that do not have articles, such connections are understood from the particular situation. The Definite article in Romance languages as well as the personal pronoun of the 3rd person go back to the demonstrative pronouns Lat. **ille** > Sp. **el**, It. **il**, Fr. **le** and Lat. **illus** > It. **lo**.

Being a non-autonomous word, the article has a distinct position. Like in English, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the article is placed in front of a noun.

The indefinite article goes back to Latin numeral **unus, una** – *one* which was used as indefinite pronoun while taking into

Did you know?

Brazil is the 7th biggest economy in the world, which makes the Portuguese language extremely important in a global economy.

consideration an object in archaic and classical Latin. The use of **unus** which accompanied a noun transforms it now into the indefinite article.

Thus, in Romance languages the article can be one of two types: definite and indefinite. Articles also have masculine and feminine forms. Looking at the common source of origin of the article, it is possible to state that in the Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French languages, the system of articles has common grammatical and lexical similarity.

Below is the table demonstrating the similarity of definite and indefinite articles of masculine and feminine gender in Romance languages.

	Spanish		Portuguese		Italian		French	
Forms of article	singular masc./ fem.	plural masc. / fem.	singular masc. / fem.	plural masc./ fem.	singular masc. / fem.	plural masc. / fem.	singular masc./ fem.	plural masc./ fem.
Definite	el/ la	los/ las	o/ a	os/ as	il,lo, l'/ la, l'	i,gli, gl'/ le, l'	le,l' / la,l'	les/ les
Indefinite	un/ una	unos / unas	um/ uma	uns/ umas	un, uno / una, un'	dei, degli / delle	un/ une	des/ des

The article is placed before the noun and, like adjectives, agrees with it in number and gender:

Sp. *el* muchacho > *la* muchacha > *los* muchachos > *las* muchachas;

Port. *o* menino > *a* menina > *os* meninos > *as* meninas;

It. *il* ragazzo > *i* ragazzi > *la* ragazza > *le* ragazze;

Fr. *le* garçon > *la* fille > *les* garçons > *les* filles.

- *the boy* > *the girl* > *the boys* > *the girls*.

French

In French the article of the singular *le* and *la* becomes *l'* before a noun that begins with a **vowel** or mute **h**: (l'enfant – *the child*, l'**h**omme – *the man*).

Italian

In Italian the article of the masculine singular is *il* and plural *i*, but before all *masculine singular* nouns beginning with **z**, **s** plus a **consonant**, **y**, **ps** or **gn** the article *lo* is placed: (**lo** studente – *the student*, **lo** zio – *the uncle*, **lo gn**omo - *the gnome*, **lo ps**icologo – *the psychologist* and etc.).

The definite article *lo* becomes *l'* before any **vowel**: (l'amico – *the friend*, l'italiano – *the Italian*, l'instituto – *the institute*), whereas the definite plural article *gli* transforms into *gl'* only before **i** (**gl'**italiani), however recently there is a tendency towards the preservation of the vowel sound: (**gli** italiani).

The article of the feminine singular *la* becomes *l'* before *feminine singular* nouns beginning with a **vowel**: (l'amica – *the friend*, l'estate – *the summer*)

The indefinite plural article *dei* becomes *degli* before **a**, **u**, **i**, **o** (*dei* libri - books; *degli* **a**mici - friends).

Spanish and Portuguese

In Spanish and French the indefinite article of the masculine singular is **un**, in Portuguese - **um**. In Italian the indefinite article of the masculine singular is also **un**, but **uno** is used before <u>masculine</u> nouns that begin with **s** plus **consonant** or **z** (**uno studente, uno zio**).

The indefinite feminine article is **une** in French and **uma** in Portuguese and **una** in Spanish and Italian. In Italian the form **un'** is also used before *feminine* nouns beginning with a **vowel**: (**un'amica** – *the friend*, **un'opera** – *the opera*, **un'isola** – *the island*).

Use of the Article

In general terms, the article in Romance languages has common ways of use.

General Use of the Indefinite Article

➤ It is used as numeral *"one"* to express only one thing a person has:

<div align="center">

Sp.tengo **un** hijo,

Port. tenho **um** filho,

It. ho **un** figlio,

Fr. j'ai **un** fils

– *I have **one** son.*

</div>

➤ It is used to refer to someone or something not yet known or not specifically identified:

<div align="center">

Sp. mi madre habla con **una** mujer,

</div>

Port. minha mãe fala com **uma** mulher,

It. mia madre parla con **una** donna,

Fr. ma mère parle avec **une** femme

– *my mother is talking to **a** woman.*

Did you know?

When Italy became one nation in 1861, only *2.5% of Italians could speak the standardized language.*

Sp. este es **un** libro,

Port. este é **um** livro,

It. questo è **un** libro,

Fr. c'est **un** livre

– this is **a** book.

‣ The plural forms of the article in Romance languages are used with plural nouns in a similar way (meaning "*some*" in English):

Sp. sobre la mesa hay **unas** flores,

Port. em cima da mesa há **umas** flores,

It. sul tavolo ci sono **dei** fiori,

Fr. sur la table il y a **des** fleurs

– *there are **some** flowers on the table.*

General use of the Definite Article

‣ Generally speaking, the definite article is used to refer to someone or something specific in a particular situation:

Sp. Cierre **la** ventana!

Port. Feche **a** janela!

It. Chiudere *la* finestra!

Fr. Fermez *la* fenêtre!

*– Close **the** window!*

- It is used to refer to the object which is unique in its category:

> ### *Did you know?*
>
> *French is second only to English when it comes to the number of countries where it is an official or co-official language. French is officially spoken in 32 countries.*

Sp. *el* sol,

Port. *o* sol,

It. *il* sole,

Fr. *le* soleil

*– **the** sun*

- The definite article is put before a noun which is used to refer to an entire category of people or things in general:

> Sp. *El* león es un animal muy rápido,
>
> Port. *O* leão é um animal muito rápido,
>
> It. *Il* leone è un animale molto veloce,
>
> Fr. *Le* lion est un animal très rapide.
>
> *- Lions are very fast animals.*

- It is used with abstract nouns when they have a general use:

> Sp. Debemos reducir *la* pobreza en nuestro país.
>
> Port. Devemos reduzir *a* pobreza em nosso país.
>
> It. Dobbiamo ridurre *la* povertà nel nostro paese.

Fr. Nous devons réduire *la* pauvreté dans notre pays.

- *We must reduce **the** poverty in our country.*

‣ It is used to refer to an object that became certain as it had been mentioned earlier:

Sp. Él tiene un coche. *El* coche es nuevo;

Port. Ele tem um carro. *O* carro é novo;

It. Lui ha una macchina. *La* macchina è nuova;

Fr. Il a une voiture. *La* voiture est neuve

– He *has a car. **The** car is new.*

‣ It is used before a noun that has a definition specifying the object being discussed:

Sp. Tome *el* periódico que está sobre la mesa,

Port. Pegue *o* jornal que está sobre a mesa,

It. Prendete *il* giornale che sta sul tavolo,

Fr. Prenez *le* journal qui est sur la table.

- *Take **the** newspaper that is on the table.*

‣ It is used for any noun that refers to a general idea, practice or phenomenon. This includes colours, diseases, fields of activity and meals:

Sp. No me gusta *el* verde como color;

Port. Eu não gosto *do* verde como cor;

It. Non mi piace *il* verde come colore;

Fr. Je n'aime pas *le* vert comme couleur.

- I don't like the color green.

Below is a table presenting objects, concepts and phenomena which are to be used with the definite article in one or another Romance language. As a rule, nouns that have the masculine or feminine forms of the article designating the categories below:

the mascu line definit e article	Spanish	Portug uese	Italian	French	English
- months	(El) enero	(O) janeiro	(Il) gennaio	(Le) janvier	*January*
	(El) febrero	(O) fevereiro	(Il) febbraio	(Le) février	*February*
	(El) marzo	(O) março	(Il) marzo	(Le) mars	*March*
	(El) abril	(O) abril	(L') aprile	(Le) avril	*April*
- days of week	(El) domingo	(O) domingo	*But:* (**La**) domenica	(Le) dimanche	*Sunday*
	(El) lunes	*But:* (**A**) segunda -feira	(Il) lunedì	(Le) lundi	*Monday*
	(El) martes	(**A**) terça- feira	(Il) martedì	(Le) mardi	*Tuesday*

the masculine definite article	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	(El) miércoles	**(A)** quarta-feira	**(Il)** mercoledì	**(Le)** mercredi	*Wednesday*
- seasons	**(El)** invierno	**(O)** inverno	**(L')** inverno	**(L')** hiver	*Winter*
	(El) verano	**(O)** verão	**(L')** estate	**(L')** été	*Summer*
	(El) otoño	**(O)** outono	**(L')**autunno	**(L')** automne	*Autumn/ Fall*
	But: **(La)** primavera	*But:* **(A)** primavera	*But:* **(La)** primavera	**(Le)** printemps	*Spring*
- corners of the earth	**(El)** norte	**(O)** norte	**(Il)** nord	**(Le)** nord	*North*
	(El) sur	**(O)** sul	**(Il)** sud	**(Le)** sud	*South*
	(El) este	**(O)** leste	**(L')** est	**(L')** est	*East*
	(El) oeste	**(O)** oeste	**(L')** ovest	**(L')** ouest	*West*
- languages	**(El)** japonés	**(O)** japonês	**(Il)** giapponese	**(Le)** japonais	*Japanese*
	(El) portugués	**(O)** português	**(Il)** portoghese	**(Le)** portugais	*Portuguese*
	(El) coreano	**(O)** coreano	**(Il)** coreano	**(Le)** coréen	*Korean*

the masculine definite article	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	(El) francés	(O) francês	(Il) francese	(Le) français	*French*
- trees	(El) pino	(O) pinheiro	(Il) pino	(Le) pin	*Pine tree*
	(El) abedul	(O) vidoeiro	(La) betulla	(Le) bouleau	*Birch*
	(El) roble	(O) carvalho	(La) quercia	(Le) chêne	*Oak*
	But: (__La__) palmera	*But:* (__A__) palmeira	*But:* (__La__) palma	(Le) palmier	*Palm tree*
- metals	(El) oro	(O) ouro	(L') oro	(L') or	*Gold*
	(El) hierro	(O) ferro	(Il) ferro	(Le) fer	*Iron*
	(El) cobre	(O) cobre	(Il) rame	(Le) cuivre	*Copper*
	But: (__La__) Plata	*But:* (__A__) prata	(L') argento	(L') argent	*Silver*
- chemical substances	(El) ácido	(O) ácido	(L') acido	(L') acide	*Acid*
	(El) álcali	(O) álcali	(L') alcali	(L') alcali	*Alkali*
	(El) cloruro	(O) cloreto	(Il) cloruro	(Le) chlorure	*Chloride*
	But: (__La__) toxina	*But:* (__A__) toxina	*But:* (__La__) tossina	*But:*(__La__) toxine	*Toxin*
- transpo	(El) autobús	(O) ônibus	(Il) bus	(Le) bus	*Bus*

the masculine definite article	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
rt	**(El)** avión	**(O)** avião	**(L')** aereo	**(L')** avion	*Plane*
	(El) tren	**(O)** trem	**(Il)** treno	**(Le)** train	*Train*
	(El) coche/ carro	**(O)** carro	**(L')** auto	*But:* **(La)** voiture	*Car*

the feminine definite article	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
– *countries, cities, continents, islands*	**(La)** Italia	**(A)** Italia	**(L')** Italia	**(L')** Italie	*Italy*
	(La) ciudad de Paris	**(A)** cidade de Paris	**(La)** città di Parigi	**(La)** ville de Paris	*Paris*
	(La) Europa	**(A)** Europa	**(L')** Europa	**(L')** Europe	*Europe*
	(Las) islas hawaianas	**(As)** ilhas havaianas	**(Le)** isole hawaiane	**(Les)** îles hawaïennes	*Hawaiian islands*

the masculine definite article	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
- rivers, lakes	*But:* **(El)** río Amazonas	*But:* **(O)** rio Amazonas	*But:* **(Il)** Rio delle Amazzoni	*But:* **(L')** Amazzone	The Amazon
	(El) Misisipi	**(O)** rio Mississípi	**(Il)** Mississippi	**(Le)** Mississippi	The Mississippi River
	(El) río Éufrates	**(O)** rio Eufrates	**(L')** Eufrate	**(L')** Eufrate	The Euphrates
	(El) lago Hurón	**(O)** lago Huron	**(Il)** lago Huron	**(Il)** lago Huron	Lake Huron
- sciences	**(La)** química	**(A)** química	**(La)** chimica	**(La)** chimie	Chemistry
	(La) biología	**(A)** biologia	**(La)** biologia	**(La)** biologie	Biology
	(La) filosofía	**(A)** filosofia	**(La)** filosofia	**(La)** philosophie	Philosophy
	(La) literatura	**(A)** literatura	**(La)** letteratura	**(La)** littérature	Literature

NOTE:

The table demonstrates the general rule, however there are some exceptions for you to memorize.

Note that in Spanish, despite the general rule, the following words are used with the feminine definite article: **la primavera, la palmera, la plata, la toxina.**

Remember that rivers and lakes are used with the masculine definite article in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

In Portuguese, days of the week are used with the feminine definite article, except for **o sábado** *- Saturday and* **o domingo** *- Sunday, which have the masculine definite article. Such words as* **a primavera, a palmeira, a prata,** *and* **a toxina** *are used with the feminine definite article.*

In Italian, the following words are used with the feminine definite article: **la domenica, la primavera, la palma, la tossina.**

In French, **la toxine** *and* **la voiture** *have the feminine definite article.*

Omission of the Definite Article

1. The definite article in Romance languages is usually omitted before names of cities and towns:

> Sp. París es la capital de Francia;
>
> Port. Paris é a capital da França;
>
> It. Parigi è la capitale della Francia,
>
> Fr. Paris est la capitale de la France.
>
> - Paris is the capital of France.

NOTE:

In Spanish: **La Habana** *– Havana,* **El Callao** *– Callao,* **La Coruña** *– Corunna,* **La Mancha** *– English Channel;*

In Portuguese: **O Porto, O Rio de Janeiro.**

Exceptions

In *French* the definite article is usually omitted when the name of the region, country or continent is preceded by the preposition *en*.

In *Spanish* and *Portuguese* the definite article is omitted after the verbs (Sp. **estudiar** – *learn*, **hablar** – *speak*, Port. **estudar** – *learn*, **falar** – *speak*):

Sp. Yo hablo español,

Port. Eu falo espanhol.

- I speak Spanish.

However, the article may be placed if an adverb separates the verb from the language name, and this is common across all Romance languages:

Did you know?

Argentina is the largest Spanish speaking nation in South America. Argentina is also the 8th largest country in the world with an area of 2,780,400 km².

Sp. Yo hablo correctamente *el* francés,

Port. Eu falo corretamente *o* francês,

It. Io parlo correttamente *il* francese,

Fr. Je parle correctement *le* français.

- I speak French correctly.

Omission of the Article

1. The article is omitted if there is a numeral or pronoun placed before a noun.

2. The article is omitted before nouns denoting quantity and used with a preposition:

Sp. *de*, Port. *de*, It. *di*, Fr. *de*.

3. The indefinite article is usually omitted before prepositions:

Sp. *sin*, Port *sem*, It. *senza*, Fr. *sans* – *without*;

Sp. *con*, Port. *com*, It. *con*, Fr. *avec* – *with*;

Sp. *como*, Port. *como*, It. *come*, Fr. *comme* – *as, like.*

Did you know?

Angola is the largest Portuguese speaking country in Africa, with a population of over 25 million people.

Sp. Él salió *sin* dinero,

Port. Ele saiu *sem* dinheiro,

It. Lui è uscito *senza* soldi,

Fr. Il est sorti *sans* argent.

- *He left **without** money.*

4. In *Italian* and *French* the indefinite article is omitted after the verb It. *essere*, Fr. *être* (*to be*) when precedes unmodified nouns denoting nationality, profession or religion:

It. Lui è medico,

Fr. Il est médecin.

- *He is a doctor.*

However, the indefinite article is used when the noun put after the verb *to be* is modified:

It. Lui è *un* medico molto famoso,

Fr. Il est *un* médecin très célèbre.

*- He is a very **famous** doctor.*

The Neuter Article *lo* in Spanish

Additionally it is important to talk about Spanish neuter article **lo**. This article is mostly used to refer to beliefs, concepts, opinions, thoughts and ideas.

1. **Lo** may be used before a masculine singular **adjective** or **past participle**:

> Sp. **Lo** más importante es hablar con soltura.
>
> *- The most important thing is to speak fluently.*

Did you know?

There are 2 independent states within Italy: the Republic of San Marino (23.6 square miles) and the Vatican City (0.17 square miles).

2. **Lo** + **de** + **noun** – the matter of, the business about:

> Sp. **Lo** de la pobreza es un problema grave.
>
> *– The poverty situation is a serious problem.*

3. **Lo que** – the thing which, what (Port. **o que**, It, **questo che**, Fr. **ce que**.)

> Sp. **Lo que** me gusta es tu manera de pronunciarlo.
>
> *- What I like is her manner of pronouncing it.*

4. **Lo** in idiomatic expressions:

Did you know?

Belgium has 3 official languages: French, Dutch and German. Many Belgians are bilingual or trilingual.

a lo mejor – perhaps, *por lo visto* – apparently, *por lo menos* – at least, *de lo contrario* – otherwise.

The Partitive

Along with the definite article, in <u>French</u> and <u>Italian</u> (as early as the 14th century) there came into existence the partitive article that dates back to the combination *de* + *ille*, which represents the equivalent of the partitive non-autonomous pronoun It. *ne*, Fr. *en*, Lat. *inde*.

In English we usually use words such as *some* or *any* or no article at all with nouns that are not counted, for instance milk and tea. In Italian and French the partitive also designates undetermined quantity and is also used with uncounted nouns.

The partitive is formed as a result of liaison of the preposition: It. *di*, Fr. *de* with the definite article:

Italian	French
di + il = del;	*de + le = du;*
di + lo = dello / di + l'= dell';	*de + la = de la;*
di + la = della / di + gli = degli;	*de + les = des.*
di + i = dei / di + le = delle.	

1. In Italian and French the partitive is used with uncounted nouns:

It.: Ha comprato *del* pane, *dello* zucchero e *della* carne; Hanno bevuto *del* latte.

Fr.: Il a acheté **du** pain, **du** sucre et **de la** viande; Ils ont bu **du** lait.

- *He bought **some** bread, **some** sugar and **some** meat; They drank **some** milk.*

2. It is used with abstract nouns, designating an abstract idea:

It. Hai **del** talento.

Fr. Tu as **du** talent.

- *You are talented.*

3. It is used after nouns, designating quantity:

It.: una bottiglia **di** vino

Fr.: une bouteille **de** vin

- a bottle **of** wine

There are such expressions of quantity as:

Italian	French	English
scatola di	une boîte de	a box of
bottiglia di	une bouteille de	a bottle of
un bicchiere di	un verre de	a glass of
una tazza di	une tasse de	a cup of
un chilo di	un kilo de	a kilogram of
un litro di	un litre de	a liter of

Italian	French	English
una dozzina di	*une douzaine de*	*a dozen (of)*
un pezzo di	*un morceau de*	*a piece of*
una feta di	*une tranche de*	*a slice of*
un po' di	*un peu de*	*a little*

NOTE:

*In French in negative sentences, the partitive article is replaced by **de**.*

*Affirmative: J'ai **du** pain.*

*Negative: Je n'ai pas **de** pain.*

*Also, when an adjective is placed before a noun in the plural, the partitive becomes **de**:*

Singular: J'ai un bon ami.

*Plural: j'ai **de** bons amis.*

Contraction of the Article

When next to the definite article in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, the most frequently used prepositions become contracted forms. This phenomenon can be considered a declination of the article. The most common contracted forms are *ad* + *ille* and *de* + *ille*, which correspond to genitive and dative cases.

In Romance languages the article can be contracted as follow:

Latin	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ad + ille	a+el= al	a+o =ao	a+il/lo=al/ allo	a+le= au

Latin	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ad + illa	a la	a+a= à	a+la= alla	a la
de +ille	de+el= del	de+o= do	di+il/ lo=del/dello	de+le= du
de + illa	de la	de+a= da	di+la= della	de la
in + ille	*enno*	em+o= no	in+il=nel,ne llo	*el, eu, au*
in + illa	*enna*	em+a= na	in+la= nella	*en la*
sub + ille	*sol*	-	su+il=sul, su llo	-
sub + illa	-	-	su+la= sulla	-
per + ille	*pol*	por+o= pelo	*pel*	-
per + illa	-	pela	*pella*	-
cum + ille	*col*	-	con+il=col, collo	-
cum + illa	*conna*	-	*colla*	-

NOTE:

In italics are archaic and dialect forms.

Sp. Él va *al* cine hoy;

Port. Ele vai *ao* cinema hoje;

It. Lui va *al* cinema oggi;

Fr. Il va *au* cinéma aujourd'hui.

- He goes to the cinema.

Sp. Esta ciudad es la mejor **del** mundo;

Port. Esta cidade é a melhor **do** mundo;

It. Questa città è la migliore **del** mondo;

Fr. Cette ville est la meilleure **du** monde.

- This city is the best in the world.

Did you know?

Chilean Spanish is quite specific and easily identified in other Latin American countries for its 'melody'. Chileans speak quite quickly and do not even pronounce terminal consonants.

From the table above it is clear that Romance languages have lexical similarity and common grammatical system of contraction the article with prepositions, which date back to their predecessor – Latin.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

A pronoun is a word we use and which serves as a noun when we do not want or need to name something or someone directly, for instance, I, you, it, him, her.

Personal Pronouns

There are five types of personal pronouns in Romance languages:

* subject pronoun;

* direct object pronoun;

* indirect object pronoun;

* prepositional (disjunctive) pronouns;

* reflexive pronouns.

Also, there are several pronouns in Italian and French (It. *ne, ci*; Fr. *en, y*), which are used in certain constructions.

Below is the table presenting all the types of personal pronouns:

	Spanish	Potuguese	Italian	French	English
	yo	*eu*	*io*	*je, j'*	*I*
	tú/vos	*tu*	*tu*	*tu*	*you (sing.inf)*

	Spanish	**Potugue se**	**Italian**	**French**	**English**
Subject	*él/ella/ usted*	*ele/ ela/ você, o/a senhor -(a)*	*lui/ lei/Lei*	*il,elle, on*	*he, it/ she,it/ you (sing.f.)*
	nosotros -(as)	*nós*	*noi*	*nous*	*we*
	vosotros (as)	*vós*	*voi*	*vous*	*you (pl. inf.)*
	ellos/ ellas/ ustedes	*eles/ elas/ vocês, os/as senhores -(as)*	*loro/ Loro*	*ils/ elles*	*they (m. fem)/you (pl. f)*
Direct object	*me*	*me*	*mi*	*me/m'*	*me*
	te	*te*	*ti*	*te/t`*	*you (sing.inf)*
	lo/la	*o/a*	*lo/la/ l'*	*le/l` la/l'*	*him, it/ her,it*
	nos	*nos*	*ci*	*nous*	*us*
	os	*vos*	*vi*	*vous*	*you (pl.)*

	Spanish	Potugue se	Italian	French	English
	los/las	os/as	li/ le	les	them (m, fem)
Indirect object	me	me	mi	me	me
	te	te	ti	te	you (sing.inf)
	le	lhe	gli /le	lui	him, it/ her
	nos	nos	ci	nous	us
	os	vos	vi	vous	you (pl. inf.)
	les	lhes	loro/ Loro	leur	them
Prepos itional pronou ns	mí	mim	me	moi	me
	ti	ti/si	te	toi	you (sing.inf)
	él/ella/ usted	ele/ ela/ você, o/a senhor -(a)	lui/ lei/Lei	lui/elle	him, it/ her/you (sing.f.)
	nosotros (as)	nos	noi	nous	us

	Spanish	Potugue se	Italian	French	English
	vosotros (as)	*vos*	*voi*	*vous*	*you (pl. inf.)*
	ellos/ ellas/ ustedes	*êles/ elas/ vocês, os/as senhores -(as)*	*loro/ Loro*	*eux/ elles*	*them (m. fem)/you (pl. f)*
	me	*me*	*mi*	*me/m'*	*myself*
	te	*te*	*ti*	*te/t'*	*yourself*
Reflexi ve pronou ns	*se*	*se*	*si*	*se/s'*	*himself/ herself/ itself*
	nos	*nos*	*ci*	*nous*	*ourselves*
	os	*vos*	*vi*	*vous*	*yourselv ,es*
	se	*se*	*si*	*se*	*themselv es*

Subject Pronouns

Overview

Did you know?

The official language of Mozambique is Portuguese, a legacy of the colonizers. When the country became independent in 1975, several attempts were taken to replace the colonial language but they were unsuccessful.

A subject pronoun, such as I, he, we, they, is used to perform the action, which is presented by the verb. Generally subject or personal pronouns replace a subject noun or name, and they can be classified in several different ways: person (1st, 2nd or 3rd), number (singular or plural), gender (male or female) and formality (formal or informal) in the Romance languages.

Below is the table showing all the forms of subject pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Potuguese	Italian	French	English
yo	eu	io	je, j'	I
tú/vos	tu	tu	tu	you (sing.inf)
él/ella/ usted	ele/ela/ você, o/a senhor (a)	lui/lei/Lei	il,elle,on	he, it/ she,it/ you (sing.f.)
nosotros (as)	nós	noi	nous	we
vosotros (as)	vós	voi	vous	you (pl. inf.)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ellos/ ellas/ ustedes	*eles/elas/ vocês, os/ as senhores (as)*	*loro/Loro*	*ils/elles*	*they (m. fem)/you (pl. f)*

Use of Subject Pronouns

Pronouns are used instead of nouns when it is clear who we talk about (e.g. His father is at work. He will return by 7 p.m.).

1st person singular in the Romance languages corresponds with that of English language. For example:

Sp. *Yo* soy un estudiante;

Port. *Eu* sou um estudante;

It. *Io* sono uno studente;

Fr. *Je* suis un étudiant;

- *I am a student.*

NOTE:

*In <u>French</u> the pronoun of the 1st person **Je** changes to **J'** when it is placed before words which begin with a **vowel, h** or **y**. For example: J'aime – I love;*

J'habite à Paris – I live in Paris;

J'y vais bientôt – I am going there soon.

In Romance languages there are several ways to express *you.*

Familiar way of addressing people:

Sp. *tú/vos* (*singular*), *vosotros(as)* (*plural*);

Euro. Port. *tu* (*s.*), *vos* (*pl.*), Braz. Port. *você* (s.), *vocês* (pl.);

It. *tu* (*s.*), *voi* (*pl.*);

Fr. *tu* (*s.*), *vous* (*pl.*)

The examples above are basically used to address people one knows very well: friends, relatives. Observe the following:

Sp. *Tú* eres muy amable;

Euro. Port. *Tu* és muito amável, Braz. Port. Você é muito amável;

It. *Tu* sei molto gentile;

Fr. *Tu* es très gentil;

- *You are very nice.*

NOTE:
In Spanish the 2nd person singular pronoun **vos** *is used primarily in Argentina, Uruguay and Paraguay.*

Formal way of addressing people:

Sp. *usted* (*s.*), *ustedes* (*pl.*);

Euro. Port. *você, o/a senhor(a)* (*s.*), *vocês, os/as senhores(as)* (*pl.*)

Braz. Port. *o/a senhor(a)* (*s.*), *os/as senhores(as)* (*pl.*)

It. *Lei* (*s.*), *Loro* (*pl.*)

Fr. *vous* (both *s.* and *pl.*)

These pronouns are used to address superiors, strangers, people who one does not know very well or has never met before, or show a relationship that is polite and respectful. For instance:

Did you know?

When Italy became one nation in 1861 and officially chose Tuscan Italian as the national tongue, only 2.5% Italians were able to speak the standardized language.

Sp. ***Usted*** es muy amable;

Port ***O senhor*** é muito amável;

It. ***Lei*** è molto gentile;

Fr. ***Vous*** êtes très gentil.

- ***You*** are very nice.

NOTE:
*In Spanish **usted** and **ustedes** are often abbreviated while writing to Ud., Vd., Uds., or Vds.*

In Portuguese ***você*** is slightly more formal than ***tu***, but nevertheless not formal enough to talk to people who one has never met before or to a superior. In this case, one should use ***o senhor*** or ***a senhora***. It is notable that using the subject pronouns ***você*** and ***vocês*** instead of ***tu*** is predominantly a familiar way of addressing people in Brazilian Portuguese. To address someone formally, one uses ***o senhor*** or ***a senhora*** in the Brazilian variant of Portuguese.

In Italian it is important to notice the distinction between the capitalized ***Lei*** and ***Loro***, which are formal "you", and ***lei*** and ***loro*** which mean *she* and *they*.

In French, as you can see, there is only one form: ***vous***. It is used to address people whatever their relation to each other.

It is extremely important to note that Spanish ***usted***, ***ustedes***; Portuguese ***você***, ***o/a senhor(a)***, ***vocês***, ***os/as senhores(as)***; and Italian ***Lei***, ***Loro*** always take the 3rd person forms of the verb, singular and plural, respectively, which is why they are placed in the 3rd person in the table above. For instance:

Sp. ***Usted*** puede hablar Inglés;

Port. ***O senhor*** pode falar Inglês;

It. ***Lei*** sa parlare inglese.

- ***You, sir,*** *can speak English.*

Since nouns in Romance languages have two genders, masculine and feminine, the 3rd person singular and plural, as you can see from the table, also has masculine and feminine forms of the pronoun, which are used to talk about things, as well as about people or animals. Look at the following example:

Sp. Me gusta el perro de mi amigo. ***Él*** es muy inteligente;

Port. Eu gosto do cachorro do meu amigo. ***Ele*** é muito inteligente;

It. Mi piace il cane del mio amico. ***Lui*** è molto intelligente;

Fr. J'aime le chien de mon ami. ***Il*** est très intelligent.

- *I like my friend's dog.* ***He/It*** *is very smart.*

NOTE:

In <u>French</u> *the pronoun* **on** *is used in the 3rd person form of the verb and means* **one, people, they, you.** *Example:*

Fr. Si **on** *aime, on est heureux.*
− *If* **people (one, they, you)** *love(s),* **people (one, they, you)** *are (is) happy.*

Also, in informal everyday French the pronoun **on** *can mean* **we,** *replacing the pronoun nous. Example:*

*Fr. **On** va au cinema ce soir.*

*– **We're** going to the cinema tonight.*

*Finally, using the pronoun **on**, we can avoid a passive construction. Example:*

*Fr. **On** m'a donné un cadeau.*

– I was given a gift.

Omission of Subject Pronouns

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, subject pronouns are usually omitted, since the verb ending indicates the subject, which is not true for French where the ending of the verb is not pronounced and therefore the use of subject pronouns is necessary in order to indicate the subject.

Sp. Hoy vamos al centro de la ciudad;

Port. Hoje vamos ao centro da cidade;

It. Oggi andiamo al centro della città;

Fr. Aujourd'hui <u>nous</u> allons au centre ville.

- *Today <u>we</u> are going to the city centre.*

However, subject pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian should be used in the following cases:

‣ It is used for emphasis:

Sp. **Yo** lo hago!

Port. **Eu** o faço!

It. *Io* lo faccio!

- I do it!

▸It is used for contrast:

Sp. *Yo* hablo y *tú* escuchas;

Port. *Eu* falo e *você* escuta;

It. *Io* parlo e *tu* ascolti.

- I speak and you listen.

NOTE:

When we talk about the time and the weather in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, subject pronouns are also omitted. However, in French the pronoun il is used, which is often in the same way as we use some phrases with it in English. Example:

Sp. *Esta lloviendo;*

Port. *Está chovendo;*

It. *Piove;*

Fr. *Il pleut;*

- It is raining.

▸ In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the subject pronoun is also used on its own without verb, for example:

Sp. Quién lo compró? *Yo.*

Port. Quem o comprou? *Eu.*

It. Chi l'ha comprato? *Io.*

*- Who bought it? **Me**.*

NOTE:

*However, in French when we want to emphasize something or show a contrast or use a pronoun on its own without a verb, we should use the disjunctive pronoun (**See the Disjunctive Pronoun p.125**) in this case:*

Fr. ***Toi**, tu m'as dit que tu étais chez toi.*
*- **You**, you told me that you were at home.*

Fr. *Qui a acheté ça? **Moi**.*
*- Who bought it? **Me**.*

➤ In Spanish and Portuguese the subject pronoun is used in comparisons. Study the following:

Sp. Ella es más joven que **yo**.

Port. Ela é mais jovem do que **eu**.

*- She is younger than **me**.*

Direct Object

Direct objects are nouns which receive the action of a verb in sentences. The direct object pronouns (me, him, us and them) are used to replace that noun.

Below is the table that shows all the forms of direct object pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
me	*me*	*mi*	*me/m'*	*me*
te	*te*	*ti*	*te/t`*	*you (sing.inf)*
lo/la	*o/a*	*lo/la/l'*	*le/l` la/l'*	*him, it/ her,it*
nos	*nos*	*ci*	*nous*	*us*
os	*vos*	*vi*	*vous*	*you (pl.)*
los/las	*os/as*	*li/le*	*les*	*them (m. fem)*

Just like personal subject pronouns are used instead of subject nouns in sentences, direct object pronouns replace the direct object noun in a sentence, which is a thing or a person:

Sp. Leemos libros.

Port. Lemos livros.

It. Leggiamo libri.

Fr. Nous lisons des livres.

— *We read books.*

Spanish "*libros*", Portuguese "*livros*", Italian "*libri*" and French "*livres*" receive the action of Sp. *leemos*, Port. *lemos*, It. *leggiamo*, Fr. *lison*. In this sentence Sp. "*libros*", Port. "*livros*", It. "*libri*", Fr. "*livres*" are the direct object. They are plural and masculine and, as it represents an inanimate object, they are the 3rd person, and therefore, we can replace it with the direct object pronoun Sp. *los*, Port. *os*, It. *li*, Fr. *les*:

Sp. *Los* leemos,

Euro. Port. lemos-*os*; Braz. Port. Port. *Os* lemos,

It. *Li* leggiamo,

Fr. Nous *les* lisons

– *We read **them**.*

Did you know?

In 2008, Ecuador was the first country to officially recognize Rights of Nature in its Constitution. Ecuador acknowledges that nature has the "right to exist, persist, maintain and regenerate its vital cycles". (Source: Rights of Nature)

As we said, the direct object of a sentence can be a person as well:

Sp. Ellos *me* aman,

Port. Eles *me* amam,

It. Loro *mi* amano,

Fr. Ils *m'*aiment.

– *They love **me**.*

In French the direct object pronouns *me*, *le* and *la* and Italian *lo* and *la* become *m'* and *l'* before verbs that begin with a **vowel** or mute *h*:

It. *L'*apro.

– *I open **it**.*

Fr. Ils *m'*aiment.

– *They love **me**.*

Fr. Elle *l'*achète.

– *She buys **it**.*

Use of Direct Object Pronouns

1. We use them to substitute nouns when it is clear what or who is being discussed, and also to avoid the repetition of the noun. Note that direct object pronouns precede the conjugated form of the verb.

> Sp. Mark lee el libro. Él *lo* lee;
>
> Port. Mark lê o livro. Ele lê-*lo*;
>
> (Braz, Port. Mark lê o livro. Mark *o* lê);
>
> It. Mark legge il libro. Lui *lo* legge;
>
> Fr. Mark lit le livre. Il *le* lit.
>
> − *Mark reads a book. He reads it.*

2. Sp. *lo*; Port. *o*; It, *lo*; Fr. *le* are sometimes used to replace the entire information or idea that has already been presented.

> Sp. He comprado un vestido nuevo. - *Lo* sé;
>
> Port. Eu comprei um vestido novo. - Eu *o* sei;
>
> It. Ho comprato un vestito nuovo. - *Lo* so;
>
> Fr. J'ai acheté une nouvelle robe. − Je *le* sais.
>
> − *I bought a new robe. - I know (it).*

Word Order of Direct Object Pronouns

1. As it was said earlier the direct object is usually put before a verb:

Did you know?

The official language of Cape Verde is Portuguese, since the islands were Portuguese colonies from 1462-1975.

Sp. *Te* conozco;

Euro. Port. Eu conheço-*te*;

Braz. Port. Eu conheço **você** *or* Eu *te* conheço);

It. *Ti* conosco;

Fr. Je *te* connais.

— I know **you**.

2. In the perfect tense, which is formed with verbs *have* or *be* and the past participle, the direct object pronoun precedes *have* or *be* in the verb conjugation.

Sp. Ella *me* ha visto;

Port. Ela *me* tem visto;

It. Lei *mi* ha visto;

Fr. Elle *m'*a vu.

— She has seen **me**.

3. In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, you attach the direct object pronouns to the end of affirmative commands (In French you do not attach it). In negative commands, you place it between *no* (or other negative word) and the verb (in Italian and Spanish you attach it to the end of the verb and in Portuguese you use hyphen to attach them).

Sp. Léa*lo*;

Port. Leia-*o*;

It. Leggi*lo*;

Fr. Lis *le*.

– Read it.

Sp. No *lo* leas.

Euro. Port. Não lê-*lo*. (Braz. Port. Não o lê.)

It. Non legger*lo*.

Fr. Ne *le* lis pas.

– Do not read it.

Divergent Aspects in Word Order

However, there are some divergent peculiarities in word order of direct object pronouns in the Romance languages that need to be remembered.

1. When a verb is followed by another verb in the infinitive (the "to" form), the direct pronoun is put before the infinitive in French, for example:

Fr. Il voudrait *la* voir.

– He would like to see her.

However. in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the direct pronoun can be placed whether before the first verb or after the infinitive attaching to it. Observe the following:

Did you know?

Italy's San Marino is the world's oldest republic (301 A.D.), and holds the world's oldest continuous constitution.

Sp. Me gustaría ver*la*;

Port. Eu gostaria de vê-*la*;

It. Mi piacerebbe veder*la*.

– I would like to see her.

2. In Brazilian Portuguese, the direct object is usually placed before the verb like in other Romance languages, but in European Portuguese the direct object pronoun follows the verb and is linked to it by a hyphen in the following cases:

- In affirmative sentences:

    Euro. Port. Ela compra a casa. Ela compra-*a*.

    Braz. Port. Ela compra a casa. Ela *a* compra.

    – *She buys a house. She buys it.*

- In affirmative commands:

    Euro.Port. Leia o livro. Leia-*o*.

    – *Read the book. Read it.*

- In questions which are not introduced by an interrogative:

    Euro.Port. Viste-*a* a semana passada?

    Braz. Port. Você *a* viu a semana passada?

    – *Did you see her last week?*

    But nevertheless, the direct object pronoun precedes the verb in the following cases:

- In negative sentences (with words like **não** - *do/does not*; **jamais** - *never*; **nunca** - *never*; **nem** - *neither*; **ninguém** - *no one*; **nenhum** - *none*; **nada** - *nothing*):

> Euro.Port. Ela **não nos** viu ontem.
>
> *– She **did not** see **us** yesterday.*

> Euro.Port. **nunca o** tenho encontrado antes.
>
> *– I have **never** met **him** before.*

- In questions introduced by an interrogative (**quando**? - *when*?; **onde**? - *where*?; **quem**? - *who*?; **qual**? - *which*? and etc.):

> Euro.Port. **Onde os** viste?
>
> Braz. Port. **Onde** você **os** viu?
>
> *– **Where** did you see **them**?*

- After conjunctions such as **que** (*that*) or **como** (*as*):

> Euro.Port. Eu acho que ele **a** visitou ontem.
>
> *– I think that he visited **her** yesterday.*

- When it follows the adverbs such as: **sempre** - *always*; **tudo** - *everything*; **ainda** - *still*; **talvez** - *maybe*; **também** - *as well*; **muito** - *many/much*; **pouco** - *little*; **bastante** - *enough*:

> Euro.Port. **Tudo nos** recorda nosso país.
>
> *– Everything reminds **us** of our country.*

Euro.Port. *Talvez os* encontro no cinema.

*– Perhaps I will meet **them** in the cinema.*

Did you know?

Over 95% of the population of Canada's Quebec is French speaking, with French as the only provincial official language.

As you might notice, in European Portuguese there are a lot of nuances and exceptions when it comes to the word order of direct object pronouns. To make it simple to learn, it is advisable to follow Brazilian Portuguese and place the direct object before the conjugated verb.

Different Variants of Direct Object in Portuguese

There are also different variants of direct object pronouns in Portuguese:

- If the verb ending in a vowel or an oral diphthong, the pronoun is not changed. Observe the following example:

  Euro. Port. Ela comprou um carro e eu vi-*o*;

  Braz. Port. Ela comprou um carro e eu *o* vi.

  *– She bought a car and I saw **it**.*

- If the verb ends in *–r*, *–s* or *–z*, these endings are removed and the pronouns *–o*, *–a*, *–os*, *–as* change into *–lo*, *–la*, *–los*, *–las*:

  Port. Vamos comprar a casa. Vamos compra-*la*.

*– Let's buy the house. Let's buy **it**.*

Port. Comemos o bolo. Comemo-**lo**.

*– We eat the cake. We eat **it**.*

NOTE:

*If the verb ends in –**ar** or –**az**, the **a** takes an acute accent to keep the open sound of the vowel. If the verb ends in –**er** or –**ez**, the **e** takes a circumflex accent to keep the closed sound of the vowel, for instance:*

Port. *Muito prazer em conhecê-lo.*
– Very pleased to meet you.

*Infinitives of compounds of **pôr**, **repor**, etc. do not have a circumflex accent on the **o** but it is added when the final .**r** of the infinitive is dropped before taking a direct object pronoun. Study the following:*

Port. *Quero **pô**-lo sobre a mesa.*
– I want to put it on the table.

• If the verb ends in –**m**, –**ão**, –**õe** or –**ões**, the pronoun –**o**, –**a**, –**os**, –**as** change into –**no**, –**na**, –**nos**, –**nas**, for example:

Port. Eles conhecem a rua. Eles conhecem-**na**.

*– They know the street. They know **it**.*

Port. Eles são profissionais. Eles são-**no**;

Braz. Port. Eles são profissionais. Eles **os** são.

– *They are professionals. They are (so).*

Indirect Object

An indirect object pronoun tells us "*to whom*" or "*for whom*" something is done. Just like how direct object pronouns are used instead of direct objects, indirect object pronouns replace indirect objects, which are personal nouns.

Below is the table that shows all the forms of indirect object pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
me	me	mi	me	me
te	te	ti	te	you (sing.inf)
le	lhe	gli /le	lui	him, it/her
nos	nos	ci	nous	us
os	vos	vi	vous	you (pl. inf.)
les	lhes	loro/ Loro	leur	them

Use of Indirect Object Pronouns

Like direct, indirect object pronouns in Romance languages can be used only in conjugation with verbs. It is important to see the difference between direct and indirect object, since they have different forms in English and Romance languages. In general, to indicate the indirect object phrase in a sentence, you should ask "*to whom?*", "*for whom?*" For example:

Did you know?

The expression "Soy mas Peruano que la papa" meaning "I am more Peruvian than the potato" is used by the locals as potatoes are historically from Peru.

Sp. Él escribió una carta ***a Sandra.***

Port. Ele escreveu uma carta ***para Sandra.***

It. Ha scritto una lettera ***a Sandra.***

Fr. Il a écrit une lettre ***à Sandra.***

– *He wrote a letter **to Sandra.***

A Sandra is the indirect object, and therefore, we can replace it with the indirect object pronoun Sp. ***le***, Port. ***lhe***, It. ***le***, Fr. ***lui***:

Sp. Él ***le*** escribió.

Port. Ele ***lhe*** escreveu (Ele escreveu para ela).

It. lui ***le*** ha scritto.

Fr. Il ***lui*** a écrit.

– *He wrote **to her**.*

One more example:

Sp. Él compró un regalo ***para mí.***

Port. Ele comprou um presente ***para mim.***

It. Lui ha comprato un regalo ***per me.***

Fr. Il a acheté un cadeau ***pour moi.***

- *He bought a gift **for me**.*

He bought a gift for whom? *For me.* Therefore, we should use the indirect object pronoun *me*:

Sp. *Me* compró un regalo.

Port. Ele *me* comprou um presente.

It. *Mi* ha comprato un regalo.

Fr. Il *m'*a acheté un cadeau.

- He bought *me* a gift.

It should be said that direct and indirect object pronouns are the same for Romance languages except in the 3rd person.

NOTE:

In Spanish, Portuguese and French, the 3rd person indirect object pronoun is gender neutral and it is common for Spanish to maintain the indirect object phrase in the sentence to make it clear:

Sp. Él escribió una carta a Sandra. Le escribió a ella.

- He wrote a letter to Sandra. He wrote to her.

*However, Italian differentiates the 3rd person indirect pronouns, which are **gli** (to him) and **le** (to her) in the singular. Note, that **gli** and **le** put before the conjugated form of the verb, whereas **loro** follows the conjugated verb form. Also, as you noticed, there is no gender identification with **loro**.*

Gli** becomes **gl'** before forms of the verb that begin with –i, whereas **le** and **loro** never contract in Italian. However, this rule is quite old and it's possible to use **gli

before -i without any contraction. For example:

*Io scrivo a John – Io **gli** scrivo. – I write to John. I write to **him**.*

*Tu insegni a John – Tu **gl'insegni** (or Tu **gli** insegni).- You teach John. You teach **him**.*

*Parliamo a Sandra – **Le** parliamo. – We speak to Sandra. We speak to **her**.*

*Parla agli studenti – Parla **loro**. – She speaks to the students. She speaks to **them**.*

Common Verbs Used with an Indirect Object in Romance Languages

Below is the list of words which usually take a person as the indirect object in Romance languages.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
comprar algo a **(le)**	comprar algo a **(lhe)**	comprare qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	acheter quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to buy smth for smb*
contar algo a **(le)**	contar algo a **(lhe)**	contare qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	raconter quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to tell smth to smb*
dar algo a **(le)**	dar algo a **(lhe)**	dare qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	donner quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to give smth to smb*
decir algo a **(le)**	dizer algo a **(lhe)**	dire qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	dire de quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to say smth to smb*
escribir algo a **(le)**	escrever algo a **(lhe)**	scrivere qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	écrire quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to write smth to smb*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
mandar algo a **(le)**	enviar algo a **(lhe)**	inviare, mandare qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	envoyer quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to send smth to smb*
mostrar algo a **(le)**	mostrar algo a **(lhe)**	mostrare qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	montrer quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to show smth to smb*
pedir algo a **(le)**	pedir algo a **(lhe)**	chiedere qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	demander de quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to ask smth of smb*
servir algo a **(le)**	servir algo a **(lhe)**	servire qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	servir quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to serve smth to smb*
traer algo a **(le)**	trazer a **(lhe)** algo	apportare qualcosa a **(gli/le)**	apporter quelque chose à **(lui)**	*to bring smth to smb*

Word Order of Indirect Object Pronouns

Generally indirect object pronouns follow the same word order rules as direct object pronouns. (**See Word Order of Direct Object Pronouns p.101**)

Contraction.
Using Direct and Indirect Object Pronouns in the Same Sentence

When direct and indirect object pronouns appear in the same sentence, they can be combined (contracted), which is a natural way to make our pronunciation simpler. Once we have both the direct and indirect object pronouns in the same sentence, the indirect object pronoun goes in front of the direct object pronoun.

112

Did you know?

The islands of São Tomé e Príncipe are located in the equatorial Atlantic, and is Africa's 2nd smallest country. Portuguese is the official language of the country. If you want to meet smiling people and enjoy astonishing beaches, you need to go to this island.

Unlike the French language, the phenomenon of contraction exists only in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian. Moreover, each of these romance languages has its own special cases of combining the indirect object pronoun with the direct object pronoun, which require particular consideration, as this phenomenon significantly distinguishes one from the other.

Spanish

The contraction of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun in Spanish is considered to be one of the simplest compared with Portuguese and Italian, as only the 3rd person singular and plural of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun combines together.

Indirect object pronouns *le* and *les* are changed to *se* when followed by *lo, la, los* or *las* in order to make it simpler for you to pronounce it.

Below is the table demonstrating the combination of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun in Spanish.

Spanish
le, les + *lo, la, los* or *las* = *se lo, se la, se los* or *se las*

Example:

Sp. Envío un mensaje a Sandra. *Se lo* envío.

– I send a message to Sandra. I send it to her.

NOTE:

In case with two verbs in the sentence and commands, the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun attach together where the indirect object pronoun precedes the direct object pronoun. For example:

Sp. *No quiero contarte este cuento. No quiero contártelo*

– I do not want to tell **you** *this story. I do not want to tell* **it to you.**

Sp. *Dame la torta. Dámela.*

– Give **me** *the cake. Give* **it to me.**

It should be noticed that once the object pronouns are attached to a verb, an accent is added to maintain the natural stress of the verb.

Portuguese

Portuguese contraction of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun is extended and requires close attention of the learners.

Below is the table demonstrating the combination of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun in Portuguese.

Indirect	Direct			
+	**o**	**a**	**os**	**as**
me	= **mo**	= **ma**	= **mos**	= **mas**
te	= **to**	= **ta**	= **tos**	= **tas**

114

lhe	= **lho**	= **lha**	= **lhos**	= **lhas**
nos	= **no-lo**	= **no-la**	= **no-los**	= **no-las**
vos	= **vo-lo**	= **vo-la**	= **vo-los**	= **vo-las**
lhes	= **lho**	= **lha**	= **lhos**	= **lhas**

Examples:

Port.Ela mandou-**me** uma mensagem. Ela mandou-**ma**

(Braz. port. Ela **me** mandou uma mensagem. Ela **ma** mandou)

— *She sent **me** a message. She sent **it to me**.*

Port. Ela deu-**lhe** os livros. Ela deu-**lhos**.

— *She gave **him** the books. She gave **them to him**.*

NOTE:

The mentioned above combination of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun is out of use in Brazilian Portuguese. For example:

*Braz. Port. Ela **me** mandou uma mensagem. Ela **me** mandou-**a**)*

— *She sent **me** a message. She sent **it to me**.*

Braz. Port. Ela deu-**lhe** os livros. Ela **lhe** deu-**os**.

— *She gave **him** the books. She gave **them to him**.*

Italian

When both the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun appear in the same sentence in Italian, the indirect object pronoun also precedes the direct object pronoun.

115

It should be noted that *mi, ti, ci* and *vi* change to *me, te,* *ce* and *ve* when followed by the direct object pronoun. Also, when the indirect object pronouns *gli* (*to him*), *le* (*to her*), and *Le* (*to you*, formal) are followed by the direct object pronouns *lo, la, li,* *le* combine into one word: *glielo, gliela, glieli, gliele*) and formal *Le* retain its capital letter and starts with capital G after combining: *Le – Glielo* (-a, -i, -e).

Below is the table that shows the combination of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun in Italian.

Indirect	*Direct*					
+	*lo*	*la*	*l'*	*li*	*le*	*ne*
mi	= *me* *lo*	= *me* *la*	= *me l'*	= *me* *li*	= *me* *le*	= *me* *ne*
ti	= *te lo*	= *te la*	= *te l'*	= *te li*	= *te le*	= *te ne*
ci	= *ce* *lo*	= *ce la*	= *ce l'*	= *ce li*	= *ce le*	= *ce* *ne*
vi	= *ve* *lo*	= *ve la*	= *ve l'*	= *ve li*	= *ve le*	= *ve* *ne*
gli	= *glielo*	= *gliela*	= *gliel'*	= *glieli*	= *gliele*	= *gliene*
le	= *glielo*	= *gliela*	= *gliel'*	= *glieli*	= *gliele*	= *gliene*
Le	= *Glielo*	= *Gliela*	= *Gliel'*	= *Glieli*	= *Gliele*	= *Gliene*

Examples:

It. Lei *mi* dà un libro. Lei *me lo* dà.

– *She gives* *me* *a book. She gives* *it to me.*

It. Lui *ti* compra dei regali. Lui *te ne* compra.

*— He buys **you** some gifts. He buys **you some** (of it, of them).*

Italian *ci, ne* and French *y, en* Special Pronouns

Italian *ci* and French *y* Pronouns

Did you know?

Sicily has the largest opera house in Italy. The Teatro Massimo was built in Palermo in 1897. Sicily is also the largest island in the Mediterranean Sea covering almost 10,000 square miles.

These pronouns do not exist in Spanish and Portuguese, and therefore, are used only in Italian and French. *Ci* and *y* pronouns are also called adverbial pronouns and are widely used in these Romance languages. Since Italian *ci* and French *y* pronouns have identical rules of use, they will be considered together, which will help to demonstrate areas of convergence of these pronouns.

Use of *ci* and *y*

Below are the rules of use for these pronouns:

1. Italian *ci* and French *y* usually replace a place and is used to say *"there"*. They replace a noun or a phrase (representing a place), which is introduced by a preposition of place, which can be Fr. *à, dans, en, chez, sur, sous;* It. *a, in, su, con.* For instance:

   It. Vado *a* Madrid = *ci* vado;

   Fr. Je vais *à* Madrid = j'*y* vais.

   *— I go to Madrid = I go **there**.*

Let's take one more example:

It. Vai *in* Francia = *ci* vai;

Fr. Tu vas *en* France = tu *y* vas.

*– You go to France = you go **there**.*

2. Italian *ci* and French *y* usually replace *a thing* which is also preceded by Fr. *à* (*au, aux, à l', à la*), It. *a* (sometimes *in, su, con*). For example:

It. Penso spesso *al* mio lavoro = *ci* penso spesso;

Fr. Je pense souvent *à* mon travail = j'*y* pense souvent.

*– I often think about my job = I often think **about it**.*

The prepositions, such as French *à* and Italian *a* are usually used with certain verbs. According to the grammar, particular verbs should always be followed by the particular preposition like Fr. *à* or It. *a* (ex. It. pensare *a*; Fr. penser *à* – *to think **of/about***).

To know when to put the pronoun *ci* and *y*, it is advisable to learn the most common verbs followed by the preposition *à* in French and *a* in Italian.

Below is the list of the most common verbs followed by the preposition à in French and a in Italian after which the infinitive is used.

Italian Verbs with a + the infinitive	French Verbs with à + the infinitive	English
aiutare a fare qualcosa	aider à faire quelque chose	*to help to do smth.*

Italian Verbs with a + the infinitive	French Verbs with à + the infinitive	English
imparare a fare qualcosa	apprendre à faire quelque chose	*to learn how to do smth.*
arrivare a fare qualcosa	arriver à faire quelque chose	*to succeed in doing smth.*
avere *da* fare qualcosa	avoir à faire quelque chose	*to have to / be obliged to do smth.*
provare a fare qualcosa	chercher à faire quelque chose	*to attempt to do smth.*
cominciare (iniziare) a fare qualcosa	commencer à faire quelque chose	*to begin to do smth.*
continuare a fare qualcosa	continuer à faire quelque chose	*to continue to do smth.*
acconsentire a fare qualcosa	consentir à faire quelque chose	*to agree to do smth.*
decidersi a (di) fare qualcosa	se décider à faire quelque chose	*to make up one's mind to do smth.*
incoraggiare qualcuno a fare qualcosa	encourager quelqu'un à faire quelque chose	*to encourage someone to do smth.*
abituarsi a fare qualcosa	s'habituer à faire quelque chose	*to get used to doing smth.*
esitare a fare qualcosa	hésiter à faire quelque chose	*to hesitate to do smth.*
chiamare (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	inviter (quelqu'un) à faire. quelque chose	*to invite (someone) to do smth.*
mettersi a fare qualcosa	se mettre à faire quelque chose	*to start doing smth.*

Italian Verbs with a + the infinitive	French Verbs with à + the infinitive	English
forzare (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	forcer (quelqu'un) à faire quelque chose	*to force (someone) to do smth.*
obbligare (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	obliger (quelqu'un) à faire quelque chose	*to oblige (someone) to do smth.*
riuscire a fare qualcosa	parvenir à faire quelque chose	*to succeed in doing smth.*
passare (trascorrere) il tempo a fare qualcosa	passer du temps à faire quelque chose	*to spend time doing smth.*
pensare a fare qualcosa	penser à faire quelque chose	*to think of doing smth.*
perdere tempo a fare qualcosa	perdre du temps à faire quelque chose	*to waste time doing smth.*
persistere a fare qualcosa	persister à faire quelque chose	*to persist in doing smth.*
spingere (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	pousser (quelqu'un) à faire quelque chose	*to push someone to do smth.*
prepararsi a fare qualcosa	se préparer à faire quelque chose	*to prepare oneself to do smth.*
ricominciare a fare qualcosa	recommencer à faire quelque chose	*to begin doing smth. again*
rinunciare a fare qualcosa	renoncer à faire quelque chose	*to give up doing smth.*
resistere a fare qualcosa	résister à faire quelque chose	*to resist doing smth.*

Italian Verbs with a + the infinitive	French Verbs with à + the infinitive	English
riuscire a fare qualcosa	réussir à faire quelque chose	*to succeed in doing smth.*
continuare (tenere) a fare qualcosa	tenir à faire quelque chose	*to insist on doing smth.*
divertirsi a fare qualcosa	s'amuser à faire quelque chose	*to have fun doing smth.*
aspettarsi a (di) fare qualcosa	s'attendre à faire quelque chose	*to expect doing smth.*
autorizzare (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	autoriser (quelqu'un) à faire quelque chose	*to allow someone to do smth.*
interessarsi a qualcosa	s'intéresser à quelque chose	*to show a special interest in smth.*

It is notable that these pronouns can replace only a thing and never a person because in this case the indirect object or the disjunctive pronoun should be used. For instance:

It. Hai parlato a Daniela? Sì **le** ho parlato.

Fr. Tu as parlé à Daniela? Oui je **lui** ai parlé.

- *Have you talked to Daniela? Yes, I have talked **to her**.*

Example using disjunctive pronoun:

It. Penso a **lui**;

Fr. Je pense à **lui**.

- *I think of **him**.*

3. *Ci* and *y* are also used in such expression as It. *c'è* (*singular*), *ci sono* (*plural*); Fr. *il y a* meaning the existence of something – *there is, there are.* For example:

<div align="center">

Fr. *Il y a* un livre sur la table;

It. *C'è* un libro sul tavolo.

– *There is* a book on the table.

</div>

<div align="center">

Fr. *Il y a* des lettres sur la table;

It. *Ci sono* lettere sul tavolo.

– *There are* letters on the table.

</div>

Italian *ne* and French *en* Pronouns

These pronouns are also used only in Italian and French and do not have equivalents in Spanish and Portuguese. Italian *ne* and French *en* pronouns are also called adverbial pronouns and are often used in these languages. Since *ne* and *en* pronouns also have identical rules of use, they will be considered together.

Use of *ne* and *en*

Below are the rules of use of these pronouns:

1. Italian *ne* and French *en* replace <u>a quantity</u> (direct object representing a quantity), which can be introduced by a partitive article (Fr. *de, du, de la, de l', des*), a number, a fraction (Fr. *un quart*), an adverb of quantity (Fr. *beaucoup be, un peu de*) or an expression of quantity (Fr. *un litre de, un kilo de, une bouteille de*). For example:

It. Ho ***due fratelli*** = ***Ne*** ho due;

Fr. J'ai ***deux frère*** = J'***en*** ai deux.

*– I have **two brothers** = I have two **of them**.*

Let's take one more example:

It. ***Quanti libri*** hai comprato? ***Ne*** ho comprati·moltissimi;

Fr. ***Combien de livres*** as-tu acheté? J'***en*** ai acheté beaucoup.

*– **How many books** did you bought? I bought a lot.*

It should be remembered that the quantity and the adverb of quantity is always repeated (ex. It. Compro ***una bottiglia di*** latte = ***ne*** compro una bottiglia; Fr. J'achète ***une bouteille du*** lait = J'***en*** achète une bouteille. *– I bought one bottle of milk = I bought one bottle **of it**.*)

2. Italian ***ne*** and French ***en*** usually replace <u>*a thing*</u> (a noun or sentence) which is introduced by the prepositions: It. `di, da`; Fr. *de, du, de la, de l', des. - of, about.*

For example:

It. Parlo ***del*** mio lavoro = ***Ne*** parlo;

Fr. Je parle ***de*** mon travail – J'***en*** parle.

*– I speak **about** my job = I speak **about it**.*

123

The prepositions, such as French *de, du, des* and Italian *di, da* are usually used with certain verbs, that is to say that according to the grammar, particular verbs should always be followed by the particular preposition like Fr. *de* or It. *di* (ex. It. *parlare di*; Fr. *parler de* – *to speak about*). And to better know when to put the pronoun *ne* and *en*, it is advisable to learn the most common verbs followed by the preposition *de* in French and *di* in Italian.

It is notable that these pronouns can replace only a thing and never a person because in this case the disjunctive pronoun should be used. Observe the following:

It. Hai parlato di Daniela? Sì, ho parlato di *lei*.

Fr. Tu as parlé de Daniela? Oui j'ai parlé d'*elle*.

- Did you speak about Daniela? Yes, I spoke about *her*

3. *ne* and *en* are also used in such expression as:

It. *Me ne vado*;

Fr. *Je m'en vais*.

– *I am going away (I am leaving)*.

It should be noted that the pronouns It. *ci, ne* and Fr. *y, en* go before the conjugated verb.

NOTE:
If a sentence contain two verbs, in which one is conjugated verb and one infinitive, in Italian you should attach **ci** *or* **ne** *to the infinitive. For example:*
Voglio andarci. – I want to go **there**.

Ha bisogno di comprarne tre. – He needs to buy three of them.

But in French the pronouns *y* and *en* are placed in front of the infinitive. For example:

Je veux y aller. – I want to go there.

Il a besoin d'en acheter trois. – He needs to buy three of them.

Prepositional (Disjunctive) Pronouns

In Romance languages the prepositional or disjunctive pronouns follow a preposition or a verb or when you want to emphasize something.

Below is the table that shows all the forms of prepositional (disjunctive) pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
mí	*mim*	*me*	*moi*	*me*
ti	*ti/si*	*te*	*toi*	*you (sing.inf)*
él/ella/ usted	*ele/ ela/ você, o/a senhor(a)*	*lui/lei/ Lei*	*lui/elle*	*him, it/ her/you (sing.f.)*
nosotros (as)	*nos*	*noi*	*nous*	*us*
vosotros (as)	*vos*	*voi*	*vous*	*you (pl. inf.)*
ellos/ ellas/ ustedes	*êles/elas/ vocês, os/as senhores(as)*	*loro/ Loro*	*eux/elles*	*they (m. fem)/you (pl. f)*

125

Use of prepositional (Disjunctive) Pronouns

1. In Romance languages prepositional (disjunctive) pronouns are used after prepositions:

> Sp. *a, de, en, para, por, sobre, con, sin*;
>
> Port. *a, de, em, para, por, sobre, sem*;
>
> It. *a, di, in, per, su, senza di*;
>
> Fr. *à, de, en, pour, sur, avec, sans.*
>
> *- to (at), from, in, for, on (about), with, without.*

For example:

> Sp. Esto es *para* ti;
>
> Euro. Port. Isto é *para* ti; Braz. Port. Isto é *para* você.
>
> It. Questo è *per* te;
>
> Fr. C'est *pour* toi.
>
> *– This is for you.*

Did you know?

Construction of the Panama Canal was originally started by French in the 1880s, but was taken over by the United States in 1904. It officially opened on August 15, 1914. The Panama Canal is considered one of the 7 modern World Wonders.

> Sp. Su padre habla *de* mí;
>
> Port. Seu pai fala *de* mim;
>
> It. Suo padre parla *di* me;
>
> Fr. Son père parle *de* moi.
>
> *– His father is talking about me.*

Special Forms of Prepositional Pronouns and Prepositions in

Spanish and Portuguese

In Spanish and Portuguese certain prepositions used with some prepositional pronouns change their form. These rules should be remembered.

Spanish

When the pronouns *yo* y *tú* follows the preposition *con*, it will be combined into *conmigo* and *contigo*. Below is the table that demonstrates this rule:

Spanish	
con + yo = conmigo	*con + tú = contigo*

Example:

¿Puedo bailar *contigo*? – *May I dance with you?*

¿Quieres viajar *conmigo*? – *Do you want to travel with me?*

It is worth saying that prepositional object pronouns have the same forms as subject pronouns, except the 1st and the 2nd person singular in Spanish.

Portuguese

In Portuguese when some prepositional pronouns follow the prepositions *com*, *em* and *de*, they change their form. Below is the table that demonstrates this rule:

Com

Portuguese				
com + mim = comigo	*com + ti = contigo*	*com + si = consigo*	*com + nós = connosco, conosco*	*com + vós = convosco*

But with other pronouns forms remain as follows: *com ele/ela, com você/vocês, com eles/elas*. For example:

Posso dançar **contigo** (but **com você**)? - *Can I dance with you?*

De

Portuguese			
de + ele = dele	*de + ela = dela*	*de + eles = deles*	*de + elas = delas*

But de **mim**, **de**, **ti** and etc. For example:

Eu sei o nome **dela** (but **teu nome**). - *I know her name (but his name).*

Em

Portuguese			
em + ele = nele	*em + ela = nela*	*em + eles = neles*	*em + elas = nelas*

But **em mim**, **em ti**, **em nós** and etc. For instance:

Nós acreditamos **nele** (but **em ti**). - *We trust him (but you)*

Below there is a general table displaying all the changed forms of prepositional pronouns and those that remained unchanged to make it simple to observe the whole picture. Prepositional pronouns **in bold** are changed forms.

Pron. / Prep.	com	de	em
mim	comigo	de mim	em mim
ti/si	contigo/ consigo	de ti	em ti
êle / ela	com ele / ela	dele / dela	nele / nela
você, o/a senhor(a)	com você / o/a senhor(a)	de você / o/a senhor(a)	em você / o/a senhor(a)
nós	connosco, conosco	de nós	em nós
vós	convosco	de vós	em vós
eles / elas	com eles	deles / delas	neles / nelas
vocês, , os/as senhores(as)	com vocês / os/as senhores(as)	de vocês / os/ as senhores(as)	em vocês / os/ as senhores(as)

In Spanish and Portuguese prepositional pronouns that are preceded by the preposition *a* are used to clarify, emphasize or contrast something. For example:

Sp. *A mí* nadie me llamó;

Port. *A mim* ninguém me ligou.

– *No one called me.*

Use of Prepositional (Disjunctive) Pronouns in French. Special Cases

Besides the cases listed above, in French, disjunctive pronouns are also called emphatic pronouns, which are also used to emphasize something. Therefore, emphatic pronouns are used in the following circumstances:

- for emphasis (ex. **Toi**, tu m'as dit que tu était chez toi. – *You, you told me that you were at home.*)

- for contrast (ex. **Moi**, je parle maintenant. – Me, *I speak now.*)

- on its own without a verb (ex. Qui a acheté? **Moi.** *Who bought it? Me.*)

- after **c'est** and **ce sont**, which means *it is* (ex. **C'est moi**, Daniela. – *It's me, Daniela.* **Ce sont eux.** – *It is them.*)

- in comparison (true for Italian as well) (ex. Fr. Elle est plus jeune que **lui**. It. Lei è più giovane di **lui** – *She is younger than* **him.**)

In order to emphasize something in Romance languages you can add Sp. **mismo**, Port. **mesmo**, It. **stesso**, Fr. **même** to the subject pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese and Italain and to the disjunctive pronouns in French. Study the following:

Did you know?

Brazil is the 6th largest country in the world by population at over 208 million people and has the longest continuous coastline in the world (7.491 km).

Sp. Lo hice **yo mismo**;

Port. **Eu mesmo** fiz isso;

It. L'ho fatto **io stesso**;

Fr. Je l'ai fait **moi même**.

– *I did it **myself**.*

Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive pronouns collaborate along with reflexive verbs in order to indicate that a person performs the action toward or for himself or herself. Reflexive pronouns and reflexive verbs are widely used in Romance language (**See Reflexive Verbs p. 500**).

Below is the table that shows all the forms of reflexive pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
me	*me*	*mi*	*me/m'*	*myself*
te	*te*	*ti*	*te/t'*	*yourself*
se	*se*	*si*	*se/s'*	*himself/ herself/ itself*
nos	*nos*	*ci*	*nouns*	*ourselves*
os	*vos*	*vi*	*vous*	*yourselves*
se	*se*	*si*	*se*	*themselves*

For example:

Did you know?

Italy's Sardinia is one of the most ancient civilizations in Europe, which has over 7000 prehistoric archaeological sites dating from before 1000 BC.

Sp. *Me* visto;

Port. Visto-*me*; (*or Me* visto);

It. *Mi* vesto;

Fr. Je *m*'habille.

– I get dressed.

As you can see from the French example, the reflexive pronouns *me*, *te* and *se* become *m'*, *t'* and *s'* before verbs that begin with a *vowel* or silent *h*. It should also be mentioned that there is a liaison between *nous* or *vous* and a word that begins with a vowel or silent *h* (ex. Nous nous habillons - *We get dressed*).

Use of Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive verbs require the use of reflexive pronouns in order to show that the direct object of the verb is also the subject, that is to say the subject is performing the action on himself or

herself. Compare, for example, two sentences in four Romance languages where one sentence is reflexive and another is not:

Did you know?

Guadeloupe is a French department (since 1946), and a group of islands located in the southern Caribbean Sea. It has incredible white sand beaches and the highest waterfall in the Caribbean.

Sp. *Me* lavo. Lavo *mi perro*.

Port. *Me* lavo (or Lavo-*me*). Eu *lavo meu cão*.

It. *Mi* lavo. Lavo *il mio cane*.

Fr. Je *me* lave. Je lave *mon chien*.

– I wash myself. I wash my dog.

The given examples demonstrate that the verb to wash yourself (Sp. *lavarse*, Port. *lavar-se*, It. *lavarsi*, Fr. *se laver*) is reflexive (used with the reflexive pronoun) and another to wash (Sp. **lavar**, Port. **lavar**, It. **lavare**, Fr. **laver**) is not reflexive.

We can also add reflexive pronouns to some other verbs, which are not initially reflexive to make them reflexive:

Sp. *hablarse*,

Port. *falar-se*,

It. *parlarsi*,

Fr. *se parler*

– to talk to oneself (each other).

Word Order of Reflexive Pronouns

In Romance languages, in Spanish, Brazilian Portuguese, Italian and French in particular, reflexive pronouns are usually put right before the verb and after indirect and direct object pronouns.

132

However in European Portuguese, as with direct and indirect pronouns, the reflexive pronoun usually follows the verb with a hyphen (ex. ***Ela sentou-se***. – *She sat down.*), except in negative and interrogative sentences, after prepositions and conjunctions and relative clauses (e.x. ***Ela não se sentou***. – *She did not sit*). (**See Word Order of Direct Object Pronouns p. 101 and Reflexive Verbs p.500**)

In the case of compound verbs such as perfect tenses or verb + the infinitive, present progressive etc., the reflexive pronoun should either be attached to the infinitive in Spanish, Portuguese (with a hyphen) and Italian or be placed before the infinitive in French or go before the first conjugated verb (present progressive, perfect tenses) in Spanish, Brazilian Portuguese, Italian and French (**See Word Order of Direct Object Pronouns p.101 and Reflexive Verbs p.500**).

Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns in Romance Languages

Possessive Adjectives

Possessive adjectives (English my, your, his, her, etc.) are used to indicate possession and ownership. For example, my car, his house. In Romance languages all possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun that they modify. For example:

Did you know?

Dominican Republic, located in the Caribbean, is the only country the world to have an image of the Holy Bible on its national flag.

Sp. ***mi*** casa,

Port ***a minha*** casa,

It. ***la mia*** casa,

Fr. ***ma*** maison.

– ***My*** house.

133

The word *"house"* in Romance languages is feminine, so we need to use possessive pronoun which is also feminine. As we could also see from the previous example, in Portuguese and Italian the possessive adjectives are preceded by the appropriate definite article and in Spanish and French no definite articles are used with the possessive pronouns.

Below is a table presenting all the types of possessive adjectives in Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem	*masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem*	*masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem*	*masc./ pl.masc. fem/ pl.fem*	
mi/mis	*o meu/ os meus a minha / as minhas*	*il mio/ i miei la mia/ le mie*	*mon/ mes ma*	*my*
tu/tus	*o teu/ os teus a tua/ as tuas*	*il tuo/ i tuoi la tua/ le tue*	*ton/ tes ta*	*your*
su/sus	*o seu/os seus a sua/as suas*	*il suo/ i suoi la sua/ le sue*	*son/ ses sa*	*his, her, its*
nuestro/ nuestros nuestra/ nuestras	*o nosso/ os nossos a nossa/ as nossas*	*il nostro/ i nostri la nostra/ le nostre*	*notre/ nos*	*our*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
vuestro/ *vuestros* *vuestra/* *vuestras*	*o vosso/* *os vossos* *a vossa/* *as vossas*	*il vostro/* *i nostri* *la vostra/* *le vostre*	*votre/* *vos*	*your*
su/sus	*o seu/* *os seus* *a sua/* *as suas*	*il loro/* *i loro* *la loro/* *le loro*	*leur/* *leurs*	*their*

Below will be demonstrated how the possessive adjectives agree in gender and number and with a noun and how they are used in sentences. We will take words *book* (Sp. **libro**, Port. **livro**, It. **libro**, Fr. **livre**), which is masculine in Romance languages and *house* (Sp. **casa**, Port. **casa**, It. **casa**, Fr. **maison**), which is feminine to demonstrate it.

Spanish				
	singular		**plural**	
	masculine	**feminine**	**masculine**	**feminine**
1st person	mi libro mis libros	mi casa mis casas	nuestro libros nuestros libros	nuestra casa nuestras casas
2nd person	tu libro tus libros	tu casa tus casas	vuestro libros vuestros libros	vuestra casa vuestras casas
3rd person	su libro sus libros	su casa sus casas	su libros sus libros	su casa sus casas

Portuguese				
	singular		**plural**	
	masculine	**feminine**	**masculine**	**feminine**
1st person	o meu livro os meus livros	a minha casa as minhas casas	o nosso livro os nossos livros	a nossa casa as nossas casas
2nd person	o teu livro os teus livros	a tua casa as tuas casas	o vosso livro os vossos livros	a vossa casa as vossas casas
3rd person	o seu livro os seus livros	a sua casa as suas casas	o seu livro os seus livros	a sua casa as suas casas

Italian				
	singular		**plural**	
	masculine	**feminine**	**masculine**	**feminine**
1st person	il mio libro i miei libri	la mia casa le mie case	il nostro libro i nostri libri	la nostra casa le nostre case
2nd person	il tuo libro i tuoi libri	la tua casa le tue case	il vostro libro i vostri libri	la vostra casa le vostre case
3rd person	il suo libro i suoi libri	la sua casa le sue case	il loro libro i loro libri	la loro casa le loro case

French				
	singular		**plural**	
	masculine	**feminine**	**masculine**	**feminine**

		French		
1st person	mon livre mes livres	ma maison mes maisons	notre livre nos livres	notre maison nos maisons
2nd person	ton livre tes livres	ta maison tes maisons	votre livre vos livres	votre maison vos maisons
3rd person	son livre ses livres	sa maison ses maisons	leur livre leurs livres	leur maison leurs maisons

It is notable that in French the possessive adjectives **mon, ton** and **son** should be used before *feminine* nouns or adjectives that begin with a **vowel** or silent **h**. For example:

Elle est **mon a**mie – *she is my friend.*

C'est une **mon h**istoire favorite. – *This is my favourite story.*

NOTE:

*In Italian the possessive adjectives do not usually use the definite article when followed by singular nouns relating to family members or relatives (e.g. **mio fratello** – **my** brother), except with **loro** (e.g. **il loro** padre – **their father; i nostri** zii - our uncles; **i vostri** zii - your uncles).*

Possession with *de* (Spanish, Portuguese, French) and *di* (Italian)

In Romance languages it is possible to form the possession with the prepositions Sp. *de*, Port. *de*, It. *di*, Fr. *de*, which are used with the name of a person or the appropriate prepositional object pronoun (except Italian and French. In this case a noun is used) in order to avoid the variety of meanings and ambiguity the

use of the possessive pronouns (his, her, its), which are similar in Romance languages. Study the following:

Sp. la casa **de** John,

Port. a casa **de** John,

It. la casa **di** John,

Fr. la maison **de** John.

— *John's house.*

Sp. la casa **de** él,

Port. a casa **dele**,

It. la casa **di** un ragazzo,

Fr. la maison **d'**un garçon.

— *His house* (Fr. *boy's house*).

NOTE:

In French the possession can be expressed in the following ways:

- *by* ***a demonstrative pronoun*** *+* ***de*** *+* ***a noun*** *(Ma maison est* ***celle de*** *mon père - My house is that of my father).*
- *by using* ***être à*** *+* ***the disjunctive pronoun*** *(Cette voiture* ***est à moi****. C'est ma propre voiture - This is my own car).*

Omission of Possessive Adjectives

Unlike in English, in Romance languages possessive adjectives are not used when relating to parts of the body, clothing or personal possessions when the possessor is clear, in this case, the definite article is used. For example:

Sp. Puso *las* manos en *los* bolsillos,

Port. Ele colocou *as* mãos *nos* bolsos,

It. Ha messo *le* mani *nelle* tasche,

Fr. Il a mis *les* mains dans *les* poches.

– *He put his hands in his pockets.*

But when the possessor is not clear, the possessive pronoun should be used.

Possessive Pronouns.

In Romance languages possessive pronouns are used to replace a noun accompanied by a possessive adjective. They can be used to shorten a phrase (*my car* – *mine*). The possessive pronouns must agree with the noun it replaces in gender (masculine and feminine) and number (singular and plural) and are used with the appropriate definite article. For instance:

Did you know?

Guinea Bissau is a Portuguese speaking country on West Africa's Atlantic coast. 16% of the national territory are protected areas (6 national parks, nature reserves and hunting reserves). The most popular national park is the Orango Islands National Park.

Sp. Tu casa es más grande que *la mía*;

Port. A tua casa é maior que *a minha*;

It. La tua casa è più grande *della mia*;

Fr. Ta maison est plus grande que *la mienne*.

– *Your house is bigger than mine.*

Sp. Mi computadora está descompuesta. ¿Puedo usar *la tuya*?;

Euro. Port. Meu computador está quebrado. Posso usar *o teu*?;

Braz. Port. Meu computador está quebrado. Posso usar *o seu*?;

It. Il mio computer è rotto. Posso usare *il tuo*?;

Fr. Mon ordinateur est en panne. Puis-je utiliser *le tien*?

– *My computer is broken. Can I use **yours**?*

The possessive pronouns can also be used with contracted forms of the definite article. (**See Contraction of the Article p. 84**). For example:

Sp. Envié la carta a mi amigo. ¿Se la Enviaste *al* tuyo?;

Euro. Port. Enviei a carta para o meu amigo. Enviaste *ao* (*para o*) teu?;

Braz. Port. Enviei a carta para o meu amigo. Enviaste *ao* (*para o*) seu?;

It. Ho inviato una lettera al mio amico. Hai mandato *al* tuo?;

Fr. Je ai envoyé une lettre à mon ami. As-tu envoyé *au* tien?

– *I sent a letter to my friend. Did you send one **to** yours?*

NOTE:

*In Italian the definite article is usually omitted after the verb **essere**: Questo libro è **mio** - This book is **mine**.*

*In Spanish the neuter article **lo** + **masculine singular possessive adjective** usually refers to an abstract thing rather than a concrete noun:*

*Lo **tuyo** es fantastic. – The business of yours is fantastic.*

Below is the table presenting all the types of possessive pronouns in Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem	*masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem*	*masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem*	*masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem*	
el mío/ los míos la mía/ las mías	**o meu/ os meus a minha/ as minhas**	**il mio/ i miei la mia/ le mie**	**le mien/ les miens la mienne/ les miennes**	*mine*
el tuyo/ los tuyos la tuya/ las tuyas	**o teu/ os teus a tua/ as tuas**	**il tuo/ i tuoi la tua/ le tue**	**le tien/ les tiens la tienne/. les tiennes**	*yours*
el suyo/ los suyos la suya/ las suyas	**o seu/ os seus a sua/ as suas**	**il suo/ i suoi la sua/ le sue**	**le sien/ les siens la sienne/ les siennes**	*his, hers, its*
el nuestro/ los nuestros la nuestra/ las nuestras	**o nosso/ os nossos a nossa/ as nossas**	**il nostro/ i nostri la nostra/ le nostre**	**le nôtre/ les nôtres la nôtre/ les nôtres**	*ours*
el vuestro/ los vuestros la vuestra/ las vuestras	***o vosso/ os vossos a vossa/ as vossas***	***il vostro/ i vostri la vostra/ le vostre***	***le vôtre/ les vôtres la vôtre/ les vôtres***	*yours*
el suyo/ los suyos la suya/ las suyas	***o seu/ os seus a sua/ as suas***	***il loro/ i loro la loro/ le loro***	***le leur/ les leurs la leur/ les leurs***	*theirs*

Look at the following examples:

Sp. ¿Este es el teléfono celular de María? Sí, es **el suyo**.

Port. É este o celular de Maria? Sim, este é **o seu**.

It. E'questo il cellulare di Maria? Sì, questo è **il suo**.

Fr. Est-ce le téléphone portable de Maria? Oui, c'est **le sien**.

*— Is this Maria's cellphone. Yes, it is **hers**.*

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French

Demonstrative Adjectives

Demonstrative adjectives (English this/that and these/ those) are used with nouns which they modify and point out the location of a particular thing or person. They are basically used to say *"which"* noun or to emphasize a noun, for example, **this** man, **that** car.

In Romance languages all demonstrative adjectives 'agree in gender and number with the noun that they modify. For example:

Sp. **este** hombre,

Port **este** homem,

It. **quest'**uomo,

Fr. **cet** homme.

*— **This** man.*

Did you know?

Italian is one of Switzerland's four national languages. Over 350 thousand people (8.1%) speak it natively in Ticino and Grisons (Grigioni) cantons.

Sp. **esta** mujer,

Port **esta** mulher,

It. **questa** donna,

Fr. **cette** femme.

– **This** *woman.*

The word "*man*" in Romance languages is masculine, so we need to use demonstrative adjective which is also masculine, whereas the word "*woman*" is feminine and thus, the masculine demonstrative adjective should be used. As we could also see from the previous examples, the definite article is not used with demonstrative adjectives in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

It should be mentioned that Spanish and Portuguese have three sets of demonstrative adjectives, indicating the different distance of a noun, whereas Italian has two sets of demonstrative adjectives like English and French has only one.

Forms of Demonstrative Adjectives

Below is a table presenting all the sets of demonstrative adjectives in Romance languages:

Demonstrative adjectives	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
this *(singular masc. and fem.)*	*este/ esta*	*èste/ esta*	*questo/ questa*	*ce (cet)/ cette*

143

Demonstrative adjectives	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
these (*plural masc. and fem.*)	*estos/ estas*	*estes/ estas*	*questi/ queste*	*ces*
that (*singular masc. and fem.*)	*ese/ esa*	*esse/ essa*	*quello (quel')/ quella*	—
those (*plural masc. and fem.*)	*esos/ esas*	*esses/ essas*	*quei (quegli)/ quelle*	—
that over there (*singular masc. and fem.*)	*aquel/ aquella*	*aquele/ aquela*	—	—
those over there (*plural masc. and fem.*)	*aquellos/ aquellas*	*aqueles/ aquelas*	—	—

NOTE:

In Italian the forms of the demonstrative adjective **quello** are similar to the forms of the definite article (e.g. <u>masculine</u>: **quello** student − **quell'amico** − **quel** libro − **quegli** studenti − **quei** libri; <u>feminine</u>: **quella** studentessa − **quell'amica** − **quella** rivista − **quelle** studentesse − **quelle** riviste.) (**See the Definite Article p.66**). Also, **quello** has the same forms as **bello** (beautiful) (**See Bello p.46**)

In French, the demonstrative adjective ce becomes cet before a vowel.

Demonstrative Adjectives *this* and *these* in Romance Languages

As it is seen from the table demonstrative pronouns:

Sp. *este/esta/estos/estas*; Port. *este/esta/estes/estas*; It. *questo/quella/questi/queste*; Fr. *ce (cet)/cette/ces* - *this,these* are used to indicate nouns which are physically near the speaker and the person to whom he or she is speaking. It is within reaching distance. For example:

Sp. *Este* libro es mi favorito;

Port. *Este* livro é o meu favorito;

It. *Questo* libro è il mio preferito;

Fr. *Ce* livre est mon favori

– *This book is my favourite.*

Sp. *Esta* casa es muy linda;

Port. *Esta* casa é muito linda;

It. *Questa* casa è molto bella;

Fr. *Cette* maison est très belle

– *This house is very beautiful.*

These demonstrative adjectives also signify the time and proximity:

Sp. Voy a la universidad *esta tarde*;

Port. Vou para a universidade **esta tarde**;

It. Vado all'università **questo pomeriggio**;

Fr. Je vais à l'université **cet après-midi**.

– *I go to the university **this afternoon**.*

Demonstrative Adjectives *that* and *those* in Romance Languages

Sp. **ese/esa/esos/esas**; Port. **esse/essa/esses/essas**; It. **quello/quella/quei (quegli)/quelle** - *that, those* are used indicate nouns which are farther from the speaker and not within the reach or rather the noun can be nearer to the listener, not the speaker.

NOTE:

*As is obvious from the table, demonstrative adjectives such as <u>that</u> and <u>those</u> do not exist in French, but in order to make a clear distinction between <u>this</u> and <u>that</u>, the suffixes –**ci** (this) or – **là** (that) are added to the noun (e.g. ce livre-**ci** – ce livre-**là** – this book – that book). However, it is possible to use **ce (cet)/cette/ces** to say <u>that</u> or <u>those</u>.*

Below are the examples that demonstrate the use of *that* and *those* in Romance languages:

Sp. ¿Cuánto cuesta **ese** sombrero?

Port. Quanto custa **esse** chapéu?

It. Quanto costa **quel** capello?

Fr. Combien coûte ce chapeau-**là**?

– *How much does **that** hat cost?*

146

Did you know?

Luxembourg has 3 official languages: French, German and Luxembourgish. Children are taught in Luxembourgish in nursery schools, and French and German at primary schools.

Sp. *Esa* camisa es muy caro;

Port. *Essa* camisa é muito cara;

It. *Quella* maglietta è molto costoso;

Fr. Cette chemise-*là* est très cher.

– That shirt is very expensive.

Demonstrative Adjectives *that over there* and *those over there* in Spanish and Portuguese

Sp. *aquel/aquellos/aquella/aquellas*; Port. *aquele/ aqueles/aquela/aquelas* (*that over there, those over there*) are used indicate nouns which are far away from both the speaker and the listener, but still within visual distance. For example:

Sp. *Aquellos* monumentos son los más antiguos de la ciudad.

Port. *Aqueles* monumentos são os mais antigos da cidade.

– Those monuments over there are the oldest in the city.

Sp. *Aquellas* mujeres son nuestras maestras.

Port. *Aquelas* mulheres são nossas professoras.

– Those women over there are our teachers.

NOTE:

*It should be said that such demonstrative adjectives are not used in Italian and French, in this case It. **quello/quella/ quei (quegli)/quelle** and Fr. **ce (cet)/***

cette/ces along with the suffixes —ci and — là are used to indicate nouns which are far away.

It is notable that the lat set in Italian and French and two sets of demonstrative adjectives in Spanish and Portuguese can also be used to make a distinction between a recent past and one more distant, for example:

Sp. *Aquellos* días que pasamos en el pueblo;

Port. *Aqueles* dias que passamos na vila no inverno passado;

It. *Quei* giorni che abbiamo trascorso nel villaggio lo scorso inverno;

Fr. *Ces* jours nous les avons passés dans le village l'hiver dernier.

— Those days we spent in the village last winter.

Did you know?

"Pura vida" is the national saying in Puerto Rico, meaning "pure life". It's a sunny, positive expression used as a greeting, goodbye or when someone ask how you are doing.

Sp. En *aquellos* días el carro no existía;

Port. *Naqueles* dias, carro não existia;

It. In *quei* giorni la macchina non esisteva;

Fr. Dans *ces* jours, la voiture n'a pas existé.

— At that time a car didn't exist.

Combined Demonstrative Adjectives in Portuguese

Demonstrative adjectives can be combined with the prepositions *de*, *em* and *a* in Portuguese:

Portuguese		
de	**em**	**a**
de + este = **deste** de + esta = **desta** de + estes = **destes** de + estas = **destas**	em + este = **neste** em + esta = **nesta** em + estes = **nestes** em + estas = **nestas**	___
de + esse = **desse** de + essa = **dessa** de + esses = **desses** de + essas = **dessas**	em + esse = **nesse** em + essa = **nessa** em + esses = **nesses** em + essas = **nessas**	___
de + aquele = **daquele** de + aquela = **daquela** de + aqueles = **daqueles** de + aquelas = **daquelas**	em + aquele = **naquele** em + aquela = **naquela** em + aqueles = **naqueles** em + aquelas = **naquelas**	a + aquele = **àquele** a + aquela = **àquela** a + aqueles = **àqueles** a + aquelas = **àquelas**

Word Order of Demonstrative Adjectives

Demonstrative adjectives in Romance languages are placed right before the noun they modify. If there is one or more than one noun in the sentence, the demonstrative adjective should be placed before each noun, for example:

Sp. *Esos* libros y *esos* periódicos están sobre la mesa;

Port. *Esses* livros e *esses* jornais estão sobre a mesa;

It. *Quei* libri e *quei* giornali sono sul tavolo;

Fr. **Ces** livres et **ces** journaux sont sur la table.

*— **Those** books and **those** newspapers are on the table.*

Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns demonstrate or indicate the location of the noun they replace. You can use demonstrative pronouns when you have several options to choose and while choosing you can say *"this one"* (the one close to you) or *"that one"* (the one far from you). So, the words *"this one"* and *"that one"* are both demonstrative pronouns.

Demonstrative pronouns in Romance languages replace a noun in a phrase instead of modifying it like an adjective would. Observe the following:

Did you know?

Portuguese and Cantonese are the official languages of Macau. Macau is an autonomous region located on the south coast of China. It was a Portuguese territory until 1999.

Sp. **éste** que trabaja aqui es mi hermano;

Port. **este** que trabalha aqui é meu irmão;

It. **quello** che lavora qui è mio fratello.

Fr. **Celui** qui travaille ici est mon frère.

*— **this one** who works here is my brother.*

Forms of Demonstrative Pronouns

Below is a table presenting all the sets of demonstrative pronouns in Romance languages:

Demonstrative pronouns	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
this (*singular masc. and fem.*)	*éste/ ésta*	*este/ esta*	*questo/ questa*	*celui/ celle*
these (*plural masc. and fem.*)	*éstos/ éstas*	*estes/ estas*	*questi/ queste*	*ceux/ celles*
that (*singular masc. and fem.*)	*ése/ ésa*	*esse/ essa*	*quello/ quella*	—
those (*plural masc. and fem.*)	*ésos/ ésas*	*esses/ essas*	*quelli/ quelle*	—
that over there (*singular masc. and fem.*)	*aquél/ aquélla*	*aquele/ aquela*	—	—
those over there (*plural masc. and fem.*)	*aquéllos/ aquéllas*	*aqueles/ aquelas*	—	—

As follows from the table, demonstrative nouns look similar to demonstrative adjectives, except for French. Also, in Spanish only the tildes make the difference (written accent) which demonstrative pronouns carry in order to differentiate from demonstrative adjectives which do not carry a tilde. In fact, it is optional to use the tildes. It is required if the situation is ambiguous.

Like demonstrative adjectives, demonstrative pronouns of Romance languages have similar set, demonstrating the location of a noun (object) and how far from the speaker it is. All demonstrative pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun that they substitute.

NOTE:

In French in order to distinguish between this one and that one and between these and those, the suffixes —ci (this) or —là (that) are added to demonstrative pronoun (e.g. J'aime celui-ci — J'aime celle-là — I like **this one** *— I like* **that one***).*

In Italian in order to emphasize the forms of **questo** *and* **quello***, the words* **qui** *(here) and* **lì** *(there) may be used (e.g. Mi piace* **questo qui** *— Mi piace* **quello lì** *— I like* **this one here** *— I like* **that one there***).*

Below is an example that demonstrates the use of demonstrating pronouns in Romance languages:

Sp. Mi casa es más grande que **ésa**;

Port. A minha casa é maior do que **essa**;

It. La mia casa è più grande di **quella**;

Fr. Ma maison est plus grande que **celle-là**.

— My house is bigger than **that one***.*

Possession with the Demonstrative Pronoun and *de (di)*

In Romance languages the demonstrative pronoun followed by the preposition **de** in Spanish, Portuguese and French and **di** in Italian can indicate possession. For example:

152

Did you know?

Naples is the 3rd largest city in Italy after Rome and Milan. It has a population of about 1 million people. It is also one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world (over 2800 years).

Sp. El coche de Peter y ***ése de*** Maria;

Port. O carro de Peter e ***esse de*** Maria;

It. L'automobile di Peter e ***quella di*** Maria;

Fr. La voiture de Peter et ***celle de*** Maria.

– Peter's car and Maria's.

Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns in Spanish and Portuguese

In Spanish and Portuguese, there are also neuter demonstrative pronouns. They are invariable and used with the same meaning as the adjectives and pronouns above, but they refer to the things which have no gender, such as statements, situations, actions and items that the speaker cannot identify precisely.

Forms of Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns

Below is a table presenting all the neuter demonstrative pronouns in Spanish and Portuguese:

Neuter demonstrative pronouns	Spanish	Portuguese
this (*near the speaker.*)	*esto*	*isto*
that (*near the listener.*)	*eso*	*isso*

Neuter demonstrative pronouns	Spanish	Portuguese
those (*plural masc. and fem.*)	*ésos/ésas*	*esses/ essas*
that (*far from both.*)	*aquello*	*aquilo*

Below is an example that demonstrates the use of neuter demonstrating pronouns in Spanish and Portuguese:

Sp. *Eso* es fantastico;

Port. *Isso* é fantastico.

– That is fantastic.

Sp. ¿Qué es *esto*?;

Port. O que é *isto*?

– What is this?

Combined Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns in Portuguese

Demonstrative adjectives can be combined with the prepositions *de*, *em* and *a* in Portuguese:

Portuguese		
de	*em*	*a*
de + isto = *disto*	em + isto = *nisto*	____

Portuguese		
de + isso = **disso**	em + isso = **nisso**	——
de + aquilo = **daquilo**	em + aquilo = **naquilo**	a + aquilo = **àquilo**

Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives

In Romance languages direct and indirect questions, other than "yes or no" questions, contain interrogative words at the beginning of the phrase. Such interrogative words can be pronouns, adjectives or proverbs as they answer the questions: *Who? What? Where? How? When? Why?*. For example:

Did you know?

The Republic of Madagascar is the 4th largest island in the world. It has 2 official languages - French and Malagasy. Madagascar was under French rule from 1895-1957.

Sp. ¿*Qué* es esto?;

Port. *O que* é isto?;

It. *Che* è questo?;

Fr. *Qu'est-ce que* c'est?

- *What* is this?

Below is the table showing all the interrogative words in Romance languages:

Interrogative words	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	*s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.*	*s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.*	*s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.*

Interrogative words	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
what/ which?	¿qué?	que? o que?	che?	que (qu')?
about what?	¿de qué?	de que? do que?	di che?	de quoi?
who/ whom?	¿quién/ ¿quiénes?	quem?	chi?	qui?
whose?	¿de quién?	de quem?	di chi?	à qui (de qui)?
which one(-s)?	¿cuál? cuáles?	qual/ quais?	quale/ quali?	quel/ quelle/ quels/ quelles?
				lequel/ laquelle/ lesquels/ lesquelles
how much/how many?	¿cuánto/ cuánta/ cuántos/ cuántas?	quanto/ quanta/ quantos/ quantas?	quanto/ quanta/ quanti/ quante?	combien?
how?	¿cómo?	como?	come?	comment?
when?	¿cuándo?	quando?	quando?	quand?
where?	¿dónde?	onde?	dove?	où?
from where?	¿de dónde?	de onde?	di dove?	d'où?

Interrogative words	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
why?	¿por qué?	por quê?	perché?	pourquoi?

NOTE:

In French:

- **que** becomes **qu'** before a word that begins with a vowel (**qui** never combines with a word beginning with a vowel), for example: **qui** as-tu vu?; **qu'**as-tu vu?- Whom did you see?; What did you see?.

- Also it should be noted that French **que** cannot be used after a preposition, in this case, **quoi** should be used, for example: **à quoi** pense-tu? – What are you thinking about?

- **Quoi** can be used without a verb in certain idiomatic expressions, for example: **Quoi** de neuf? **Quoi** de nouveau? – What's new?

- **Quoi** can also be used alone, for example: **Quoi**? Vous me parlez? – What? Are you speaking with me?

- in French interrogative words are widely used with **est-ce que** or **est-ce qu'** (before a vowel) constructions, which are placed right after the interrogative word, and in this case, the word order is direct, for example: **qu'est-ce que** tu fais (**que** fais-tu?) - What do you do?

In Portuguese the interrogative pronouns **que** and **o que** are used equally.

In Spanish all the interrogative words have accents in them. This differentiates them from relative pronouns.

157

What
Sp. *Qué*, Port. *Que (O que)*, It. *Che*, Fr. *Que (Qu')/Quoi*

The interrogative pronouns Sp. *qué*, Port. *que (o que)*, It. *che*, Fr. *que (qu')/quoi* - *what* can be used as subjects, direct objects, or objects of a preposition. For example:

As a subject:

Sp. ¿*Qué* es eso?

Port. *O que* é isso?

It. *Che* è quello?

Fr. *Qu'est-ce que* c'est?

– *What* is that?

As an object:

Sp. ¿*Qué* quieres?

Port. *O que* você quer?

It. *Che* vuoi?

Fr. *Que* veux-tu?

– *What* do you want?

These interrogative pronouns can also be used after prepositions such as (Sp. *a, de, en, sobre*; Port. *a, de, em, sobre*; It. *a, di, in, su*; Fr. *à, de, en*) (**See Verbs with prepositions and Prepositions p.587**).

For instance, they are used with the preposition Sp. *de* (*di* in Italian) meaning *about, from*: Sp. ¿*de qué?* Port. *de que?* (*do que?*) It. *di che?* Fr. *de quoi?* – *about what?*. In this case the interrogative pronouns are used:

158

As objects of a preposition:

> Sp. ¿*De qué* hablan?
>
> Port. *De que* eles falam?
>
> It. *Di che* parlano?
>
> Fr. *De quoi* parlent-ils?
>
> – *What* do they talk about?

NOTE:

In Italian ***che*** *can also be expressed by* ***che*** *cosa and* ***cosa*** *(e.g.* ***Che*** *fai? –* ***Che cosa*** *fai? –* ***Cosa*** *fai? –* ***What*** *are you doing?)*

Who
Sp. Quién, Port. Quem, It. Chi, Fr. Qui

It should be mentioned that <u>in Spanish</u> the interrogative pronoun *quién/quiénes* agrees in number with the person or people referred to (e.g. *Quién* es el? *Quiénes* son ellos? – *Who is he? Who are they?*)

Also, Spanish interrogative pronoun *quién/quiénes* is always used with the preposition **a** since the speaker is referring to people or any human being (e.g. *A quién* has visto? – *Who did you see?*) (**See Prepositions and Verbs p.587**)

The interrogative pronouns Sp. *quién/quiénes*, Port. *quem*, It. *chi*, Fr. *qui* can be used as subjects, direct objects, or objects of a preposition in the sentences as well.

As a subject:

> Sp. ¿ *Quién* es ella?
>
> Port. *Quem* é ela?
>
> It. *Chi* è lei?
>
> Fr. *Qui* est-elle?

– Who is she?

As an object:

> Sp. *¿A quién* quieres ver?

> Port. *Quem* você quer ver?

> It. *Chi* vuoi vedere?

> Fr. *Qui* voulez-vous voir?

> *– Who do you want to see?*

· As object of a preposition:

> Sp. *¿De quién* hablan?

> Port. *Do quem* eles falam?

> It. *Di chi* parlano?

> Fr. *De qui* parlent-ils?

> *– Who are they talking about?*

Whose
de (di or à) + Sp. Quién/Quiénes, Port. Quem, It. Chi, Fr. Qui

These interrogative pronouns can also be used with the preposition Sp., Port. *de* (*di* in Italian and *à* in French) meaning *whose*, denoting ownership for people: Sp. *¿de quién?* Port. *de quem?* (*do quem?*) It. *di chi?* Fr. *à qui?* – *whose?* For instance:

> Sp. *¿De quién* es esta casa?

> Port. *De quem* é esta casa?

> It. *Di chi* è questa casa?

Fr. *À qui* est cette maison?

– *Whose house is this?*

NOTE:

In French ***De qui*** *is used to denote relationship to someone. For example:* ***De qui*** *est-il le frère? –* ***Whose*** *brother is he?*

Which or Which one/ones
Sp. *Cuál*, Port. *Qual*, It. *Quale*, Fr. *Quel* (*Lequel*)

NOTE:

In Italian ***quale*** *drops the final –e before* ***è*** *or* ***era***, *and an apostrophe is not used:* ***Qual*** *era il film che guardavi? –* ***What*** *was the film that you watched?*

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian these interrogative pronouns agree in number with what it is referred to, whereas in French they agree in gender and number. Normally the interrogative pronouns Sp. *cuál/cuáles*, Port. *qual/quais*, It. *quale/quali*, Fr. *quel/quelle/quels/quelles* can be used with reference both to people or things. For example:

Sp. ¿*Cuál* es el nombre de esta calle?

Port. *Qual* é o nome desta rua?

It. *Qual* è il nome di questa via?

Fr. *Quel* est le nom de cette rue?

– *What is the name of this street?*

It should be remembered that Sp. *cuál*, Port. *qual*, It. *quale*, Fr. *quel* are also used, instead of Sp. *qué*, Port. *que* (*o que*), It. *che*, Fr. *que* (*qu'*), with the verb Sp. *ser*; Port. *ser*; It. *essere*; Fr. *être* followed by an abstract noun, unless a mere definition is being requested, for instance:

Sp. ¿*Cuál es* la razón por la que se fue?

Port. *Qual* é a razão pela qual ele foi embora?

It. *Qual* è la ragione per la quale è partito?

Fr. *Quelle* est la raison pour laquelle il est parti?

– *What* is the reason for which he left?

Sp. ¿*Qué* es el budismo?

Port. *Que* é o budismo?

It. *Che* è il buddismo?

Fr. *Qu'est-ce que* le bouddhisme?

– *What* is Buddhism?

Difference between Sp. Cuál, Port. Qual, It. Quale, Fr. Quel (Lequel) and Sp. Qué, Port. Que (O que), It. Che, Fr. Que (Qu')

It should be noted that Sp. *cuál*, Port. *qual*, It. *quale*, Fr. *quel* (*lequel*) express more clearly the idea of choice from a limited number of things than Sp. *quién/quiénes*, Port. *quem*, It. *chi*, Fr. *qui*. The principal difference between these two types of interrogative pronouns is that Sp. *qué*, Port. *que* (*o que*), It. *che*, Fr. *que* (*qu'*) is usually followed by a noun but Sp. *cuál*, Port. *qual*, It. *quale*, Fr. *quel* (*lequel*) never is. For example:

Sp. ¿*Qué música* prefieres? ¿*Cuál es* tu música favorita?

Port. *Que música* você prefere? *Qual é* a sua música favorita?

It. *Che musica* preferisci? *Qual è* la tua musica preferita?

Fr. *Quelle musique* préfères-tu? *Quelle est* votre musique favorite?

– *What music* do you prefer? *Which is* your favourite music?

French *lequel*

The interrogative word *lequel* which means *which* one agrees with the noun to which it refers (*lequel/laquelle/lesquels/lesquelles*). The main difference between French *quel* and *lequel* is that

- *lequel* is used with more limited number of things to choose from (2 or 3 things):

  Lequels de ces livres veux-tu?

  – *Which ones* of these books do you want?

(*lequel* means *which one* only, whereas *quel* can also stand for *which*).

- *lequel* is used after prepositions such as *à* or *de* (except in feminine singular), while *quel* never is (**See Verbs with Prepositions p.587**). For example:

  Auxquels de ces hommes parles-tu?

  – *To which* one of these men are you speaking?

  Desquelles parles-tu?

  – *Of which ones* do you speak?

Below is the table with contracted forms of *lequel* with *à* and *de*:

French	
à	*de*
à + lequel = auquel	de + lequel = duquel
à + laquelle = à laquelle (not combined)	de + laquelle = de laquelle (not combined)
à + lesquels = auxquels	de + lesquels = desquels
à + lesquelles = auxquelles	de + lesquelles = desquelles

How much/How many
Sp. *Cuánto*, Port. *Quanto*, It. *Quanto*, Fr. *Combien*

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the interrogative pronouns Sp. *cuánto/cuánta/cuántos/cuántas*; Port. *quanto/quanta/quantos/quantas*; It. *quanto/quanta/quanti/quante* (*how much/how many*) must also agree in number and gender with the noun it modifies, while in French the interrogative pronoun Fr. *combien* does not.

Sp. ¿*Cuánto* cuesta esta camisa?

Port. *Quanto* custa essa camisa?

It. *Quanto* costa questa camicia?

Fr. *Combien* coûte cette chemise?

– *How much* does this shirt cost?

Sp. ¿*Cuántas* manzanas tienes?

Port. **Quantas** maçãs tens?

It. **Quante** mele hai?

Fr. **Combien de** pommes as-tu?

– **How many** apples do you have?

NOTE:

*In Portuguese **é que** is often added to the interrogative pronouns in order to give emphasis:*

O que é que queres? – What do you want?

Quem é que é ele? – Who is he?

Qual é que é a tua música favorita? – Which is your favorite music?

Quanto é que custa essa camisa? – How much does this shirt cost?

*In French the preposition **de** is used with **combien** before a noun:*

Combien de tables? - How many tables?

How
Sp. *Cómo*, Port. *Como*, It. *Come*, Fr. *Comment*

Along with all listed above interrogative pronouns, some adverbs are also used to ask questions. For example:

Sp. ¿**Cómo** estas?

Port. **Como** estás (você está)?

It. **Come** stai?

Fr. **Comment** vas-tu?

– **How** are you?

Sp. ¿*Cómo* te llamas?

Port. *Como* você se chama?

It. *Come* ti chiami?

Fr. *Comment* t'appelles tu?

– *What* is your name?

When
Sp. *Cuándo*, Port. *Quando*, It. *Quando*, Fr. *Quand*

Sp. ¿*Cuándo* vienes?

Port. *Quando* vens (você vem)?

It. *Quando* vieni?

Fr. *Quand* viens tu?

– *When* are you coming?

Where
Sp. *Dónde*, Port. *Onde*, It. *Dove*, Fr. *Où*

Sp. ¿*Dónde* se encuentra el baño?

Port. *Onde* fica a casa-de-banho?

It. *Dove* si trova il bagno?

Fr. *Où* se trouvent les toilettes?

– *Where* is the restroom?

Sp. ¿*Dónde* está el banco?

Port. *Onde* é o banco?

It. **Dov'**è la banca?

Fr. **Où** est la banque?

– *Where* is the bank?

From where
Sp. *De dónde, Port. De onde, It. Di dove, Fr. D'où*

Sp. **De dónde** es usted?

Port. **De onde** é o senhor?

It. **Di dove'**è Lei?

Fr. **D'où** êtes-vous?

– *Where* are you from?

Why
Sp. *Por qué, Port. Porque, It. Perché, Fr. Pourquoi*

Sp. ¿**Por qué** dices eso?

Port. **Por que** dizes isso (você diz isso)?

It. **Perché** dici questo?

Fr. **Pourquoi** dis-tu cela?

– *Why* do you say that?

NOTE:

*Do not mix up Spanish **Por qué** (why) with **para qué** (for what purpose, what for) and Portuguese **porque** (why) and **por que** (for what purpose, what for). For example:*

*Sp. **Para qué** necesitas otro coche?*

*Port. **Por que** você precisa de um outro carro?*

*– **What** do you need another car for?*

Exclamations with Interrogative Pronouns

Exclamations are used in order to convey a strong feeling or opinion about something. Exclamatory words make a phrase into a statement of surprise or amazement. They are are very similar to interrogative words, but instead of asking something, they declare an idea or opinion, for example:

Did you know?

Uruguay is the only country in Latin America that is entirely outside of the tropics.

Sp. ¡**Qué** hermoso!

Port. **Que** bonito!

It. **Che** bello!

Fr. **Quel** beauté!

– **How** nice!

NOTE:

In Spanish all exclamatory words carry an orthographic accent, or tilde, just like interrogative words.

*In French, a noun should be used with **Quel** to convey an exclamation.*

Below are the exclamatory words used in Romance languages:

Exclama tory words	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.
What a! (How!)	¡Qué!	Que!	Che!	Quel!/ Quelle!/ Quels!/ Quelles!
How much/ how many!	¡Cuánto! ¡Cuánta! ¡Cuántos! ¡Cuántas!	Quanto! Quanta! Quantos! Quantas!	Quanto! Quanta! Quanti! Quante!	Combien!
How!	¡Cómo!	Como!	Come!	Comme! Que!

NOTE:

*In French in order to say **What a...!** the exclamatory word **Quel...!** is used, which is used with a noun.*

*It is also possible to **Comme** or **Que**, since they are utterly interchangeable.*

What a! (How!)
Sp. ¡Qué! Port. Que! It. Che! Fr. Quel!

In Romance languages these exclamatory words are used in front of nouns, adjectives and adverbs and mean *How* or *What a...!*:

Sp. ¡*Qué* mujer!

Port. *Que* mulher!

It. *Che* donna!

Fr. *Quelle* femme!

– *What a woman*!

Sp. ¡*Qué* delicioso!

Port. *Que* delicioso!

It. *Che* buono!

Fr. *Quel* délice!

– *How delicious*!

NOTE:

In Romance languages a qualifying adjective after the noun is usually preceded by either Sp. **más, tan;** *Port.* **mais, tão;** *It.* **più, tanto;** *Fr.* **plus, tant** - ***the most, so.***

How much/how many!
Sp. ¡Cuánto! Port. Quanto! It. Quanto! Fr. Combien!

These exclamatory words are used in front of nouns in order to express surprise at an amount and in front of a verb to stress the intensity or extent of the action *How many (much)*:

Sp. ¡*Cuántos* amigos tienes!

Port. *Quantos* amigos tens!

It. *Quanti* amici hai!

Fr. *Combien d'*amis que as-tu!

– *You have **so many** friends*!

Sp. ¡**Cuánto** corrimos esta mañana!

Port. **Quanto** corremos nesta manhã!

It. **Quanto** abbiamo corso questa mattina!

Fr. **Combien** nous avons couru ce matin!

– *We ran* **so much** *this morning*!

NOTE:

In Spanish **Qué** + **de** *can be used, which means "what a lot", however* **cuánto** *is more common.*

How!
Sp. ¡Cómo! Port. Como! It. Come! Fr. Comment!

These exclamatory words are only used in front of verbs to express surprise at how a verb was done:

Sp. ¡**Cómo** baila ese hombre!

Port. **Como** dança esse homem!

It. ¡**Come** balla quell'uomo!

Fr. **Comment** danse cet home!

– **Oh how** *that man dances*!

Relative Pronouns

Relative pronouns (*who, whom, which, that, where, whose* in English) are used to introduce a clause that modifies a noun in order to make it clear which person or thing is being talked about. For example: The man *who* you see is my brother. In the example "*who you see*" is the relative clause introduced by the relative pronoun *who*.

Relative pronouns are also used to introduce further information about someone or something. For example: My brother, *who* is an outstanding singer, released a new album.

The clause which is introduced by the relative pronouns designates *the subordinate clause.* The clause containing the component modified by the relative clause is called *the main clause.* The noun, pronoun or phrase which is modified by the relative pronoun is called an *antecedent.*

It should be mentioned that, in English, the relative pronouns can be omitted (e.g. the book *that* you bought is interesting = the book you bought is interesting), but in Romance languages *that* is always required. Observe the following:

Did you know?

The statue of Christ the Redeemer was elected one of the New 7 Wonders of the World in 2007. Christ the Redeemer (Cristo Redentor) is a 30-meter Art Deco statue of Jesus Christ in Rio de Janeiro.

Sp. el libro *que* compraste es interesante;

Port. o livro *que* compraste (você comprou) é interessante;

It. il libro *che* hai comprato è interessante;

Fr. le livre *que* vous avez acheté est intéressant.

– The book (that) you bought is interesting.

Generally speaking the relative pronouns are used to connect two short sentences, for example:

Sp. Peter vive en una ciudad. La ciudad se llama Sydney. = Peter vive en una ciudad *que* se llama Sydney.

Port. Peter vive em uma cidade. A cidade se chama Sydney. = Peter vive em uma cidade *que* se chama Sydney.

It. Peter vive in una città. La città si chiama Sydney. = Peter vive in una città *che* si chiama Sydney.

Fr. Peter vit dans une ville. La ville s'appelle Sydney. = Peter vit dans une ville *qui* s'appelle Sydney.

Peter lives in a city. The city is called Sydney. = Peter lives in a city
(*that is*) called Sydney.

Below is a table demonstrating the relative pronouns in
Romance languages:

Relative pronouns	**Spanish**	**Portuguese**	**Italian**	**French**
	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	*s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.*	*s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.*	*s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.*
that/ who/ which	*que*	*que*	*che*	*que (qu')*
who/ whom/ which	*el que/ la que los que/ las que*	*o que/ a que os que/ as que*	*cui*	*lequel/ laquelle lesquels/ lesquelles*
who/ whom	*quien*	*quem*	*chi*	*qui*
			colui che/colei che coloro che	
who/ whom/ which	*el cual/ la cual los cuales/ las cuales*	*o qual/ a qual os quais/ as quais*	*il quale/ la quale i quali/ le quali*	—

173

Relative pronouns	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
what/ which (neuter)	lo que/ lo cual	o que/ o qual	quello che/ quel che/ ciò che	ce qui/ ce que
as much/ many	cuanto/ cuanta cuantos/ cuantas	quanto/ quanta quantos/ quantas	quanto/ quanta/ quanti/ quante	combien
whose	cuyo/ cuya cuyos/ cuyas	cujo/ cuja cujos/ cujas	il cui/ la cui i cui/ le cui	dont
where	donde	onde	dove	où
when	cuando	quando	quando	quand

That/Who/Which
Sp. Que, Port. Que, It. Che, Fr. Que

This relative pronoun is one of the most frequently used in Romance languages. It can refer to either people or things. In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian it can be used as the subject or object of a clause, whereas in French the relative pronoun *que* functions only as the direct object of a clause (*qui* is used as a subject of a clause). It is notable that in French *que* becomes *qu'* before a vowel. For example:

As the subject:

Sp. La mujer *que vive* allí es mi hermana.

Port. A mulher *que vive* lá é a minha irmã.

174

It. La donna **che vive** là è mia sorella.

Fr. La femme **qui vit** là est ma sœur.

– *The woman **who lives** there is my sister.*

As the object:

Sp. La mujer a la **que vimos** ayer es mi hermana.

Port. A mulher **que vimos** ontem é minha irmã.

It. La donna **che abbiamo visto** ieri è mia sorella.

Fr. La femme **que nous avons vu** hier est ma sœur.

– *The woman **who we saw** yesterday is my sister.*

NOTE:

*In Spanish, if "who" is the direct object in the relative clause, then **que** is normally used, but in practice it can be better to use an appropriate form from the **el que** series when preceded by the personal **a**: La mujer **a la que** vimos ayer es mi hermana.*

Que (Sp., Port., Fr.) and **che** (It.) are used after nouns denoting periods of time (e.g. Sp. **vez, día, año**; Port. **vez, dia, ano**; It. **volta, giorno, anno**; Fr. **fois, jour, an** - *time, day, year*. For example:

Sp. La primera **vez que** lo vi fue la semana pasada;

Port. A primeira **vez que** o vi foi na semana passada;

It. La prima **volta che** lo vidi era la settimana scorsa;

Fr. La première **fois que** je l'ai vu c'était la semaine dernière.

– ***The first time (that)** I saw her was last week.*

Who/Whom/Which

175

Sp. *El que;* It. *Cui;* Fr. *Lequel*

In Spanish, Italian and French the relative pronouns Sp. *el que/la que/los que/las que*; Port. *o que/a que/os que/as que*; It. *cui*; Fr. *lequel/laquel/lesquels/lesquelles* (*who/whom/which*) are used instead of Sp. *que*, Port. *que*, It. *che*, Fr. *que* when it is preceded by a preposition (however, in Latin American Spanish and Portuguese the relative pronoun *que* is also used in this case).

These relative pronouns can be used with the following prepositions:

Sp. *a, con, de, en, por, sobre*;

It. *a, con, di, da, in, per, su, tra/fra*;

Fr. *à, avec, de, dans, pour, sur*.

Also, and these relative pronouns can refer to things or persons and agree with antecedent, except Italian:

Sp. La casa *en la que* (*en que*) vivo es grande.

It. La casa *in cui* vivo è grande.

Fr. La maison *dans laquelle* j'habite est grande.

— *The house in which I live is big.*

Sp. La razón *por la que* (*por que*) lo hace es clara.

It. Il motivo *per cui* lo fa è chiaro.

Fr. La raison *pour laquelle* elle le fait est claire.

— *The reason why/for which she does it is clear.*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese, in this case, the relative pronoun **que** (with things) or **quem** (with people) is used when preceded by a preposition. Observe the following:*

> *Port. A casa **em que** eu vivo é grande.*
>
> *– The house **in which** I live is big.*

> *Port. A razão **por que** ela faz isso é claro.*
>
> *– The reason **why/for which** she does it is clear.*

NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and French the relative pronouns Sp. **quien**, Port. **quem**, Fr. **qui** are used with the preposition when it refers to person, whereas in Italian it is always **cui** that is used with prepositions. (**See the Relative Pronoun Qui p.178**), for instance:*

> *Sp. El niño **a quien** hablo es inteligente.*
>
> *Port. O menino **a quem** eu falo é inteligente.*
>
> *It. Il ragazzo **a cui** parlo è intelligente.*
>
> *Fr. Le garçon **à qui** je parle est intelligent.*
>
> *– The boy **with whom** I speak is smart.*

It should be noted that, in English, in informal speech a preposition can be placed at the end of the relative clause, but in Romance languages it should be placed immediately before the associated relative pronoun (ex. The boy *whom* I speak *with* is smart).

Combination of French *Lequel* with Prepositions

French *lequel/lesquelles/lesquels* (*which*) is combined with the prepositions *à* and *de* and the definite article (*laquelle* doesn't change).

Below is the table with all combined forms:

French	
à	*de*
à + lequel = auquel	de + lequel = duquel
à + laquelle = à laquelle	de + laquelle = de laquelle
à + lesquels = auxquels	de + lesquels = desquels
à + lesquelles = auxquelles	de + lesquelles = desquelles

Portuguese *O que* (the one who)

In Portuguese the relative pronoun *o que/a que/os que/as que* has the meaning of *the one who/that, the ones who/that* and can refer to either people or things and can be used as the subject or object of a verb: Esse carro é *o que* eu comprei - *That car is **the one** I bought.*

Who/Whom/The one who
Sp. Quien, Port. Quem, It. Che, Fr. Qui

This relative pronoun is also one of the most frequently used in Romance languages.

NOTE:

It should be remembered that in French **qui** *can be used only as the subject of the clause and may refer to either a person or a thing.*

In Italian **che** *is used in this case.*

This relative pronoun can be used in the constructions "*it is/was (you/Peter/him and etc.) who (the one/those who/that)*", when the verb Sp. **ser**, Port. **ser**, It. **essere**, Fr. **être** – *to be* introduces the subordinate clause (however in Spanish **el que** series and Portuguese **que** are equally used here as well):

Sp. Fue él **quien** (**el que**) lo hizo.

Port. Foi ele **quem** (**que**) fez isso.

It. È stato lui **che** l'ha fatto.

Fr. C'était lui **qui** l'avait fait.

– *It was he* **who** *did it.*

Sp. Es ella **quien** (**la que**) no quiere venir.

Port. É ela **quem** (**que**) não quer vir.

It. È lei **che** non vuole venire.

Fr. C'est elle **qui** ne veut pas venir.

– *It is she* **who** *does not want to come.*

NOTE:

The phrase "Fue él **quien** *(el que) lo hizo" is considered ungrammatical in Peninsular Spanish (Spain), instead, the variant:* El que lo hizo fue él *is correct.*

Remember that in Spanish the relative pronouns of **el que** *series refer to human*

*or non-humans, while **quien** can only refer
to people .*

In Spanish, Portuguese and French the relative pronouns Sp. **quien**, Port. **quem**, Fr. **qui** are used to refer to a person and follow a preposition such as:

*Sp. **con, a, contra, entre, para, por, salvo, conforme,
sobre;***

*Port. **com, a, contra, entre, para, por, salvo, segundo,
sobre;***

*Fr. **avec, à, contre, entre, pour, sauf (excepté), sur;***

It is notable that in Spanish **el que** series are equally used in this case as well. Study the following example:

Sp. La mujer **con quien** (**la que**) hablé es mi profesora.

Port. A mulher **com quem** falei é minha professora.

Fr. La femme **avec qui** je parlais est ma professeure.

*– The woman **with whom** I spoke is my professor.*

*(or The woman **whom** I spoke **with** is my professor).*

NOTE:

*In Italian, it is always **cui** that is used with prepositions:*

*It. La donna **con cui** ho parlato è la mia
professoressa.*

*– The woman **with whom** I spoke is my
professor.*

*(or The woman **whom** I spoke **with** is my
professor).*

Who/Whom
Italian *Colui che/Colei che/Coloro che*

In Italian **chi** is always followed by *a singular verb* (***Chi*** studia, impara – *He who studies, learns*). Alternate forms of **chi** are **colui che**, **colei che**, **coloro che**. **Coloro che** is followed by *a plural verb*:

Colui che studia, impara; = **Colei che** studia, impara; = **Coloro che** studiano, imparano.

- *He who studies, learns = She who studies, learns = They who study, learn.*

Who/Whom/Which
Sp. *El cual;* Port. *O qual;* It. *Il quale*

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian this relative pronoun can be used instead of Sp. **el que**, Port. **que** (**quem**), It. **che** (**cui**). Therefore they are similar in terms of their grammatical function; however they are not very common in speech and are primarily used in written language and official documents.

In Spanish it also depends on the regional use (In Spain **el qual** is less common in speech than **el que**, but in many parts of Latin America the reverse is true). But nevertheless this relative pronoun should be remembered since it can be very useful.

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian this relative pronoun replaces Sp. **que**, Port. **que**, It. **che** in order to make the sentence clearer and easier to distinguish between multiple possible antecedents. It is also normally used with prepositions:

Sp. Mis amigos con **los cuales** estudié, encontraron un trabajo.

Port. Meus amigos com **os quais** eu estudei, encontraram um trabalho.

181

It. Gli amici con *i quali* ho studiato, hanno trovato un lavoro.

– *My friends with **whom** I studied found a job.*

In colloquial Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the sentence would be:

Sp. Mis amigos con *los que* estudié, encontraron un trabajo.

Port. Meus amigos com *quem* (*que*) eu estudei, encontraram um trabalho.

It. Gli amici con *cui* ho studiato, hanno trovato un lavoro.

What/Which
Neuter Relative Pronoun Sp. *lo que/lo cual*; Port. *o que/o qual*; It. *quello che/quell che/ciò che*; Fr. *ce qui/ce que*

In Romance languages the neuter relative pronouns Sp. *lo que/lo cual*; Port. *o que/o qual*; It. *quello che/quell che/ciò che*; Fr. *ce qui/ce que* are used to replace a general or abstract idea when there is no antecedent:

Sp. *Lo que* dices es verdad.

Port. *O que* dizes (você diz) é verdade.

It. *Quello che* dici è vero.

Fr. *Ce que* tu dis est vrai.

– *What you say is true.*

Sp. No entiendo *lo que* dices.

Port. Não entendo *o que* dizes (você diz).

It. Non capisco **ciò che** dici.

Fr. Je ne comprends pas **ce que** tu dis.

*– I don't understand **what** you say.*

NOTE:

*It should be mentioned that in French the neuter relative pronoun **ce qui** is used as the subject of the clause and **ce que** – as the object of a verb in a relative clause. For example:*

<u>As the subject:</u>

Fr. **Ce qui** *est intéressant est sa manière de chanter.*

*– **What** is interesting is his manner of singing.*

<u>As the object:</u>

Fr. *Je ne comprends pas **ce que** vous dites ·*

*– I do not understand **what** you say.*

In Romance languages the neuter relative pronoun can be combined with Sp. **todo**; Port. **tudo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** – *everything*:

Sp. **Todo lo que** él hace es bueno.

Port. **Tudo o que** ele faz é bom.

It. **Tutto ciò che** fa è buono.

Fr. **Tout ce qu'**il fait est bon.

*– **Everything** he does is good.*

Whose
*Sp. **cuyo**; Port. **cujo**; It. **il cui**; Fr. **dont***

The relative pronouns Sp. ***cuyo*** (***cuya, cuyos, cuyas***), Port. ***cujo*** (***cuja, cujos, cujas***), It. ***il cui*** (***la cui, i cui, le cui***), Fr. ***dont*** denote <u>ownership</u>. They can refer to people or things and are immediately followed by a noun with which they agree in gender and number (except in French). Observe the following:

Sp. Tengo un amigo ***cuyo*** padre es un médico.

Port. Eu tenho um amigo ***cujo*** pai é um médico.

It. Ho un amico ***il cui*** padre è un medico.

Fr. J'ai un ami ***dont*** le père est un médecin.

– *I have a friend **whose** father is a doctor.*

Sp. Sandra, ***cuya*** hermana tiene una boutique, estudia conmigo.

Port. Sandra, ***cuja*** irmã tem uma boutique, estuda comigo.

It. Sandra, ***la cui*** sorella ha una boutique, studia con me.

Fr. Sandra, ***dont*** la sœur a une boutique, étudie avec moi.

– *Sandra, **whose** sister has a boutique, studies with me.*

NOTE:

*In French **dont** can also mean **of (about) which, of (about) whom**:*

Fr. L'homme ***dont*** vous parlez est mon patron.
– *The man **of whom** you speak is my boss.*

Fr. Le plat ***dont*** nous parlons est bon.
– *The dish **of which** we speak is tasty.*

***Dont** cannot be followed by a possessive adjective (e.g. C'est le garçon **dont** je*

connais les parents. – This is the boy
whose *parents I know).*

Where
Sp. *donde*, Port. *onde*, It. *dove*, Fr. *où*

In Romance languages Sp. **donde**, Port. **onde**, It. **dove**,
Fr. **où** introduce a relative clause that refers to a place or time in
order to avoid using a preposition and a form of Sp. **el que**, Port.
que, It. **cui**, Fr. **lequel**:

Sp. Esta es la casa donde vive el actor (Esta es la casa en la que
vive el actor);

Port. Esta é a casa onde o ator vive (Esta é a casa em que o ator
vive);

It. Questa è la casa dove vive l'attore. (Questa è la casa in cui vive
l'attore);

Fr. Ceci est la maison où vit l'acteur (Ceci est la maison dans
laquelle vit l'acteur).

– This is the house where the actor lives (This is the house in
which the actor lives).

NOTE:
*In Romance languages they may have
some variations:*
Sp. **adonde/de donde**, *Port.* **aonde/de
onde**, *It.* **dove** *(does not change)/***di dove**,
Fr. **où** *(does not change)/* **d'où** – *to where/
from where:*

Sp. *El museo* **adonde** *vas es hermoso;*

Port. *O museu* **aonde** *vais é bonito;*

It. *Il museo* **dove** *(**in cui**) vai è bello;*

Fr. *Le musée* **où** *tu vas est beau.*

*– The museum you are going to is
beautiful.*

*Sp. ¿**De donde** eres?*

*Port. **De onde** és (você é)?*

*It. **Di dove** sei?*

*Fr. **D'où** es-tu?*

- Where are you from?

When
Sp. *cuando*, Port. *quando*, It. *quando*, Fr. *quand*

Example:

Sp. Tengo un examen la semana que viene, **cuando** tus padres lleguen.

Port. Eu tenho um exame na semana que vem, **quando** teus pais chegam.

It. Ho un esame la prossima settimana, **quando** arrivano i tuoi genitori.

Fr. J'ai un examen la semaine prochaine, **quand** tes parents arrivent.

*– I have an exam next week **when** your parents arrive.*

Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns

Indefinite adjectives and pronouns are groups of words which are used to quantify inexactly things or people (e.g. *some, several, a few, many*), distinguish one thing from another (e.g. *other, a certain*), or relate one thing to another (e.g. *each, both*). In general, indefinite adjectives and pronouns refer to an unspecified third person or thing.

Did you know?

Milan is the second biggest Italian city (over 1.3 million people) after Rome (over 2.8 million people). Milan is considered to be the financial and economic capital of Italy.

It should be said that in Spanish an indefinite pronoun that refers to a person requires the personal *a* when used as the direct object of a verb (**See the Direct Object p.98**).

Below are the most common indefinite adjectives and pronouns in Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
s.masc./ s.fem. pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem. pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem. pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem. pl.masc./ pl.fem.	
algo; alguna cosa	algo; alguma coisa	qualcosa	quelque chose	*something*
alguien	alguém	qualcuno	quelqu'un	*someone*
alguno/ alguna algunos/ algunas	algum/ alguma alguns/ algumas	alcuno/ alcuna alcuni/ alcune	quelque/ quelques	*some*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cierto/ cierta/ ciertos/ ciertas	certo/ certa/ certos/ certas	certo/ certa/ certi/ certe	certain/ certain certains	*certain*
tal/ tales; semejante	tal/ tais	tale/ tali	tel/ telle tells/ telles	*such*
cada	cada	ogni	chaque	*each, every*
		ognuno/ ognuna	chacun/ chacune	
varios/ varias	vários/ várias	vario/ varie vari/ varie	divers/ diverses	*various, several*
diferente/ diferentes	diferente/ diferentes	differente / differenti	différent/ différente/ differents/ différentes	*different*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
solo/ sola solos/ solas	só sozinho/ sozinha	solo/ sola soli/ sole	seul/ seule seuls/ seules	*alone*
bastante/ bastantes (adv./adj.) (suficiente/ -s)	bastante/ bastantes (adv./adj.) (suficiente /-s)	bastante/ bastanti (adj.) sufficiente /-i	suffisant/ suffisante suffisants/ suffisantes (*adj.*)	*enough, sufficient*
		abbastanz a (*adv.*)	assez (*adv.*)	
mucho/ mucha muchos/ muchas	muito/ muita muitos/ muitas	molto/ molta molti/ molte	beaucoup/ beaucoup de; *plusieurs*	*many, much, a lot*
poco/ poca pocos/ pocas	pouco/ pouca poucos/ poucas	poco/ poca pochi/ poche	peu	*few*
demasiado/ demasiada demasiados / demasiadas	demasiado/ demasiada demasiados/ demasiadas	troppo/ troppa troppi/ troppe	trop de	*too many/ much*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	demais *(adv.)*		trop *(adv.)*	
todo/ toda todos/ todas	todo/toda todos/todas	tutto/ tutta tutti/ tutte	tout/toute tous/ toutes	*all*
todo	tudo	tutto	tout	*everythin g*
demás (el resto)	o resto	il resto	le reste	*the rest (the others)*
ninguno/ ninguna ningunos/ ningunas	nenhum/ nenhuma nenhuns/ nenhumas	nessuno/ nessuna nessuni/ nessune	aucun/ aucune aucuns/ aucunes	*none*
nadie	ninguém	nessuno	personne	*nobody/ no one*
nada	nada	niente	rien	*nothing*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ambos/ ambas (los/las dos)	ambos/ ambas (os dois/as duas)	entrambi/ ambedue (tutti e due)	les deux (tous les deux)	*both*

Something
Sp. algo (alguna cosa), Port. algo (alguma coisa), It. qualcosa, Fr. quelque chose

It is invariable and can be used as a pronoun (when referring only to things) meaning "*something*" or "*anything*":

Sp. Tengo *algo* para ti;

Port. Eu tenho *algo* para ti (você);

It. Ho *qualcosa* per te;

Fr. J'ai *quelque chose* pour toi.

– *I have **something** for you.*

Sp. ¿Quieres *algo (alguna cosa)*?

Port. Você quer (queres) *algo (alguma coisa)*?

It. Vuoi *qualcosa*?

Fr. Veux-tu *quelque chose*?

– *Do you want **anything**?*

Someone
Sp. alguien; Port. alguém; It. qualcuno; Fr. quelqu'un

It is a pronoun that refers only to people meaning *"someone"* or *"somebody"*. When it is used in questions it means *"anyone"* or *"anybody"*:

Sp. Hay **alguien** en la casa;

Port. Tem **alguém** em casa;

It. C'è **qualcuno** in casa;

Fr. Il ya **quelqu'un** dans la maison.

*— There is **someone** in the house.*

Sp. **Alguien** ha visto a John?

Port. **Alguém** viu John?

It. **Qualcuno** ha visto John?

Fr. **Quelqu'un** a vu John?

*— Has **anyone** seen John?*

Some
Sp. alguno; Port. algum; It. alcuno; Fr. quelque

Spanish **alguno**, Portuguese **algum** and Italian **alcuno** and French **quelque** can be used as an adjective or as a pronoun that refers to things, places or people meaning *"some"* and *"any"*. They agree in number and gender:

Sp. (*s.masc.*) **alguno**; (*s.fem.*) **alguna**; (*pl.masc.*) **algunos**; (*pl.fem.*) **algunas**;

Port. (*s.masc.*) **algum**; (*s.fem.*) **alguma**; (*pl.masc.*) **alguns**; (*pl.fem.*) **algumas**;

192

It. (*s.masc.*) **alcuno**; (*s.fem.*) **alcuna**; (*pl.masc.*) **alcuni**;
(*pl.fem.*) **alcune**.

Unlike other Romance languages, in French **quelque** agrees only in number:

Fr. (*singular*) **quelque**; (*plural*) **quelques**.

In Spanish it can be shortened to **algún** before singular masculine nouns. In the plural Spanish **algunos**, Portuguese **alguns**, Italian **alcuni** and French **quelques** mean "*some*" or '*a few*". When they are used in questions they mean "*any*". When they are used as pronouns they mean "*one/some of them*":

Sp. Hay **algunas** ciudades donde no hay teatros;

Port. Há **algumas** cidades onde não há teatros;

It. Ci sono **alcune** città dove non ci sono teatri;

Fr. Il y a **quelques** villes, où il n'y a pas de théâtres.

– *In **some** cities there are no theatres.*

Sp. Vi a **algunas** personas en la calle;

Port. Eu vi **algumas** pessoas na rua;

It. Ho visto **alcune** persone nella strada;

Fr. J'ai vu **quelques** personnes dans la rue

– *I saw **some** people in the street.*

Certain
Sp. cierto; Port. certo; It. certo, Fr. certain

Sp. *cierto*; Port. *certo*; It. *certo*, Fr. *certain* are adjectives which agree in number and gender and are placed before the noun meaning "*certain*":

Sp. *Ciertos* coches son muy caros.

Port. *Certos* carros são muito caros.

It. *Certe* macchine sono molto care.

Fr. *Certaines* voitures sont très chères.

– *Certain cars are very expensive.*

It is notable once Sp. *cierto*; Port. *certo*; It. *certo*, Fr. *certain* put after the noun, they mean reliable, definite, certain:

Sp. No es *cierto*;

Port. Não é *certo*;

It. Non è *certo*;

Fr. Ce n'est pas *certain*.

– *It is not certain.*

Such
Sp. tal; Port. tal; It. tale; Fr. tel

Spanish *tal*, Portuguese *tal*, Italian *tale* can only vary in number (Plural Sp. *tales*; Port. *tais*; It. *tali*), except in French where *tel* can agree in number and gender respectively: (*s.masc.*) *tel*, (*s.fem.*) *telle*, (*pl.masc.*) *tells* (*pl.fem.*) *telles*. They can only come before a noun in Romance languages.

Sp. *Tal* profesión es prestigiosa;

Port. *Tal* profissão é prestigiosa;

It. *Tale* professione è prestigiosa;

Fr. *Telle* profession est prestigieuse

– Such a profession is prestigious.

Sp. No me gustan *tales* cosas;

Port. Eu não gosto de *tais* coisas.

It. Non mi piacciono *tali* cose;

Fr. Je n'aime pas de *telles* choses.

– I don't like such things.

Spanish *semejante*

Spanish *semejante* can be placed before or after a noun. If it is placed before the noun, it means "*such*" mainly in negative phrases. It can mean "*similar*" or "*alike*" when placed after the noun. For instance:

Nunca he visto *semejante* actor

– Never have I seen such an actor;

Compré tres camisas *semejantes*

– I bought three similar shirts.

It should be remembered that Sp. *tal* (*semejante*); Port. *tal*; It. *tale*; Fr. *tel* cannot be followed by an indefinite article, like it can in English.

Every
Sp. cada; Port. cada; It. ogni; Fr. chaque

Sp. *cada*; Port. *cada*; It. *ogni*; Fr. *chaque* – *"every/ each"* are unchangeable and are used as an adjectives:

Sp. Voy a España *cada* año;

Port. Eu vou à Espanha *cada (todo)* ano;

It. Vado in Spagna *ogni* anno;

Fr. Je vais en Espagne *chaque* année.

*– I go to Spain **every** year.*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese, **todo** would sound more natural in the above example. **Cada** is used to demonstrate the use of the word.*

Each one, Everyone
Italian *ognuno* and French *chacun*

It. (*s.masc*) *ognuno* / (*s.fem.*) *ognuna* and Fr. (*s.masc.*) *chacun* / (*s.fem.*) *chacune* are used as nouns and mean *"each one"* or *"everyone"*:

It. *Ognuno* ha i propri gusti;

Fr. *Chacun* a son propre goût.

*– **Everyone** has its own taste.*

Several, Varied
Sp. *varios*; Port. *vários*; It. *vario*; Fr. *divers*

These are used as an indefinite adjective as well as a pronoun meaning *"several"*. In Spanish, Portuguese and French they are only used in the plural with the masculine and feminine

forms (Sp. *varios/varias*; Port. *vários/várias*; Fr. *divers/diverses*, whereas in Italian *vario* also has the singular: *(s.masc.) vario, (s.fem.) varia, (pl.masc.) vari, (pl.fem.) varie*.

Sp. *Varios* escritores son conocidos en este país;

Port. *Vários* escritores são conhecidos neste país;

It. *Vari* scrittori sono noti in questo paese;

Fr. *Divers* écrivains sont connus dans ce pays.

– *Several* writers are well known in this country.

Sp. *varios*; Port. *vários*; It. *vario*; Fr. *divers* can also mean "*varied*" or "*different*":

Sp. Tiene un vestido de *varios* colores;

Port. Ela tem um vestido de *várias* cores;

It. Ha un vestito di *vari* colori;

Fr. Elle a une robe de *diverses* couleurs.

– *She has a dress of various colors.*

Different
Sp. diferente; Port. diferente; It. differente; Fr. different

These adjectives can be placed after the noun and agree in number, except French where it agrees in number and gender:

Sp. Ella tiene un vestido de colores *diferentes*;

Port. Ela tem um vestido de cores *diferentes*;

It. Ha un vestito di colori *differenti*;

197

Fr. Elle a une robe de couleurs *différentes*.

— *She has a dress of **different** colours.*

Alone, Only
Sp. *solo*; Port. *só, sozinho/sozinha*; It. *solo*; Fr. *seul*

When Sp. **solo**; Port. **só, sozinho/sozinha**; It. **solo**; Fr. **seul** can be used as an adjective and agree in number and gender in Spanish, Italian and French (in Portuguese it is invariable) meaning "*alone*":

Sp. Me fui **solo** al cine;

Port. Eu fui **só (sozinho)** ao cinema;

It. Sono andato **solo** al cinema;

Fr. Je suis allé **seul** au cinéma.

— *I went **alone** to the cinema.*

It should be said that in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian these adjectives cannot be used to convey English "*the only*". In this case, the word Sp. **único**; Port. **único**; It. **unico** – *the only* is used. In French **seul** can be used to say *the only*. For example:

Sp. El **único** cine que muestra esta película está en el centro de la ciudad;

Port. O **único** cinema que mostra este filme está no centro da cidade;

It. L'**unico** cinema che dà questo film è nel centro della città;

Fr. Le **seul** cinéma qui montre ce film est dans le centre de la ville.

— *The **only** cinema that shows this film is in the centre of the city.*

Sp. **solo**; Port. **só**; It. **solo**; Fr. **seul** can also be used as an adverb meaning *"only"*, which is equivalent to Sp. **solamente**; Port. **somente**; It. **solamente**; Fr. **seulement**.

However unlike in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, in French the adverb **seulement** is used to say *"only"*.

Sp. **Sólo** tengo dos horas para trabajar;

Port. Eu **só** tenho duas horas para trabalhar;

It. Ho **solo** due ore per lavorare;

Fr. J'ai **seulement** deux heures pour travailler.

*– I have **only** two hours to work.*

Enough (Sufficient)
Sp. bastante (suficiente); Port. bastante (suficiente); It. bastante (sufficiente); Fr. suffisant (assez)

When Sp. **bastante** (**suficiente**); Port. **bastante** (**suficiente**); It. **bastante** (**sufficiente**); Fr. **suffisant** (**assez**) – *"enough"*, "sufficient" are used as adjectives or pronouns, they agree in number in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian. In French it agrees in number and gender:

Sp. Esto es **suficiente** (or **bastante**) para mí;

Port. Este é **suficiente** (or **bastante**) para mim;

It. Questo è **sufficiente** per me;

Fr. Cela est **suffisant** pour moi.

*– This is **enough** for me.*

NOTE:

*Sp. **bastante** and Port. **bastante** mean enough, a lot, too much.*

When they are used as *an adverb*, they take the form of *abbastanza* in Italian and *assez* in French. In Spanish and Portuguese **bastante** (or **suficientemente**) can be used as an adverb.

As an adverb: Sp. **bastante** (**suficientemente**); Port. **bastante**; It. **abbastanza**; Fr. **assez** are invariable. As an adverb they are generally used to indicate quantity or extent. When it comes to the quantity, French **assez** is used with the preposition **de**. Study the following:

Sp. Tenemos **bastante** (**suficientemente**) tiempo para ir allí.

Port. Temos **bastante** (**suficientemente**) tempo para ir lá.

It. Abbiamo **abbastanza** tempo per andare lì;

Fr. Nous avons **assez de** temps pour y aller.

— *We have **enough** time to go there.*

Sp. Su casa es **bastante** (**suficientemente**) grande;.

Port. Sua casa é **bastante** (**suficientemente**) grande;

It. La sua casa è **abbastanza** grande;

Fr. Sa maison est **assez** grande.

— *Her house is **quite** big.*

Much/Many/A lot of, Few/Little
Sp. mucho, poco; Port. muito, pouco; It. molto, poco; Fr. beaucoup (de), peu

- As an *adjective or pronoun* Sp. ***mucho/a/os/as***; Port. ***muito/a/os/as***; It. ***molto/a/i/e***; Fr. ***beaucoup de*** means *"much"*, *"many"*, *"a lot of"* and agree in number and gender (except in French):

> Sp. Sp. Ella tiene ***mucho*** trabajo;
>
> Port. Ela tem ***muito*** trabalho;
>
> It. Ha ***molto*** lavoro;
>
> Fr. Elle a ***beaucoup de*** travail.
>
> *– She has **a lot of** work.*

- As *adjectives* or *pronouns* Sp. ***poco/a/os/as***; Port. ***pouco/a/os/as***; It. ***poco/a/i/e***; Fr. ***peu de*** mean *"few"*, *"little"* and also agree in number and gender (except in French):

> Sp. Tienen ***pocos*** amigos;
>
> Port. Eles têm ***poucos*** amigos;
>
> It. Hanno ***pochi*** amici;
>
> Fr. Ils ont ***peu d'***amis.
>
> *– They have **few** friends.*

NOTE:
*When used as an adjective **beaucoup** and **peu** are used with the preposition **de** in French.*

- Sp. ***mucho/a***; Port. ***muito/a***; It. ***molto/a***; Fr. ***beaucoup*** can also be used as unchangeable *neuter pronouns*:

> Sp. Tenemos ***mucho*** que hacer;

Port. Nós temos *muito* o que fazer;

It. Abbiamo *molto* da fare;

Fr. Nous avons *beaucoup* à faire.

— *We have a lot to do.*

- As *adverbs* Sp. *mucho*; Port. *muito*; It. *molto*; Fr. *beaucoup* mean "*much*", "*a lot*".

Sp. Ella trabaja *mucho*;

Port. Ela trabalha *muito*;

It. Lei lavora *molto*;

Fr. Elle travaille *beaucoup*.

— *She works a lot.*

- As *adverbs* Sp. *poco*; Port. *pouco*; It. *poco*; Fr. *peu* mean "*little*", "*few*", but are also used to negate an adjective (in English it is the prefix *un-*):

Sp. Él sonríe *poco*;

Port. Ele sorri *pouco*;

It. Lui sorride *poco*;

Fr. Il sourit *peu*.

— *He smiles a little.*

Sp. Es *poco* probable;

Port. É *pouco* provável;

It. È *poco* probabile

Fr. C'est *peu* probable.

– It is unlikely.

It is notable that when Sp. *poco*; Port. *pouco*; It. *poco*; Fr. *peu* are preceded by the indefinite article, they mean "*a little*":

Sp. Es *un poco* extraño;

Port. É *um pouco* estranho;

It. È '*un po*' strano;

Fr. Il est *un peu* étrange.

– It is a little strange.

NOTE: *Italian **poco** becomes **un po'**.*

When it comes to the quantity of something Sp. *un poco*; Port. *um pouco*; It. *un po'*; Fr. *un peu* are used with the preposition *de* in Spanish, Portuguese and French and *di* in Italian, and the noun that follows doesn't have any article at all **(See the Partitive p.82 and Expressions of Quantity p.83)**:

Sp. ¿Quieres *un poco de* jugo?

Port. (Você quer) queres *um pouco de* suco?

It. Vuoi *un po 'di* succo?

Fr. Veux-tu *un peu de* jus?

– Do you want a little juice?

Too much, Too many

Sp. *demasiado; Port. demasiado, demais; It. troppo; Fr. trop*

Sp. *demasiado*; Port. *demasiado*; It. *troppo* are adjectives or pronouns that mean "*too much*", "*too many*". In Spanish, Italian and Portuguese they change in gender and number:

- Sp. (*s.masc.*) *demasiado*, (*s.fem.*) *demasiada*, (*pl.masc.*) *demasiados*, (*pl.fem.*) *demasiadas*;

- It. (*s.masc.*) *troppo*, (*s.fem.*) *troppa*, (*pl.masc.*) *troppi*, (*pl.fem.*) *troppe*;

- Port. (*s.masc.*) *demasiado*, (*s.fem.*) *demasiada*, (*pl.masc.*) *demasiados*, (*pl.fem.*) *demasiadas*.

Sp. Hay *demasiada* gente en la calle;

Port. Há gente *demais* na rua;

It. C'è *troppa* gente in strada.

– *There are **too many** people in the street.*

NOTE:

*Unlike in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, in French **trop** is an adverb and when is preceded by a noun, it is used with the preposition **de**:*

Fr. *Il y a **trop de** gens dans la rue.*

– *There are too many people in the street.*

Also, Spanish *demasiado* and Italian *troppo* can also be used as adverbs meaning "*too (much)*" and, in this case, they don't change neither in gender nor in number. However, as an adverb in French *trop* and Portuguese *demais* are used:

Sp. Trabajé **demasiado** ayer;

Port. Eu trabalhei **demais** ontem;

It. Ho lavorato **troppo** ieri;

Fr. J'ai **trop** travaillé hier.

— *I worked **too much** yesterday.*

NOTE:

*In French **trop** should be put before past participle in a sentence.*

As an unchangeable neuter pronoun Sp. **demasiado**; Port. **demais**; It. **troppo**; Fr. **trop** mean "*too*":

Sp. La luz es **demasiado** fuerte;

Port. A luz é forte **demais**;

It. La luce è **troppo** forte;

Fr. La lumière est **trop** forte.

- *The light is **too** strong.*

All
Sp. todo; Port. todo; It. tutto; Fr. tout

Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** as an adjective or pronoun changes in gender and number. As an adverb it is unchangeable.

- As adjectives, they mean "*all (of)*", "*the whole*", "*the entire*". In this case Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** can be used with a noun preceded by the definite article, possessive or demonstrative adjectives:

Sp. **Toda la calle** está cubierta de nieve;

Port. **Toda a rua** está coberta de neve;

It. **Tutta la strada** è coperta di neve;

Fr. **Toute la rue** est couverte de neige.

– *The whole street is covered with snow.*

Sp. **Todos nuestros amigos** son gentiles;

Port. **Todos os nossos amigos** são gentis;

It. **Tutti i nostri amici** sono gentili;

Fr. **Tous nos amis** sont gentils.

– *All of our friends are nice.*

- Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; can be used before a pronoun or place name, except in French:

Sp. **Todos ellos** quieren hablar español;

Port. **Todos eles** querem falar espanhol;

It. **Tutti loro** vogliono parlare spagnolo;

Fr. **Tous** veulent parler espagnol.

– *All of them want to speak Spanish.*

- Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** in previous examples were put before the word they modified, but they can also be placed in other positions in the sentence, still agreeing with the associated noun:

Sp. Los estudiantes son **todos** muy inteligentes;

Port. Os alunos são **todos** muito inteligentes;

It. Gli studenti sono **tutti** molto intelligenti;

Fr. Les élèves sont **tous** très intelligents.

— *The students are **all** very smart.*

- When Sp. **todo/os**; Port. **todo/os**; It. **tutto/i**; Fr. **tout/s** are used with nouns preceded by <u>*the definite article*</u> that refer to periods of time, they mean "*every*":

Sp. **Todas las** semanas, **Todos los** días;

Port. **Todas as** semanas, **Todos os** dias;

It. **Tutte le** settimane, **Tutti i** giorni;

Fr. **Toutes les** semaines, **Tous les** jours.

— *Every week, Every day.*

- Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** with <u>*the indefinite article*</u>.

NOTE:

*In order to express "a whole/an entire" in Romance languages, it is better to use the adjective Sp. **entero/a/os/as**; Port. **inteiro/a/os/as**; It. **intero/a/i/e**; Fr. **entier/ère/s/ères** which goes with the indefinite article and agrees in number and gender with the noun it defines:*

*Sp. un día **entero**;*

*Port. um dia **inteiro**;*

*It. una giornata **intera** (un giorno **intero**);*

*Fr. une journée **entière** (un jour **entier**)*

*– A **whole** day.*

- Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** can also be used with
relative pronouns making common relative constructions, such
as:

1. Sp. **todo lo que**; Port. **todo o que**; It. **tutto quello que**; Fr.
tout ce que – *all/everything that*. For example:

        Sp. Quiero saber **todo lo que** sabes;

    Port. Quero saber **tudo o que** sabes (você sabe);

      It. Voglio sapere **tutto quello che** sai;

       Fr. Je veux savoir **tout ce que** tu sais.

    *– I want to know **everything that** you know.*

2. Sp. **todos los que/ todas las que**; Port. **todos aqueles
que/ todas aquelas que**; It. **tutti quelli che/ tutte quelle
che**; Fr. **tous ceux qui/ touttes celles qui**. – *all (those)/
everyone who*. For instance:

      Sp. Hablamos con **todos los que** vinieron;

    Port. Nós conversamos **com todos aqueles** que vieram;

    It. Abbiamo parlato con **tutti quelli che** sono venuti;

    Fr. Nous avons parlé à **tous ceux qui** sont venus.

    *– We talked to **all those who** came.*

- There are also fixed expressions with Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It.
tutto; Fr. **tout** that should be remembered. However, in some
cases Port. **qualquer** *"any"*, It. **ogni** *"every"* are more
common than Port. **todo** and It. **tutto** in some sentences:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en todo caso, de todos modos	em todo o caso, em qualquer caso	in tutti i casi, in ogni caso	en tout cas, dans tous les cas	*in any case*
en todo momento	em todos os momentos	in ogni momento	à tout moment	*at any time*
a todas horas	em todas as horas	a tutte le ore	à toutes heures	*at all hours*
todo tipo de	todos os tipos de	tutti i tipi di	tous types de, toutes sortes de	*all kinds of*
a toda costa	a todo custo	a tutti i costi, ad ogni costo	à tout prix	*at all costs*
en todas partes	em toda parte	in ogni luogo	en tout lieu, partout	*everywhere*

- As a pronoun Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** mean "*all*" or "*everyone*":

Sp. desde el punto de vista de **todos**;

Port. do ponto de vista de **todos**;

It. dal punto di vista di **tutti**;

209

Fr. du point de vue de **tous**.

– *From **everyone's** point of view.*

Sp. Eso es lo que ella dice a **todos**;

Port. Isso é o que ela diz a **todos**;

It. Questo è quello che dice a **tutti**;

Fr. Voilà ce qu'elle dit à **tous**.

– *That's what she says to **everyone**.*

NOTE:

*In Spanish **todo el mundo**, Portuguese **todo mundo** (without article) and French **tout le monde** is the equivalent to the pronoun "<u>everyone</u>". In Italian **tutti** is more common in this case. For example:*

Sp. **Todo el mundo** *lo sabe;*
Port. **Todo o mundo** *sabe disso;*
It. **Tutti** *lo sanno;*
Fr. **Tout le monde** *le sait.*
– ***Everyone** knows it.*

Everything
Sp. todo; Port. tudo; It. tutto; Fr. tout
(as an invariable pronoun)

As an invariable pronoun Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** refer to "*all*", "*everything*" in general. Note that Portuguese pronoun becomes **tudo** in this case:

Sp. Compré **todo**;

Port. Eu comprei **tudo**;

It. Ho comprato **tutto**;

Fr. J'ai **tout** acheté.

– *I bought **everything**.*

NOTE:

*In French **tout** should be put before past participle in a sentence.*

The rest, The others
Sp. demás (el resto); Port. o resto; It. il resto; Fr. le reste

Spanish **demás** is preceded by the definite article which agrees in gender and number (**demás** itself is invariable) and means "*the rest*", "*the others*". There are also other equivalents to this in Romance languages, for example: Sp. **el resto**, Port. **o resto**, It. **il resto**, Fr. **le reste** also mean "*the rest*", "*the others*", which are completely unchangeable.

Sp. **Los demás** (visitantes) no pueden venir, or **El resto** de los visitantes no pueden venir;

Port. **O resto** dos visitantes não podem vir;

It. **Il resto** dei visitatori non possono venire;

Fr. **Le reste** des visiteurs ne peut pas venir.

– **The rest** *of the visitors cannot come.*

The invariable neuter lo demás in Spanish

The invariable neuter **lo demás** means "*everything else*", "*the rest*", for example:

Sp. ella me llamó por teléfono, **lo demás** no importa.

– *She called me on the phone, **the rest** doesn't matter.*

Sp. **el resto**, Port. **o resto**, It. **il resto**, Fr. **le reste** can also be used in this sense:

Sp. Ella me llamó por teléfono, **el resto** no importa;

Port. Ela me telefonou, **o resto** não importa;

It. Lei mi ha telefonato, **il resto** non importa;

Fr. Elle m'a téléphoné, **le reste** n'a pas d'importance.

– *She phoned me, **the rest** does not matter.*

Anyone, None
Sp. *ninguno*; Port. *nenhum*; It. *nessuno*; Fr. *aucun*

The indefinite pronoun Sp. **ninguno/a**; Port. **nenhum/a**; It. **nessuno/a**; Fr. **aucun/e** agree in gender in Romance languages and mean *"anyone"*, *"none"*:

Sp. **Ninguno** de ellos llegó;

Port. **Nenhum** deles veio;

It. **Nessuno** di loro è venuto;

Fr. **Aucun** d'eux n'est venu.

– ***None** of them came.*

Sp. ¿Tienes algunos regalos para ellos? – **Ninguno**;

Port. Tens (Você tem) alguns presentes para eles? – **Nenhum**;

It. Hai regali per loro? – *Nessuno*;

Fr. As-tu des cadeaux pour eux? – *Aucun*.

– *Do you have any gifts for them? – None.*

NOTE:

*In French the negative sentence requires the negative particle **ne** after **aucun** (See the Negation p.313 and Present Simple p.222).*

*It should be mentioned that Spanish **ninguno** becomes **ningún** when it precedes a masculine noun.*

No one, Nobody
Sp. *nadie*; Port. *ninguém*; It. *nessuno*; Fr. *personne*

The indefinite pronouns Sp. *nadie*; Port. *ninguém*; It. *nessuno*; Fr. *personne* mean "*no one*", "*nobody*". Note that French *personne* also requires the negative particle *ne*, which can become n' before *a vowel*:

Sp. *Nadie* vino;

Port. *Ninguém* veio;

It. *Nessuno* è venuto;

Fr. *Personne n'*est venu.

– *No one came.*

Sp. No veo a *nadie*;

Port. Não vejo *ninguém*;

It. Non vedo *nessuno*;

Fr. Je ne vois **personne**.

— *I see* **no one**.*/I don't see* **anyone**.

The previous example shows that unlike in English, in Romance languages a negative sentence has double negation, which contains a negative particle and an indefinite pronoun: Sp. **no...nadie**; Port. **não... ninguém**; It. **non...nessuno**; Fr. **ne... personne** (**See the Negation p.313 and Present Simple p. 222**).

Nothing
Sp. nada; Port. nada; It. niente; Fr. rien

The indefinite pronoun Sp. **nada**; Port. **nada**; It. **niente**; Fr. **rien** mean *"nothing"*. In French **rien** is also used with the negative particle **ne**.

Sp. No veo **nada**;

Port. Eu não vejo **nada**;

It. Non vedo **niente**;

Fr. Je ne vois **rien**.

— *I see* **nothing**.*/I don't see* **anything**.

Both
Sp. ambos (los dos); Port. ambos (os dois);
It. entrambi/ambedue (tutti e due);
Fr. les deux (tous les deux)

Sp. **ambos/as** (***los/las dos***); Port. **ambos/as** (***os dois/ as duas***); It. **ambedue** (***tutti e due***); Fr. **les deux** (***tous les deux***) are always used in the plural as an adjective or pronoun and refer to two people, things or places and mean *"both"* in

English. They change in gender, except Italian where **ambedue** is invariable.

In Spanish and Portuguese **ambos** is substituted by Sp. **los/las dos** and Port. **os dois/as duas** in speech. In Italian **entrambi** and **ambedue** and **tutti e due** are interchangeable as well as **les deux** and **tous les deux** in French. Observe the following:

Sp. **Ambos** vinieron;

Port. **Ambos** vieram;

It. **Entrambi** sono venuti;

Fr. **Les deux** sont venus.

– **Both** of them came.

Sp. Hablé con **los dos**;

Port. Eu conversei com **os dois**;

It. Ho parlato con tutti **e due**;

Fr. J'ai parlé à tous **les deux**.

– *I spoke to **both** of them.*

NOTE:

*It is notable that English speakers should not use Sp. **ambos**; Port. **ambos**; It. **ambedue/entrambi**; Fr. **les deux** as an equivalent to "both" in sentences like: both sister and brother. In Romance languages both is used for emphasis and cannot be translated literally. For example:*

Sp. Hablé con el hermano y la hermana;
Port. Falei com o irmão e a irmã;
It. Ho parlato con il fratello e la sorella;

215

Fr. J'ai parlé avec <u>frère et sœur</u>.
– I spoke to <u>both brother and sister</u>.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

A verb is a word that indicates an action or a state of being, for example: go, live, be.

Overview

Verbs in Romance languages have categories of mood, tense, person, number, gender and voice. Also, there are personal and impersonal forms of the verb in Romance languages. Personal forms of the verb have the mood and person; impersonal - the category of gender for participles; and both personal and impersonal forms - the category of tense and number. Personal forms of the verb are: the indicative, the subjunctive, the conditional and the imperative. Impersonal forms of the verb are: the participle, the gerund and the infinitive.

Did you know?

Abidjan is the economical capital and chief port of the Ivory Coast (Côte d'Ivoire) with the 3rd largest French speaking population in the world. It is also the 4th most populous city in Africa (over 4.3 million people).

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French verbs have different tenses in three moods: indicative, subjunctive and conditional mood.

In Spanish, Italian and French the indicative mood consists of eight tense forms. They are divided into simple (only one single word) and compound (made up of an auxiliary verb and a past participle) tense forms. The simple tenses include the present, imperfect, simple perfect, and future simple. The compound tenses include a present perfect, recent past, past perfect, pluperfect and the future prefect. Compound tenses in all Romance languages are formed using the auxiliary verbs "to be" and to "have". However, Portuguese has 10 tense forms, in addition to the listed above there are also *futuro do perfeito simple* and *futuro do perfeito composto*.

Subjunctive in Italian and French has four tenses, which are present subjunctive, past subjunctive, imperfect subjunctive

217

and pluperfect subjunctive. Spanish and Portuguese have six tenses, in addition to the aforementioned, there are also the future subjunctive and future perfect subjunctive.

In the conditional mood the whole number of tense forms across Romance languages is two.

There is also the imperative mood of the verb that does not have different tenses. The imperative mood expresses commands, orders or instructions.

Now, all the categories of the verb will be considered in more detail for Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

The following demonstrates all the moods and tenses of the 1st person singular of the regular verb Sp. *trabajar*; Port. *trabalhar*; It. *lavorare*; Fr. *travailler* - to work.

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	Indicative mood			
	Present tenses			
Present tense	*trabajo*	*trabalho*	*lavoro*	*je travaille*
Present Perfect	*he trabajado*	*tenho trabalhado*	*ho lavorato*	*j'ai travaillé*
	Past tenses			
Preterite	*trabajé*	*trabalhei*	*lavorai*	*je travaillai*
Imperfect	*trabajaba*	*trabalhava*	*lavoravo*	*je travaillais*

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Past Perfect	hube trabajado	tinha trabalhado	ebbi lavorato	j'eus travaillé
Pluperfect	había trabajado	trabalhara	avevo lavorato	j'avais travaillé
Future tense				
Future	trabajaré	trabalharei	lavorerò	je travailler- ai
Future Perfect	habré trabajado	terei trabalhado	avrò lavorato	j'aurai travaillé
Conditionals				
Conditional present	trabajaría	trabalharia	lavorerei	je travailler- ais
Conditional Perfect (Past)	habría trabajado	teria trabalhado	avrei lavorato	j'aurais travaillé
Subjunctive mood				
Present tenses				
Present tense	trabaje	trabalhe	lavori	je travaille

	Spanish		Portuguese	Italian	French
Present Perfect	haya trabajado		tenha trabalhado	abbia lavorato	j'aie travaillé
Past tenses					
Past tense	1st option trabaj ara	2nd option trabaj ase	trabalhasse	lavorassi	je travaill-asse
Past Perfect	1st option hubi-era trabaj ado	2nd option hubi-ese trabaj ado	tivesse trabalhado	avessi lavorato	j'eusse travaillé
Future tenses					
Future tense	trabajare		trabalhar	———	———
Future Perfect	hubiere trabajado		tiver trabalhado	———	———
Imperative mood					

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian		French
trabaja (tu) trabaje (usted) trabajemos (nosotros) trabajad (vosotros) trabajen (ustedes)	trabalha (tu) trabalhe (você) trabalhemos (nós) trabalhai (vós) trabalhem (vocês)	lavora (tu) lavori (Lei) lavoriamo (noi) lavorate (voi) lavorino (Loro)		travaille (tu) travaillez (vous) travaillons (nous) travaillez (vous) travaillez (vous)
Infinitive				
trabajar	trabalhar	lavorare		travailler
Compound infinitive				
haber trabajado	ter trabalhado	avere lavorato		avoir travaillé
Participle				
Present Participle (gerund) trabajando	trabalh-ando	(gerund) lavorando	(part. pres) lavorante	travaillant
Compound Present Participle —	tendo trabalhado	—		—
Past Participle trabajado	trabalhado	lavorato		travaillé

221

The Indicative Mood

The Present Tense

In Indo-European languages there is a division of verbs into groups. Thus, all the Latin verbs were divided into four conjugations:

1st conj.: *-a-*

2nd conj.: *-e-*

3rd conj.: – *zero conjugation* or *-u-*

4th conj.: *-i-*.

The conjugation type defined the positional change of morphemes. In Vulgar Latin and, later, in the Romance languages, we observe fewer types of Latin verb formations. Key changes in this field that occurred by the time of the emergence of the first Romance languages are:

1. The disappearance of the third type of conjugation, which was distributed between the 2nd and 4th types of conjugation.

2. The emergence of a group of verbs containing the suffix *-sc-*, which lost its characteristic meaning of "inceptiveness" in Latin and received its productivity in the verbs of the 2nd and 4th conjugations in all the Romance languages.

3. The past participle in Romance languages reduced the number of modifications. For example, the suffix *–itus* (*perditus*) disappeared; in Italian and French the Vulgar Latin suffix *–utus* for the verbs of 2nd and 3rd conjugation spread widely replacing non-standard forms.

Thus, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French verbs are divided into 3 groups (conjugations) that are conjugated according to the endings of the infinitive forms.

Below is a table illustrating the endings of all 3 groups (conjugations) of the verbs:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st group			
-ar	*-ar*	*-are*	*-er*
2nd group			
-er	*-er*	*-ere*	*-re*
3rd group			
-ir	*-ir*	*-ire*	*-ir*

NOTE:

In French, verbs ending in −ir really belong to the 2nd group. It was deliberately put into the 3rd group by the author for the sake comparison of the verbs.

Verbs are conjugated by removing the infinitive ending and adding necessary endings to the stem of the verb, which indicate the mood, tense, person, voice and number.

This table shows the formation of the present tense of regular verbs:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	1st group			
	-AR	**-AR**	**-ARE**	**-ER**
Singular	*-o, -as, -a,*	*-o, -as, -a,*	*-o, -i, -a,*	*-e, -es, -e,*

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Plural	-amos, -áis, -an	-amos, -ais, -am	-iamo, -ate, -ano	-ons, -ez, -ent
2nd group				
	-ER	**-ER**	**-ERE**	**-RE**
Singular	-o, -es, -e,	-o, -es, -e,	-o, -i, -e,	-s, -s, -NA,
Plural	-emos, -éis, -en	-emos, -eis, -em	-iamo, -ete, -ono	-ons, -ez, -ent
3rd group				
	-IR	**-IR**	**-IRE**	**-IR**
Singular	-o, -es, -e,	-o, -es, -e,	-o, -i, -e, (-isco, - isci, - isce,)	-s, -s, -t, (-is, - is, - it)
Plural	-imos, -ís, -en	-imos, -is, -em	-iamo, -ite, -ono (-iamo, -ite, -iscono)	-ons, -ez, -ent (-issons, -issez, -issent)

Below is a table displaying an example of conjugation of all three groups in the present tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 group			

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Sp.: <u>hablar</u>	Port.: <u>falar</u>	It.: <u>parlare</u>	Fr.: <u>parler</u>
yo habl**o** tu habl**as** el, ella habl**a** nosotros\as habl**amos** vosotros\as habl**ais** ellos\ellas habl**an**	eu fal**o** tu fal**as** ele\ela fal**a** nos fal**amos** vos fal**ais** eles\elas fal**am**	io parl**o** tu parl**i** lui\lei parl**a** noi parl**iamo** voi parl**ate** loro parl**ano**	je parl**e** tu parl**es** il\elle parl**e** nous parl**ons** vous parl**ez** ils\elles parl**ent**

2 group

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Sp.: <u>vender</u>	Port.: <u>vender</u>	It.: <u>vendere</u>	Fr.: <u>vendre</u>
vend**o** vend**es** vend**e** vend**emos** vend**eis** vend**en**	vend**o** vend**es** vend**e** vend**emos** vend**eis** vend**em**	vend**o** vend**i** vend**e** vend**iamo** vend**ete** vend**ono**	je vend**s** tu vend**s** il/elle vend nous vend**ons** vous vend**ez** ils/elles vend**ent**

3 group

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Sp.: <u>partir</u>	Port.: <u>partir</u>	It.: <u>partire</u>	Fr.: <u>partir</u>

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
parto	parto	parto	je pars
partes	partes	parti	tu pars
parte	parte	parte	il/elle part
partimos	partimos	partiamo	nous partons
partis	partis	partite	vous partez
parten	partem	partono	ils/elles partent

Did you know?

Bolivia, a country in central South America, has 36 official languages. The main languages are Spanish (60%), Quechua (21.2%), Aymara (14.6%) and Guaraní (0.6%) along with another 32 recognized languages.

It should be noted that in Italian and French some verbs in the 3rd group in the present tense add the suffix *–isc–* (in Italian) and *–iss–* (in French).

In Italian *–isc-* precedes the conjugated ending, except the 1st and 2nd person plural of the verb. In French the suffix *–iss–* also precedes the ending, but only in the plural:

Italian	French
finire	*finir*
finisco	je finis
finisci	tu finis
finisce	il finit
finiamo	nous finissons
finite	vous finissez
finiscono	ils finissent

NOTE:

In Italian and French, the majority of verbs of the 3rd group are conjugated as It. **finire** *and Fr.* **finir,** *rather than as the It.* **partire** *and Fr.* **partir** *type of verbs. French verbs that are not conjugated as* **finir** *are considered to be irregular. However, the number of verbs ending in –* **ir** *are still conjugated in accordance with the conjugation paradigm of the verb* **partir.** *According to this pattern of conjugation, the verbs having two consonants at the end of their stems (partir: part-) drop the last consonant of the stem in the singular of the present tense and change it to the* **-s, -s, -t** *endings.*

The most common verbs of the 1st group

Many of the most frequently used verbs in the Romance languages belong to this 1st group conjugation. Below is the list of some of them:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
habitar	habitar	abitare	habiter	*to live*
alquilar	alugar	affittare	louer	*to rent*
alzar	alçar	alzare	lever	*to lift*
levantar	levantar	sollevare	soulever	*to pick up*
elevar	elevar	elevare	élever	*to raise*
amar	amar	amare	aimer	*to love*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
llegar	chegar	arrivare	arriver	*to arrive*
escuchar	escutar	ascoltare	écouter	*to listen*
bailar, danzar	bailar, dançar	ballare, danzare	danser	*to dance*
brillar	brilhar	brillare	briller	*to shine*
cambiar	cambiar, trocar	cambiare	changer	*to change*
caminar	caminhar	camminare	marcher	*to walk*
cantar	cantar	cantare	chanter	*to sing*
buscar	procurar	cercare	chercher	*to look for*
cenar	jantar	cenare	diner	*to dine*
llamar	chamar	chiamare	appeler	*to call*
ordenar	ordenar	comandare	commander	*to order*
comprar	comprar	comprare	acheter	*to buy*
contar	contar	contare	compter	*to count*
cocinar	cozinhar	cucinare	cuisinier	*to cook*
desear	desejar	desiderare	désirer	*to desire*
dibujar	desenhar	disegnare	dessiner	*to draw*
preguntar	perguntar	domandare	demander	*to ask*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
firmar	assinar	firmare	signer	*to sign*
formar	formar	formare	former	*to form*
frecuent-ar	freqüentar	frequent-are	fréquenter	*to frequent*
ganar	ganhar	guadagn-are	gagner	*to win, to earn*
jugar	jogar	giocare	jouer	*to play*
mirar	olhar	guardare	regarder	*to look at*
guiar, conducir	guiar, conduzir	guidare	guider, conduire	*to drive, to guide*
probar	provar	gustare, assaggiare	goûter	*to taste*
informar	informar	informare	informer	*to inform*
enseñar	ensinar	insegnare	enseigner	*to teach*
invitar	convidar, invitar	invitare	inviter	*to invite*
dejar	deixar	lasciare	laisser	*to leave*
lavar	lavar	lavare	laver	*to wash*
trabajar	trabalhar	lavorare	travailler	*to work*
mandar, enviar	mandar, enviar	mandare, inviare	envoyer	*to send*
nadar	nadar	nuotare	nager	*to swim*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hablar	falar	parlare	parler	*to speak*
pensar	pensar	pensare	penser	*to think*
pasar	passar	passare	passer	*to pass, to spend*
presentar	apresentar	presentare	présenter	*to present*
preparar	preparar	preparare	préparer	*to prepare*
contar	contar	raccontare	raconter	*to narrate*
saludar	saudar cumpri- mentar	salutare	saluer	*to greet*
saltar	saltar	saltare	sauter	*to jump*
casar	casar	sposare	marier	*to marry*
estudiar	estudar	studiare	étudier	*to study*
sonar	tocar	suonare	sonner	*to ring to play*
telefone- ar	telefonar	telefonare	téléphoner	*to telephon e*
tocar	tocar	toccare	toucher	*to touch*
cruzar	atravessar	attravers- are	traverser	*to cross*
engañar	enganar	ingannare	tromper	*to deceive*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
visitar	visitar	visitare	visiter	*to visit*

The most common verbs of the 2nd group

Below is a list of some common verbs of the second conjugation:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aprender	aprender	apprendere	apprendre	to learn
batir	bater	battere	battre	*to beat*
conocer	conhecer	conoscere	connaître	*to know*
creer	crer	credere	croire	*to believe*
describir	descrever	descrivere	décrire	*to describe*
defender	defender	difendere	défendre	*to defend*
elegir	eleger	eleggere	élire	*to elect*
leer	ler	leggere	lire	*to read*
poner	*pôr*	mettere	mettre	*to put*
morder	morder	mordere	mordre	*to bite*
nacer	nascer	nascere	naître	*to be born*
ofender	ofender	offendere	*offenser*	*to offend*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
perder	perder	perdere	perdre	*to lose*
tener	ter	prendere	prendre	*to take*
prometer	prometer	promettere	promettre	*to promise*
respond-er	respond-er	rispondere	répondre	*to answer*
escribir	escrever	scrivere	écrire	*to write*
vender	vender	vendere	vendre	*to sell*
vivir	viver	vivere	vivre	*to live*

The most common verbs of the 3rd group

Below is a list of the most common verbs of the third-conjugation:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
abrir	abrir	aprire	ouvrir	*to open*
aplaudir	aplaudir	applaudire	applaudir	*to applaud*
hervir	*ferver*	bollire	bouillir	*to boil*
construir	construir	costruire	construire, bâtir	*to build, to construct*
cubrir	cobrir	coprire	couvrir	*to cover*

232

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dormir	dormir	dormire	dormir	*to sleep*
huir	fugir	fuggire	*fuir*	*to flee*
ofrecer	*oferecer*	offrire	offrir	*to offer*
partir	partir	partire	partir	*to leave*
reabrir	reabrir	riaprire	réouvrir	*to reopen*
descubrir	descobrir	scoprire	découvrir	*to discover*
seguir	seguir	seguire	*suivre*	*to follow*
sentir	sentir	sentire	sentir	*to feel, to smell*
servir	servir	servire	servir	*to serve*
sufrir	sofrer	soffrire	souffrir	*to suffer*
vestir	vestir	vestire	vêtir	*to dress, to wear*

NOTE:
Underlined verbs belong to different groups and are to be memorized.

Irregular Verbs in the Present Tense

It is important to note that the set of irregular verbs, in whole, are common for all considered Romance languages. Below

is the list of the most frequently used irregular verbs in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
haber (he, has, ha, hemos, han)	**haver** (hei, hás, há, havemos, haveis, hão)	**avere** (ho, hai, ha, abbiamo, avete, hanno)	**avoir** (ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont)	*to have*
tener (tengo, tienes, tiene, tienen)	**ter** (tenho, tens, tem, temos, tendes, têm)	**tenere** (tengo, tieni, tiene, tengono)	——	*to have*
ser (soy, eres, es, somos, sois, son)	**ser** (sou, és, é, somos, sois, são)	**essere** (sono, sei, è, siamo, siete, sono)	**etre** (suis, es, est, sommes, êtes, sont)	*to be*
estar (estoy, estás, están)	**estar** (estou, estás, está, estão)	**stare** (stai, stanno)	——	*to be*
ir (voy, vas, va, vamos, vais, van)	**ir** (vou, vais, vai, vamos, ides, vão)	**andare** (vado, vai, va, vanno)	**aller** (vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont)	*to go*
dar (doy, dais)	**dar** (dou, dás, dá, damos, dais, dão)	**dare** (dai, dà, danno)	***donner*** (regular)	*to give*
hacer (hago)	**fazer** (faço)	**fare** (faccio, fai, facciamo, fanno)	**faire** (faisons, faites, font)	*to do*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
decir (digo, dices, dice, dicen)	**dizer** (digo, diz)	**dire** (dico, dici, dice, diciamo, dicono)	**dire** (disons, dites, disent)	*to say*
poder (puedo, puedes, puede, pueden)	**poder** (posso)	**potere** (posso, puoi, può, possiamo, possono)	**pouvoir** (peux, peux, peut, peuvent)	*can*
querer (quiero, quieres, quiere, quieren)	**querer** (quer)	**volere** (voglio, vuoi, vuole, vogliamo, vogliono)	**vouloir** (veux, veux, veut, veulent)	*to want*
saber (sé)	**saber** (sei)	**sapere** (so, sai, sa, sappiamo, sanno)	**savoir** (sais, sais, sait)	*to know*
poner (pongo)	**pôr** (ponho, pões, põe, pomos, pondes, poem)	**porre** (pongo, poni, pone, poniamo, ponete, pongono)	**mettre** (mets, mets, met)	*to put*
conocer (conozco)	**conhecer** (conheço)	*conoscere* (regular)	**connaître** (connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent)	*to get to know*

235

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
venir (vengo, vienes, viene, vienen)	**vir** (venho, vens, vem, vimos, vindes, vêm)	**venire** (vengo, vieni, viene, vengono)	**venir** (viens, viens, vient, viennent)	*to come*
dormir (duermo, duermes, duerme, duermen)	**dormir** (durmo)	***dormire*** (regular)	**dormir** (dors, dors, dort)	*to sleep*
sentir (siento, sientes, siente, sienten)	**sentir** (sinto)	***sentire*** (regular)	**sentir** (sens, sens, sent)	*to feel*
morir (muero, mueres, muere, mueren)	***morrer*** (regular)	**morire** (muoio, muori, muore, muoiono)	**mourir** (meurs, meurs, meurt, meurent)	*to die*

Verb Spelling and Vowel Changes

Did you know?

Lisbon is considered the most ancient city in Western Europe (it was settled around 1200 B.C.). It's older than such capitals as Rome, Paris and London.

However, despite the majority of similar irregular verbs, each of the considered Romance languages has its own number of irregular verbs with specific models of conjugation, which means that some verbs have specific spelling changes in order to preserve the pronunciation (sound) presented in the infinitive and others change their vowel within the stem. Therefore, it is highly important to regard the special rules for when the spelling or vowels change in a verb

236

conjugation. Since the rules are very divergent and particular for each language, it makes it difficult to somehow combine these changes occurring in a verb conjugation of the Romance languages. So, it is necessary to consider them separately in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Spanish

Stem changing verbs

In Spanish there is a number of verbs whose vowels change within the stem in all three groups of verbs which are ended in — *ar*, *−er*, *−ir*, for example: contamos "*we count*" but cuento "*I count*". Normally, such changes take place in all persons except the 1st and 2nd persons plural (*nosotros* and *vosotros*), which keep the regular stem. In total there are six variants of stem changes, which are: *e − ie, o − ue, e − i, i − ie, u − ue, o − hue*.

Below is the description of each of them:

▸ *e − ie*

This type of stem change is considered to be the most common in Spanish.

For example: Pensar − *to think*: p**i**enso − p**i**ensas − p**i**ensa − pensamos − pensáis − p**i**ensan.

Below are some common verbs of this type of stem change:

acertar	to guess
atender	to attend
atravesar	to cross
calentar	to warm
cerrar	to close
comenzar	to begin
confesar	to confess

helar	to freeze
defender	to defend
descender	to descend
despertar (se)	to wake up
divertirse	to have fun
empezar	to start
encender	to turn on
encerrar	to enclose
entender	to understand
fregar	to scrub/wash
gobernar	to govern
sentir	to feel
mentir	to lie
negar	to deny
nevar	to snow
pensar (en)	to think (about)
perder	to lose
preferir	to prefer
querer	to want
recomendar	to recommend
sentar (se)	to sit down
sugerir	to suggest
tropezar (con)	to stumble (into, across)

➤ *o – ue*

This type of stem change is also one of the most common in Spanish.

For example: V**o**lver – *to return*: v**ue**lvo – v**ue**lves – v**ue**lve – volvemos – volvéis – v**ue**lven.

Below is a list of some common verbs of this type of stem change:

absolver	to absolve
acordarse (de)	to agree on
almorzar	to have lunch
aprobar	to approve
cocer	to boil/bake
colgar	to hang (up)
conmover	to move (emotionally)
contar	to count
costar	to cost
demoler	to demolish
demostrar	to demonstrate
devolver	to return (something)
disolver	to dissolve
doler	to hurt
dormir	to sleep
encontrar	to find
envolver	to wrap
llover	to rain

morder	to bite
moler	to grind
morir	to die
mostrar	to show
mover	to move
poder	can
probar	to taste, to prove
promover	to promote
recordar	to remember
remover	to remove
resolver	to resolve
retorcer	to twist
revolver	to mix, to shake
rogar	to beg
soler	to be accustomed to
sonar	to sound
soñar	to dream
torcer	to twist
tronar	to thunder
volar	to fly

▸ *e – i*

Example: Repetir – *to repeat*: rep*i*to – rep*i*tes – rep*i*te – rep*e*timos – rep*e*tís – rep*i*ten.

Below are some common verbs of this stem change:

conseguir	to get
corregir	to correct
despedir	to say goodbye, to fire
elegir	to elect
impedir	to impede
medir	to measure
perseguir	to follow
repetir	to repeat
reírse (de)	to laugh, to make fun of
seguir	to follow
servir	to serve
sonreírse	to smile
vestirse	to get dressed

‣ *i – ie*

Mainly there are only two frequently used verbs of this kind of stem change, which are:

adquirir	to acquire
inquirir	to inquire

For example: Adqu*i*rir: adqu*ie*ro – adqu*ie*res – adqu*ie*re – adqu*i*rimos – adqu*i*rís – adqu*ie*ren.

‣ *u – ue*

There is only one frequently used verb with this stem change. This is *jugar* – *to play*.

For example: J*u*gar: j*ue*go – j*ue*gas – j*ue*ga – j*u*gamos – j*u*gáis – j*ue*gan.

▸ *o – hue*

There is also only one commonly used verb whose stem alters from *o* to *hue*.

This is *oler* – *to smell*.

To illustrate: *O*ler: h*ue*lo – h*ue*les – h*ue*le – *o*lemos – *o*léis – h*ue*len.

Spelling changing verbs (in Present tense)

As it was said before, there are also some verbs whose spelling changes in order to preserve the correct pronunciation (sound) presented in the infinitive in Spanish. Basically, the understanding of these rules is essential for correct writing in Spanish. Below are the rules of the spelling changes in a verb conjugation:

▸ Verbs ending in *–ger* or *–gir* (*g – j change of the 1st person singular*)

In the first person singular, the *g* changes to *j* to preserve the /h/ sound. For example:

Esco*g*er: esco*j*o – esco*g*es – esco*g*e – esco*g*emos – esco*g*éis – esco*g*en.

Below are some common verbs of *g – j* change:

acoger	to greet
afligir	to afflict
coger	to catch, to grab
corregir	to correct

dirigir	to direct
emerger	to emerge
encoger	to shrink
escoger	to choose
exigir	to demand
fingir	to pretend
infringir	to infringe
proteger	to protect
recoger	to pick up
restringir	to restrain
resurgir	to re-emerge
rugir	to roar
sumergir	to submerge
surgir	to emerge
urgir	to urge

‣ Verbs ending in −*guir* (*gu* − *g change of the 1st person singular*)

In the first person singular, the *gu* changes to *g* to preserve the /g/ sound.

For instance: Distin*gu*ir: distin*g*o − distin*gu*es − distin*gu*e − distin*gu*imos − distin*gu*is − distin*gu*en.

Below are some common verbs of *gu − g* change:

distinguir	to distinguish
conseguir	to come by, to get

erguir	to build, to erect
extinguir	to extinguish
perseguir	to pursue
proseguir	to proceed
seguir	to follow

- Verbs ending in **–uir** (*i – y change of all persons except 1st and 2nd plural*)

In all persons except the 1st and 2nd persons plural an unstressed *i* always changes to *y*.

For example: Conclu*i*r – conclu*y*o – conclu*y*es – conclu*y*e – conclu*i*mos – conclu*í*s – conclu*y*en.

Below are some common verbs of *i – y* change:

argüir	to argue
atribuir	to attribute
constituir	to constitute
construir	to construct
contribuir	to contribute
destituir	to dismiss
destruir	to destroy
diluir	to dilute
disminuir	to diminish
distribuir	to distribute
huir	to run away
incluir	to include

influir	to influence
intuir	to intuit
obstruir	to obstruct
recluir	to confine
reconstruir	to reconstruct
sustituir	to substitute

‣ Verbs ending in *−cer* or *−cir* (*c − z change in the 1st person singular*)

If a stem ends in a consonant before *−cer* or *−cir*, the **c** changes to *z* in *the first person singular* to preserve the */s/* or */th/* sound and prevent the */co/* sound.

For example: Fruncir: frunzo − frunces − frunce − fruncimos − fruncís − fruncen.

Below are some common verbs of *c − z* change:

convencer	to convince
ejercer	to exert
esparcir	to disperse
fruncir	to frown
vencer	to vanquish
zurcir	to darn

- If the stem ends in a vowel before *−cer* or *−cir*, **z** is added before **c** in the 1st person singular.

For instance: Conocer: conozco − conoces − conoce − conocemos − conocéis − conocen.

Below are some commonly used verbs of *c – cz* change:

aborrecer agradecer	to detest
agradecer	to thank
aparecer	to appear
apetecer	to feel an urge for
complacer	to satisfy
conducir	to drive
conocer	to know, to meet
crecer	to grow
deducir	to deduce
desaparecer	to disappear
desconocer	to ignore
establecer	to establish
inducir	to induce
introducir	to introduce
merecer	to deserve
obedecer	to obey
producir	to produce
nacer	to be born
reaparecer	to reappear
reconocer	to recognize
reducer	to reduce
restablecer	to restore
rejuvenecer	to rejuvenate

| **traducir** | to translate |

However, there are some exceptions, such verbs as: **hacer** (*to do*), **decir** (*to say*) and **satisfacer** (*to satisfy*) do not follow the **c — ac** rule and instead, **c** changes to **g** in *the first person singular*. For example:

Decir: di**g**o – dices – dice – decimos – decís – dicen.

Hacer: ha**g**o – haces – hace – hacemos – hacéis – hacen.

Satisfacer: satisfa**g**o – satisfaces – satisface – satisfacemos – satisfacéis – satisfacen.

▸ *Other verbs*

There are some other verbs that add **g** in *the 1st person singular*.

asir (asgo)	to seize	**salir** (salgo)	to leave
oír (oigo)	to hear	**tener**	to have
poner	to put	(tengo)	to cost
(pongo)		**valer** (valgo)	

Portuguese

▸ *e – i; o – u*

It should be noted that if the stem vowel in **–ir** verbs is an *e* or an *o*, it becomes *i* or *u* respectively in *the 1st person singular*. To illustrate:

e – i change: Mentir: eu m**i**nto.

o – u change: Dormir: eu d**u**rmo.

Below are some common verbs of *e – i; o – u* change:

e – i

despir (dispo)	to undress
mentir (minto)	to tell a lie
preferir (prefiro)	to prefer
repetir (repito)	to repeat
seguir (sigo)	to follow
servir (sirvo)	to serve
vestir (visto)	to dress
cobrir (cubro)	to cover
dormir (durmo)	to sleep
tossir (tusso)	to cough

> *c, g, gu – ç, j*, or *g*

If the stem of the *–er* or *–ir* verb ends in *c*, *g* or *gu*, these consonants change to *ç, j*, or *g* respectively when they are followed by an *–o* or an *–a* in order to preserve the consonant sound of the stem.

For instance: Vencer: eu venço

Below are the most common verbs following this rule:

vencer (venço)	to win
fugir (fujo)	to escape
erguer (ergo)	to build, to erect

Italian

- Verbs ending in *−ciare, −giare, −chiare* and *−ghiare*

Verbs that end in *−ciare, −giare, −chiare* and *−ghiare* drop the *−i* in *the 2nd person singular and plural* (tu, noi) before the regular endings (*−i* and *−iamo*) are added.

For example: Cominciare: comincio − cominc*i* − comincia − cominc*iamo* − cominciate − cominciano.

Below are some common verbs ending in *−ciare, −giare, −chiare* and *−ghiare*:

cominciare	to start
marciare	to march
racconciare	to fix, to mend
assaggiare	to taste
noleggiare	to rent
parcheggiare	to park
viaggiare	to travel
arrischiare	to risk
invecchiare	to grow old
avvinghiare	to grip, to clunch

- Verbs ending in *−care, −gare*

All verbs ending in *−care, −gare* add an *−h−* to the root in *the 2nd person singular and plural* (tu, noi) in order to preserve the hard sound of the *c* or *g* of the infinitive.

For example: Cercare: cerco − cerc*h*i − cerca − cerc*h*iamo − cercate − cercano.

Below are some common verbs ending in *−care, −gare*:

allargare	to widen

allungare	to lengthen
attaccare	to attack, to glue
divagare	to amuse
frugare	to rummage
impaccare	to pack
indagare	to investigate
sbarcare	to disembark
toccare	to touch
troncare	to break, to cut off

‣ Verbs ending in *–cere*.

It is notable that the spelling changes in *the 1st person singular and 2nd and 3rd person plural* (io, noi, loro) when the verbs of *–cere* group are conjugated.

For example: Pia*cere*: pia*cci*o – pia*c*i – pia*c*e – pia*cci*amo (*piaciamo*) – pia*c*ete – pia*cci*ono.

Below are some common verbs ending in *–cere*:

compiacere	to gratify, to please ,
dispiacere	to displease, to dislike
giacere	to lie down
piacere	to like
tacere	to keep silent

‣ Verbs with *–isc–*

Many *–ire* or 3rd group verbs add *–isc–* to the root in all forms of the present tense, *except the 1st and 2nd person plural* of the verb (noi and voi).

For example: Capire: cap*isc*o – cap*isc*i – cap*isc*e – capiamo – capite – cap*isc*ono.

The following is a list of some Italian verbs gaining the suffix *–isc–*:

apparire	to appear, to seem
capire	to understand
comparire	to appear
costruire	to build, to construct
differire	to differ
dimagrire	to lose weight
finire	to end, to finish
impedire	to prevent
ingrandire	to enlarge
preferire	to prefer
pulire	to clean
riferire	to relate
ubbidire	to obey

It is notable that the verbs **apparire** (*to appear*), **compartire** (*to appear*), and **scomparire** (*to disappear*) have two different ways of conjugation in the present tense, *except the 2nd and 3rd person plural* (noi and voi), which have regular endings. They can be conjugated either using *–isc–* suffix or using alternate endings. These verbs drop the *–rire* and add *–i–* to the root in *the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural* (io and loro). To illustrate:

Apparire: appaio (appar*isc*o) – appari (appar*isc*i) – appare (appar*isc*e) – appariamo – apparite – appaiono (appar*isc*ono);

Comparire: compa*i*o (compar*isc*o) - compari (compar*isc*i) - compare (compar*isc*e) - compariamo - comparite - compa*i*ono (compar*isc*ono);

Scomparire: scompaio (scompar*isc*o) - scompari (scompar*isc*i) - scomapre (scompa*isc*e) - scompariamo - scomparite - scompa*i*ono (scompar*isc*ono).

▸ Verbs ending in –*durre*

Some Italian verbs ending in –*durre* are considered to be irregular whose roots for the present tense come from the original Latin infinitives (e.g. it. condurre - lat. conducere - to drive; it. produrre - lat. producer - to produce). When conjugated such verbs add -*c*- to stem before the regular conjugating endings. It is notable that endings are the same as the endings of regular -*ere* verbs.

For instance: Con*durre*: conduco - conduci - conduce - conduciamo - conducete - conducono.

Below are some common verbs ending in -*durre*:

condurre	to to lead, to drive
introdurre	to introduce
produrre	to produce
ridurre	to reduce
tradurre	to translate

▸ Verbs ending in –*dire*

Some Italian verbs ending in –*dire* are also considered to be irregular. One verb having this ending was already presented previously in the table of irregular verbs, which is *dire* - *to say*. Such verbs come from its original Latin infinitive *dicere* and when conjugated they also add –*c*– to stem before the regular

conjugating endings. It is notable that endings are the same as the endings of regular −*ere* verbs, but the 2nd person plural has the form *dite*.

For example: Contrad*dire*: contraddico - contraddici - contraddice - contraddiciamo - contrad*dite* - contraddicono.

Below are some common verbs ending in −*dire*:

contraddire	to contradict
disdire	to cancel
indire	to announce, to declare
interdire	to prohibit
maledire	to curse

▸ Verbs ending in −*porre*

Like the ending -dire, there are some Italian verbs ending in −*porre* are also regarded as irregular. One verb that has this ending was presented previously in the table of irregular verbs, which is *porre* - *to put*. Such verbs come from its original Latin infinitive *ponere* Therefore, it should be noted that there is a -*g*- added in *the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural* (io and loro) forms.

For example: Com*porre*: compon*g*o - componi - compone - componiamo - componete - compon*g*o.

Below are some common verbs ending in −*porre*:

comporre	to compose
disporre	to dispose, to provide
esporre	to expose, to show
imporre	to impose
opporre	to oppose

posporre	to postpone
proporre	to propose
riporre	to put back
supporre	to suppose

NOTE:

*The verbs **rimanere** (to stay), **valere** (to be worth) and **salire** (to climb) also have a -**g**- in the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural (io and loro) forms of the present tense. All other forms are regular and are conjugated as either as -ere or -ire verbs depending on the conjugation to which they belong.*

*For example: **Rimanere**: rimango - rimani - rimane - rimaniamo - rimanete - rimangono.*

▸ Verbs ending in –***trarre***

The verb ***trarre*** (*to pull, to extract, to draw*) as well as all verbs that have the suffix –***trarre*** gain a ***double g*** in *the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural* (io and loro) forms. They come from Latin *trahere*.

For example: ***Trarre***: tra**gg**o - trai - trae - traiamo - traete - tra**gg**ono.

Below are some common verbs ending in –*trarre*:

attrarre	to attract
distrarre	to distract
contrarre	to contract
sottarre	to subtract

▸ Verbs ending in *–gliere*

All verbs that end in *–gliere*, like the verb **cogliere** (*to pick, to gather*) become *–olgo* and *–olgono* in *the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural* (io and loro) forms respectively.

For example: **Cogliere**: c**olgo** - cogli - coglie - cogliamo - cogliete - c**olgono**.

Below are some common verbs ending in *–gliere*:

accogliere	to welcome, to receive
cogliere	to pick, to gather
raccogliere	to collect, to pick up
togliere	to remove, to take away

▸ Verbs conjugated as *tenere* and *venire*

You are already familiar with the Italian irregular verbs like *tenere* (*to have, to keep*) and *venire* (*to come*) and with the way they are conjugated. Note that all verbs that have a prefix plus - *tenere* or *–venire* gain a *g* in *the 1st person singular and the 3rd person plural* (io and loro) forms. Also, the vowel of the root changes to *-ie-* in *the 2nd and 3rd person singular* which are tu and lui/lei forms.

For example: **Appartenere**: - apparten**g**o - appart**ie**ni - appart**ie**ne - apparteniamo - appartenete - apparten**g**ono.

Below are some commonly used verbs with a prefix plus – *tenere* or *–venire*:

appartenere	to belong
contenere	to contain
intrattenere	to entertain
mantenere	to maintain
ottenere	to obtain

ritenere	to retain
sostenere	to sustain, to support
trattenere	to withhold, to detain
avvenire	to happen, to occur
contravvenire	to contravene
convenire	to convene
divenire	to become
intervenire	to intervene
provenire	to come from, to proceed
sovvenire	to help, to remember
svenire	to faint

- Verbs with *—io*

Such verb as *parere* (*to seem*) gains *i* in *the 1st person singular and the 3rd person plural* (io and loro) forms, and has the alternate 2nd person plural (noi) form.

For instance: *Parere*: pa*i*o - par*i* - pare - pa*i*amo (pariamo) - parete - pa*i*ono.

- **Other verbs with a vowel change of the root**

Sedere

Such verb as *sedere* (*to sit down*) changes the vowel *e* to *ie* in all forms except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (noi and voi). There is also an alternate form is used for *the 1st person singular and the 3rd person plural* (io and loro).

Sedere: s*ie*do (*seggo*) - s*ie*di - s*ie*de - sediamo - sedete - s*ie*dono (*seggono*)

Udire

256

The vowel **u** in the verb **udire** (*to hear*) changes to **o** in all forms except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (noi and voi).

Udire: **o**do - **o**di - **o**de - udiamo - udite - **o**dono.

Uscire

The vowel **u** in the verb **uscire** (*to go out*) changes to **e** in all forms of the present tense except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (noi and voi). It should be said that the verb **riuscire** (*to succeed*) is conjugated like **uscire**.

Uscire: **e**sco - **e**sci - **e**sce - usciamo - uscite - **e**scono.

Dovere

Dovere (*to have to, must*) is considered to be irregular and has specific conjugation in all forms except *the 2nd person plural* (voi). It is notable that *the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural* (io and loro) have two forms of conjugation.

Dovere: **devo** (**debbo**) - **devi** - **deve** - **dobbiamo** - dovete - **devono** (**debbono**).

French

▸ **Verbs starting with a vowel**

There are many verbs that begin with a vowel or silent **h** belong to **—er** group of verbs. Therefore, while interacting with such verbs, the pronoun **je** becomes **j'**, which is called elision. In spoken French in the 1st, 2nd and 3rd person plural (nous, vous, ils/elles) forms, a /z/ sound is pronounced between the pronoun and a following verb. This phenomenon is called liaison. The **n** of **on** is also pronounced before words that begin with a vowel. For example:

Aimer: j'aime - tu aimes - il, elle aime - on_**a**ime - nous_**a**imons - vous_**a**imez - ils/elle**s**_**a**iment.

Below are some common **-er** verbs beginning with a vowel:

abandonner		to bandon

accrocher	to hang
admirer	to admire
aider	to help
aimer	to love
allumer	to light
amuser	to amuse
apporter	to bring
arriver	to arrive
attacher	to attach
attirer	to attract

Spelling changes

▸ Verbs ending in *−cer* and *−ger*

Verbs that end in *−cer* add a cedilla to the c before the letters *a* or *o* in order to keep the soft *c* sound. For example:

Avancer (*to advance*): nous avançons

Commencer (*to start*): nous commençons

Lancer (*to throw, to launch*): nous lançons

Verbs ending in *−ger* gain *e* after *g* before the letters *a* and *o* to keep the soft *g* sound. For example:

Changer (*to change*): nous changeons

Manger (*to eat*): nous mangeons

Nager (*to swim*): nous nageons

▸ Verbs with *-é-* in the infinitive

Verbs that have *-é-* in the next to the last syllable of the infinitive change its *-é-* to *-è-* in all forms except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (nous and vous) forms.

For example: ***Espérer***: j'espère - tu espères - il, elle, on espère - nous espérons - vous espérez - ils, elles espèrent.

Below are some some of verbs following this rule:

céder	to yield, to cede
célébrer	to celebrate
compléter	to complete
considérer	to consider
espérer	to hope
interpréter	to interpret
posséder	to possess
précéder	to precede
préférer	to prefer
protéger	to protect
répéter	to repeat

▸ Verbs with *-e-* in the infinitive

Some verbs containing *-e-* in the next to the last syllable of the infinitive, change the *-e-* to *-è-* in all forms except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (nous and vous) forms.

For instance: ***Acheter***: J'achète - tu achètes - ils, elle, on achète - nous achetons - vous achetez - ils, elles achètent.

Some of the commonly used verbs that follow this rule are:

acheter	to buy

mener	to lead
amener	to bring, to lead toward
emmener	to take away, to lead away
promener	to take a walk
lever	to lift
élever	to raise
enlever	to remove, to take off
geler	to freeze
peser	to weigh

NOTE:

Other verbs that have -e- in the infinitive, double the final consonant in all except the 1st and 2nd person plural (nous and vous) forms.

For example: Appeler: j'appelle - tu appelles - il, elle, on appelle - nous appelons - vous appelez - ils, elles appellent.

There are two common verbs that belong to this group:

appeler	to call
jeter	to throw away

‣ Verbs with **–yer** in the infinitive

Verbs ending in **–oyer**, **–uyer** and **–ayer** change **–y–** to **–i–** in all but the 1st and 2nd person plural (nous and vous) forms.

To illustrate: **Payer**: je paie - tu paies - il, elles, on paie - nous payons - vous payez - ils, elles paient.

260

Some commonly used verbs with *-yer* ending are:

balayer	to sweep
employer	to use
ennuyer	to bore
envoyer	to send
essayer	to try
essuyer	to wipe
nettoyer	to clean
payer	to pay

NOTE:
*Verbs **payer** and **essayer** can also be conjugated regularly without changing -y- to -i- (e.g. je paye; j'essaye)*

▸ **Other irregular verbs**

Verbs like *ouvrir*

There some verbs that end in *–ir* but are conjugated like regular *–er* verbs.

To illustrate: **Ouvrir**: j'ouvre - tu ouvres - il, elle, on ouvre - nous ouvrons - vous ouvrez - ils, elles ouvrent

Some of the most common verbs of this group are:

ouvrir	to open
couvrir	to cover
recouvrir	to cover again
découvrir	to discover

offrir	to offer
souffrir (de)	to suffer
cueillir	to pick, to gather
accueillir	to welcome
recueillir	to collect, to gather

Verbs like *courir*

Some verbs ending in −*ir* or −*re* can be conjugated like regular −*re* verbs except in *the 3rd person singular* (il, elle, on) form where t is added to the stem.

For example: **Courir**: je cours - tu cours - il, elle, on cour*t* - nous courons - vous courez - ils, elles courent.

Some of the most common verbs conjugated like *courir* are:

courir	to run
parcourir	to pass through, to pass over, to travel
secourir	to help, to assist
rire	to laugh
sourire	to smile
conclure	to conclude
rompre	to break
corrompre	to corrupt, to spoil
interrompre	to interrupt

Verbs like battre and *mettre*

French verbs like **battre** and **mettre** and their derivatives are conjugated like regular *—re* verbs of the second-conjugation except that the **double t** becomes a **single t** in the singular forms. For example:

Battre: je bats - tu bats - il, elle, on bat - nous battons - vous battez - ils, elles battent.

Mettre: je mets - tu mets - il, elle, on met - nous mettons - vous mettez - ils, elles mettent.

Battre, mettre and their derivatives:

battre	to to beat, to hit, to win to fight to combat
se battre	to fight
combattre	to combat
mettre	to put, to wear, to put on
admettre	to admit
permettre	to permit
promettre	to promise
remettre	to put back
soumettre	to overcome, to submit, to subjugate, to subject
se mettre à	to begin
transmettre	to transmit

Verbs like *partir*

Verbs like **partir** are usually conjugated like regular —**re** verbs (2nd group) in the plural. But in the 1st and 2nd person singular forms (je, tu) the final consonant is dropped when the regular endings of the —**re** group are added to the stem. In the 3rd person singular form (il, elle, on) the final consonant is also dropped when **-t-** is added. Study the following:

Partir: je **pars** - tu **pars** - il, elle, on **part** - nous partons - vous partez - ils, elles partent.

Below are some common verbs conjugated like *partir*:

partir	to leave
dormir	to sleep
s'endormir	to fall asleep
mentir	to tell a lie
servir	to serve
sentir	to feel, to smell
sortir	to leave, to go out

NOTE:

*In the plural the consonant sounds **t** in* ***partir**, **mentir** and **sortir**; and **m** in* ***dormir** and **v** in **servir***.

Verbs like *vaincre*

Verbs **vaincre** (*to conquer*) and **convaincre** (*to convince*) are conjugated like regular second-conjugation group —**re** of the verbs except that the **c** changes to **qu** in the plural.

For instance: **Vaincre**: je vaincs - tu vaincs - il, elle, on vainc - nous vain**qu**ons - vous vain**qu**ez - ils, elles vain**qu**ent.

Verbs like *connaître*

The verb **connaître** as well as similar verbs are conjugated in the way that the **circumflex** is put over the **i** in the 3rd person singular.

For example: **Connaître**: je connais - tu connais - il, elle, on connaît - nous connaissons - vous connaissez - ils, elles connaissent.

Below are some common verbs of this group including *connaître*:

connaître	to to know someone, to be acquainted	**paraître**	to seem, to appear
apparaître	to appear, to seem	**reconnaître** **naître**	to recognize to be born
disparaître	to disappear		

NOTE:

The verb **haïr** *(to hate) is also conjugated like* **connaître** *in the singular, except that there is no circumflex put above the i in the 3rd person singular. It is noticeable that the diaeresis is placed on the i in the plural. To illustrate:*

Haïr: *je hais - tu hais - il, elle, on hait - nous haïssons - vous haïssez - ils, elles haïssent.*

The verbs **plaire** *(to be pleasing),* **déplaire** *(to displease) and se* **taire** *(to be quiet) are also conjugated like* **connaître** *but there is only one s in the plural. There is no circumflex on the i in the 3rd person singular of se* **taire**. *For example:*

Plaire: *je plais - tu plais - il, elle, on plaît - nous plaisons - vous plaisez - ils, elles plaisent.*

Se taire: je me tais - tu te tais - il, elle, on se tait - nous nous taisons - vous vous taisez - ils, elles se taisent.

Verbs ending in −*ire*

Many verbs ending in −*ire* add the endings −*s*, −*s*,−*t*, −*sons*, −*sez*, −*sent* to the stem.

For example: ***Lire***: je li**s** - tu li**s** - il, elle, on li**t** - nous li**sons** - vous li**sez** - ils, elles li**sent**.

The most common verbs belonging to this group are:

lire	to read
élire	to elect
dire	to say
interdire	to forbid
suffire	to be sufficient
conduire	to drive, to conduct
produire	to produce
traduire	to translate
construire	to build
reconstruire	to rebuild, to reconstruct
détruire	to destroy
cuire	to cook
nuire	to do harm

NOTE:
*The 2nd person plural of **dire** (vous **dites**) is an exception.*

Verbs like *écrire*, *vivre*, *suivre*

French verbs such as **écrire**, **vivre**, **suivre** are conjugated similarly and add **v** in the plural. For instance:

Écrire: j'écris - tu écris - il, elle, on écris - nous écrivons - vous écrivez - ils, elles écrivent.

Below are some common verbs of this group including *écrire*, *vivre*, *suivre*:

écrire	to write
décrire	to describe
vivre	to live
survivre	to survive
suivre	to follow, to take a class
poursuivre	to pursue, to follow up
s'ensuivre	to come after, to follow

Verbs like *croire* and *voir*

Like **–yer** verbs, **croire** (*to believe*), **voir** (*to see*), **prévoir** (*foresee*) and **revoir** (*to see again*) experience an internal vowel change. The **i** changes to **y** in *the 1st and 2nd person plural forms* (nous, vous). Other forms are conjugated like regular second-conjugation group (*–re*) of verbs except in *the 3rd person singular*, where **t** is added to the stem. For example:

Croire: je crois - tu crois - il, elle, on croi**t** - nous cro**y**ons - vous cro**y**ez - ils, elles, croient.

Voir: je vois - tu vois - il, elle, on voi**t** - nous vo**y**ons - vous vo**y**ez - ils, elles voient.

NOTE:
*The verbs **fuir** (to flee) and **s'enfuir** (to flee, to run away) have absolutely the same*

267

vowel change in the 1st and 2nd person plural:
Fuir: *je fuis - tu fuis - il, elle, on fuit - nous fuyons - vous fuyez - ils, elles fuient.*

Verbs like *craindre, peindre, joindre*

The verbs in this group undergo an internal change from **n** to **gn** in the plural. For instance:

Craindre: je crains - tu crains - il, elle, on craint - nous craignons - vous craignez - ils, elles craignent.

Peindre: je peins - tu peins - il, elle, on peint - nous peignons - vous peignez - ils, elles, on peignent.

Joindre: je joins - tu joins - il, elle, on joint - nous joignons - vous joignez - ils, elles joignent.

Below are some verbs of this group including *craindre, peindre, joindre*:

craindre	to fear
plaindre	to pity, to feel sorry for
se plaindre	to complain
atteindre	to reach
éteindre	to extinguish, to put out
peindre	to paint
joindre	to join
rejoindre	to rejoin, to reunite

Verbs like *prendre*

Verbs like **prendre** (*to take, to take food, to drink - beverage, to buy a ticket*) are conjugated like the *−re* group of verbs (2nd group) in the singular, but in the plural, the final *−d* is dropped

from the stem and regular ending is added. Also, the consonant **n** is doubled in the 3rd person plural:

Prendre: je prends - tu prends - il, elle, on prend - nous pre**nons** - vous pre**nez** - ils, elles pre**nnent**.

Below are some other verbs which are conjugated like *prendre*:

apprendre	to learn
comprendre	to understand
reprendre	to take back
surprendre	to surprise

Verbs like *tenir* and *venir*

The verbs **venir** (*to come*), **tenir** (*to hold*) and its derivatives are conjugated similarly and change the vowel from *-e-* to *-ie-* in the singular forms and the 3rd person plural and double **nn** in the 3rd person plural:

Tenir: je t**ie**ns - tu t**ie**ns - il, elle, on t**ie**nt - nous tenons - vous tenez - ils, elles t**ienn**ent.

Venir: je v**ie**ns - tu v**ie**ns - il, elle, on v**ie**nt - nous venons - vous venez - ils, elles v**ienn**ent.

Below is a list of commonly used derivatives of the verbs *tenir* and *venir*:

Tenir		Venir	
appartenir	to belong to	**revenir**	to come back
contenir	to hold, to contain	**convenir**	to be convenient
maintenir	to maintain	**devenir**	to become

269

obtenir	to obtain	redevenir	to become again
retenir	to retain	parvenir	to reach, to attain
		se souvenir (de)	to remember

Verbs *acquérir* and *conquérir*

The verbs **acquérir** (*to acquire, to buy, to gain*) and **conquérir** (*to conquer, to win*) undergo an internal vowel change from *é* to *ie* in all the forms except the 1st and 2nd person plural (nous and vous). For instance:

Acquérir: j'acqu*ie*rs - tu acqu*ie*rs - il, elle, on acqu*ie*rt - nous acqu*é*rons - vous acqu*é*rez - ils, elles acqu*iè*rent.

Verbs like *boire, devoir, recevoir*

The verbs **boire** (*to drink*), **devoir** (*to owe, to have to*), **recevoir** (*to receive*), **apercevoir** (*to perceive*) and **décevoir** (*to disappoint, to deceive*) are conjugated alike and have the internal vowel change in the 1st and 2nd person plural forms and also the *v* is added in all plural forms. It is noticeable that the **cedilla** is placed on the *c* in the singular and 3rd person plural forms of **recevoir** and its derivatives. Study the following:

Boire: je b*ois* - tu b*ois* - il, elle, on b*oit* - nous b*uv*ons - vous b*uv*ez - ils, elles b*oiv*ent.

Devoir: je d*ois* - tu d*ois* - il, elle, on d*oit* - nous d*ev*ons - vous d*ev*ez - ils, elles d*oiv*ent.

Recevoir: je re*ç*ois - tu re*ç*ois - il, elle, on re*ç*oit - nous re*cev*ons - vous re*cev*ez - ils, elles re*ç*oivent.

Valoir and *falloir*

The verbs **valoir** (*to be worth*) and *falloir* (*to be necessary*) are considered to be irregular and their conjugation should be remembered since they were not presented in the table of irregular verbs previously. Note that *falloir* has *only the 3rd person singular form.*

Valoir: je **vaux** - tu **vaux** - il, elle, on **vaut** - nous **valons** - vous **valez** - ils, elles **valent**.

Falloir: il *faut*

Use of the Present Tense

The present tense in Romance languages is used:

Actions in the present

‣ To identify an action that takes place in the present or at the moment of speech:

Sp. ¿Qué **haces**?

Port. Que *fazes*? (O que você *faz*?)

It. Che *fai*?

Fr. Que *fais*-tu? (tu *fais* quoi?)

- *What **are** you **doing**?*

Sp. **Trabajo** ahora;

Port. **Trabalho** agora;

It. **Lavoro** ora;

Fr. Je **travaille** maintenant.

- *I'm **working** now.*

271

NOTE:

Like in English, in Romance languages the present continuous is usually used in this case, however it is also possible to use the present tense here.

Habitual actions

' To indicate the regular repetitive action or things that one does as a habit:

Did you know?

The modern Italian language was created by Dante Alighieri (14th century). In his poem Divine Comedy (Divina Commedia) he used several south Italian dialects with his mother tongue - The Tuscan language. The result became the base for the standardized Italian language.

Sp. Él *viaja* mucho;

Port. Ele *viaja* muito;

It. Lui *viaggia* molto;

Fr. Il *voyage* beaucoup.

- He travels a lot.

Sp. **Estudio** las lenguas extranjeras en la universidad.

Port. **Estudo** as línguas estrangeiras na universidade.

It. **Studio** le lingue straniere all'università.

Fr. J'**étudie** les langues étrangères à l'université.

- I study foreign languages in college.

Universal truths

▸ To indicate the action that is not referred to a certain moment, but refers to general statements, scientific definitions, proverbs and etc.:

Sp. El hombre **precisa** de amor;

Port. O homem **precisa** de amor;

It. L'uomo **ha bisogno** d'amore;

Fr. L'homme **a besoin** d'amour.

*- Men **need** love.*

Sp. El Everest **es** la montaña más alta de la Tierra;

Port. O Everest **é** a montanha mais alta da Terra;

It. L'Everest **è** la montagna più alta della Terra;

Fr. L'Everest **est** la montagne la plus haute de la Terre.

*- Everest **is** the tallest mountain on Earth.*

Replacing the Future tense

▸ To refer to close or planned future:

Sp. **Voy** al cine esta noche;

Port. Eu **vou** ao cinema esta noite;

It. **Vado** al cinema stasera;

Fr. Je **vais** au cinéma ce soir.

*- I **am going** to the cinema tonight.*

Sp. Mi tren **llega** a las nueve;

Port. Meu trem *chega* às nove;

It. Il mio treno *arriva* alle nove;

Fr. Mon train *arrive* à neuf.

- *My train arrives at nine.*

Special Use of the Present Tense and Prepositions

Did you know?

The Republic of Mali is the largest country in West Africa (1,240,000 square kilometres) and the 24th biggest country in the world. It is about twice the size of Texas. Its capital, Bamako, is the fastest growing city in Africa.

In Romance languages the present tense, together with the prepositions of time Sp. **desde, hace (hace...que)** Port. **desde, há (há...que, faz...que)** It. **da, fa...che (sono...che)** Fr. **depuis, ça fait...que** are generally used to describe an action that started in the past and still continues in the present. In English the present perfect is used in this case.

NOTE:

There is a difference in use between those prepositions of time in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Sp. **desde**; *Port.* **desde**; *It.* **da**; *Fr.* **depuis** *(since) are primarily used to indicate the definite moment (day, month, year) in the past since when somebody has started to do something. Study the following:*

Sp. Trabajo en el banco **desde** *el 2013;*

Port. Trabalho no banco **desde** *2013;*

It. Lavoro in banca **dal** *2013;*

*Fr. Je travaille dans la banque **depuis**
2013.*

*- I have been working in the bank **since**
2013.*

*Sp. **hace (hace...que)** Port. **há (há...que,
faz...que)** It. **fa...che/ è da (sono...che)**
Fr. **ça fait...que** (for/since) are used in
general terms when there is no specific date
from which somebody has been doing
something. Observe the following:*

*Sp. Trabajo en el banco **hace** dos años
(**Hace** dos años **que** trabajo en el banco);*

*Port. Trabalho no banco **há** dois anos (**Há**
dois anos **que** trabalho no banco);*

*It. **È da** due anni **che** lavoro in banca
(**Sono** due anni **che** lavoro in banca);*

*Fr. **Ça fait** deux ans **que** je travaille dans
la banque.*

*- I have worked in the bank **for** 2 years.*

In order to ask the question *since when,* Sp. **desde
cuando, hace cuanto tiempo**; Port. **desde quando, há
quanto tempo**; It. **da quando, da quanto**; Fr. **depuis
quand, depuis combien de temps** are used. Study the
following:

Sp. *¿**Desde cuando** trabajas en el banco? (¿**Hace cuánto
tiempo** trabajas en el banco?)*

Port. ***Desde quando** trabalhas (você trabalha) no banco? (**Há
quanto tempo** trabalhas (você trabalha) no banco?*

It. ***Da quando** lavori in banca? (**Da quanto tempo** lavori in
banca?)*

Fr. ***Depuis quand** travailles-tu dans la banque? (**Depuis
combien de temps** travailles-tu dans la banque?)*

*- **Since when** have you been working in the bank? (**For how long** have you been working in the bank?)*

The Past Participle

Overview

The past participle is a very useful form of a verb that can function as an adjective, a predicative, or as a verb in conjugation with Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter**; It. **avere**; Fr. **avoir** - *have* to form the perfect (compound) tenses, which is the most common use of the past participle.

Formation of Past Participle of Regular Verbs

In Romance languages the Past Participle of regular verbs is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding the appropriate past participle ending to the stem of the verb.

Below is a table presenting how the past participle of regular verbs is formed:

	1st conj.	2nd conj.	3rd conj.
Spanish	-ar; -ado (hablar – hablado)	-er; -ido (vender – vendido)	-ir; -ido (partir – partido)
Portugues e	-ar; -ado (falar – falado)	-er; -ido (vender – vendido)	-ir; -ido (partir – partido)
Italian	-are; -ato (parlare – parlato)	-ere; -uto (vendere – venduto)	-ire; -ito (partire – partito)
French	-er; -é (parler – parlé)	-re; -u (vendre – vendu)	-ir; -i (partir – parti)

Irregular Past Participles

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French have also irregular forms of past participle, which need to be memorized.

Below is a list of verbs, the past participles of which are irregular in all or some of the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tener – tenido	ter – tido	avere – avuto	avoir – eu	*have - had*
ser – sido	ser – sido	essere – stato	être – été	*be - been*
hacer – hecho	fazer – feito	fare – fatto	faire – fait	*do - done*
decir – dicho	dizer – dito	dire – detto	dire – dit	*say - said*
comprender – comprendido	comprender – comprendido	capire – capito	comprendre – compris	*understand - understood*
aprender – aprendido	aprender – aprendido	imparare– imparato	apprendre – appris	*learn - learned*
tomar – tomado	tomar – tomado	prendere – preso	prendre – pris	*take - taken*
escribir – escrito	escrever – escrito	scrivere – scritto	écrire – écrit	*write - written*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
poner – puesto	pôr – posto	porre – posto; mettere – messo	mettre – mis	*put - put*
traducir – traducido	traduzir – traduzido	tradurre – tradotto	traduire – traduit	*translate - translated*
venir – venido	vir – veio	venire – venuto	venir – venu	*come - come*
ver – visto	ver – visto	vedere – visto; veduto	voir – vu	*see - seen*
saber – sabido	saber – sabido	sapere – saputo	savoir – su	*know - known (about); or can - been able to*
conocer – conocido	conhecer – conhecido	conoscere – conosciuto	connaître – connu	*know - known (someone, something) ; or be familiar with*
abrir – abierto	abrir – aberto	aprire – aperto	ouvrir – ouvert	*open - opened*
morir – muerto	morrer – morrido	morire – morto	mourir – mort	*die - died*
creer – creído	crer – crido	credere – creduto	croire – cru	*believe - believed*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
leer – leído	ler – lido	leggere – letto	lire – lu	*read - read*
traer - traído	trazer – trazido	portare – portato	apporter - apporté	*bring - brought*

Use of Past Participle

▸ As an adjective

Past participles in Romance languages can be used as adjectives and must agree in gender and number with the nouns they modify. For example:

Sp. la cartera **perdida**;

Port. a carteira **perdida**;

It. il portafoglio **perso**;

Fr. le portefeuille **perdu**.

- *The **lost** wallet.*

Did you know?

Venezuela's name comes from the word Veneziola meaning little Venice (Piccola Venezia). It was named so by the navigator Amerigo Vespucci, who saw the stilt houses that reminded him of Venice.

Sp. la puerta **abierta**;

Port. a porta **aberta**;

It. la porta **aperta**;

Fr. la porte **ouverte**.

- *The **open** door.*

➤ As a Predicative adjective

Past participles can also act as predicative adjectives when used in conjugation with a linking verb Sp. **ser**, **estar**; Port. **ser**, **estar**; It. **essere**, **stare**; Fr. **être**. In this case, they must agree in gender and number with the nouns they modify, for example:

Sp. la puerta **está cerrada**;

Port. a porta **está fechada**;

It. la porta **è chiusa**;

Fr. la porte **est fermée**.

- *The door **is closed**.*

➤ **The perfect tenses (*See The Perfect Tense p. 280*)**

The Present Perfect

Formation of the Present Perfect

Did you know?

East Timor (Timor-Leste) is a country in Southeast Asia, which occupies half the island of Timor. It has 2 official languages: Portuguese and Tetum. The country was a Portuguese colony until November 1975.

In Romance languages the present perfect is formed by the combining present indicative of the auxiliary verb Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter**; It. **avere**; Fr. **avoir** - to have, which is conjugated to the subject of the sentence, and the past participle.

Below is the present perfect formula in the Romance languages:

Present Perfect Formula

Spanish	*haber* →	*he* *has* *ha* *hemos* *habéis* *han*	
Portuguese	*ter* →	*tenho* *tens* *tem* *temos* *tendes* *têm*	
Italian	*avere* →	*ho* *hai* *ha* *abbiamo* *avete* *hanno*	**+ Past participle** (Sp. *-ado, -ido*; Port. *-ado, -ido*; It. *-ato, -uto, -ito*; Fr. *-é, -u, -i*)
French	*avoir* →	*ai* *as* *a* *avons* *avez* *ont*	

For example:

Sp. **Has cant_ado_** muy bien;

Port. **Tens** (você **tem**) **cant_ado_** muito bem;

It. **Hai cant_ato_** molto bene;

281

Fr. Tu *as* très bien **chanté**.

- *You **have sung** very well.*

NOTE:

*The auxiliary verb Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter**; It. **avere**; Fr. **avoir** never separate from the past participle. If there are object pronouns in the sentence, they are immediately placed before the auxiliary verb. Study the following:*

Sp. ¿**La** has visto?

Port. Tu **a** tens (você **a** tem) visto?

It. **L'hai** visto?

Fr. **L'as-tu vu?**

- *Have you seen **her?***

Formation of the Present Perfect with the Verb *to be* in Italian and French

In Italian and French the auxiliary verb It. **essere**; Fr. **être** - *to be* is used with reflexive and intransitive verbs (which are used to talk about movement or a change of some kind) in order to form the present perfect. For example:

Did you know?

Genoa (It. Genova), the capital of the Italian region of Liguria, is the birthplace of world famous explorer and navigator Christopher Columbus (born in 1451).

It. Lui **è arrivato**, Mi **sono alzato**;

Fr. Il **est arrivé**, je me **suis levé**.

- *He **arrived**, I **got up**.*

Italian and French have a similar group of intransitive verbs with which the auxiliary verb *to be* is used. Note that in Spanish and Portuguese the auxiliary verb Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter** - *to have* is used with all groups of verbs.

Below is a list of the most frequent intransitive verbs in Italian and French:

Italian		French	
andare	ritornare	aller	retourner
arrivare	rivenire	arriver	revenir
entrare	uscire	entrer	sortir
scendere	cadere	descendre	tomber
divenire,	venire	devenir	venir
diventare	restare,	monter	. rester
salire	rimanere	mourir	
morire	**essere,**	naître	
nascere	**stare***	partir	
partire	**riuscire***		
	vivere*		

*In Italian the verbs like **essere, stare** (*to be*), **riuscire** (*to succeed*), **vivere** (*to live*) are used with the verb **essere** (*to be*) in order to form the present perfect. However, in French above-listed verbs, which are **être, réussir, vivre** are used with **avoir** (*to have*) to form this tense.

Agreement of the Past Participle

In Spanish and Portuguese the past participle doesn't agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb. Observe the following:

Sp. él ha retorn**ado**, ella ha retorn**ado**;

Port. ele tem retorn**ado**, ela tem retorn**ado**.

- *He has returned, she has returned.*

283

In Italian and French the past participle used with *to be* (It. **essere**, Fr. **être**) always agrees in gender and number with the subject; that is, the endings change in the feminine and plural forms the way they change in adjectives: in French **-e** is added to agree with the feminine and **-s-** with the masculine; in Italian to agree with the feminine **-a** is used and **-i, -e** with the plural for masculine and feminine respectively.

It. Io sono arriv**ato** (*masc.s.*) – io sono arriv**ata** (*fem. s.*);

Lui è part**ito** – Lei è part**ita**;

Noi siamo part**iti** – Noi siamo part**ite**.

Fr. Je suis arriv**é** (*masc.s.*) – je suis arriv**ée** (*fem. s.*);

Il est part**i** – Elle est part**ie**;

Nous sommes part**is** – Nous sommes part**ies**.

I have arrived (*masc.s; fem.s.*)

He/she has arrived

We have arrived

Agreement of the Past Participle with *avoir* in French

The past participle of verbs that use *avoir* in the present perfect also agree in number and in gender with a preceding direct object in French. Study the following:

Did you know?

Guatemala is a mass producer of chocolate products. In fact, the first chocolate bar was invented in Guatemala during the Mayan times. The Mayan people call chocolate "the food of the Gods" for its nutritional benefits. When in Guatemala, visit ChocoMuseo to learn about the history of cacao.

Fr. C'est **la lettre** que j'ai **écrite**;

C'est **les photos** que j'ai **vues**;

Ce sont **les livres** que j'ai **achetés**.

This is the letter I wrote;

This is the photos I took;

These are the book I bought.

Be attentive since most past participle sound similar in the masculine and feminine except for those ending in a consonant. Also, it should be noted that there is no oral or written change for the masculine singular and plural when the past participle ends in **s**. For example: le livre que j'ai **pris**; les livres que j'ai **pris** - *the books that I took.*

The past participle of verbs with **avoir** is unchangeable:

- when it is used an impersonal verb, for example: la neige qu'**il y a eu**

- when the past participle is followed by a complementary infinitive and when it is the infinitive that relates to the preceding direct object, for instance: les devoirs qu'il a **dû compléter.**

- the past participle of some intransitively used verbs is invariable when accompanied by a unit of price, weight, distance, length and time, for example: l**es trois heures** que j'ai **marché.**

Use of the Present Perfect

The present perfect in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French is used:

▸ To describe actions that happened in the past and continue into the present or actions that happened in the recent past, which usually refer to what someone has done:

Did you know?

Salvador, the capital of the Brazilian state Bahia, was the first capital city of Brazil until 1763. It is the largest city in the Northeast Region and the 3rd largest city in the country.

Sp. ***Ha escrito*** un libro;

Port. Ela ***tem escrito*** um livro;

It. ***Ha scritto*** un libro;

Fr. Elle ***a écrit*** un livre.

- *She **has written** a book.*

Special Use of the Present Perfect in Italian and French

However, it is notable that in conversational French the present perfect (*passé compose*) is used as the preterite, which is the most common tense to talk about past events and actions. All above-listed examples of the present perfect should be translated or conveyed in the preterite tense in French.

Like in French, in conversational Italian the present perfect tense is used as the preterite tense.

Sp. *acabar de*; Port. *acabar de*; Fr. *venir de* + *The Infinitive*

To express something that has just been done Sp. ***acabar de***; Port. ***acabar de***; Fr. ***venir de*** are used. Note that in Spanish and French the present tense of these verbs is used. In Portuguese - the past simple (**See the Preterite p.287**).

NOTE:
In Italian, in this case, the present perfect is

used with the adverb **appena** which is put right after the auxiliary verb **_avere_** or **_essere_**. Study the following:

Sp. **Acabo de** leer este libro;

Port. **Acabei de** ler este livro;

It. **Ho appena** letto questo libro;

Fr. Je **viens de** lire ce livre.

- I **(have) just** read this book.

The Preterite

Formation of the Preterite

The preterite (also called the simple past, the past definite and the past absolute) is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding the appropriate personal ending to the root of a verb.

Below is a table demonstrating the endings of the preterite tense:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	1st group			
	-AR	-AR	-ARE	-ER
Singular	-é, -aste, -ó,	-ei, -aste, -ou,	-ai, -asti, -ò,	-ai, -as, -a,
Plural	-amos, -asteis, -aron	-amos, -astes, -aram	-iamo,-aste, -arono	-âmes, -âtes, -èrent
	2nd group			
	-ER	-ER	-ERE	-RE
Singular	-í, -iste, -ió,	-i, -este, -eu,	-ei, -esti, -è,	-is, -is, -it,

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Plural	-imos, -isteis, -ieron	-emos, -estes, -eram	-emmo, -este, -erono	-îmes, -îtes, -irent
3rd group				
	-IR	**-IR**	**-IRE**	**-IR**
Singular	-í, -iste, -ió,	-i, -iste, -iu,	-i, -isti, -i,	-is, -is, -it,
Plural	-imos, -isteis, -ieron	-imos, -istes, -iram	-immo, -iste, -irono	-îmes, -îtes, -irent

Below is the table displaying the example of conjugation of regular verbs in the preterite tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
1st group				
Hablar	**Falar**	**Parlare**	**Parler**	*To speak*
yo **hablé**	eu **falei**	io **parlai**	je **parlai**	*I spoke*
tú **hablaste**	tu **falaste**	tu **parlasti**	tu **parlas**	*you spoke*
él\ella\usted **habló**	ele\ela\você **falou**	lui\lei\Lei **parlò**	il\elle\on **parla**	*he\she\it spoke*
nosotros\as **hablamos**	nós **falamos**	noi **parliamo**	nous **parlâmes**	*we spoke*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
vosotros\as **hablasteis**	vós **falastes**	voi **parlaste**	vous **parlâtes**	*you spoke*
ellos\ellas ustedes **hablaron**	eles\elas **falaram**	loro\Loro **parl-arono**	ils\elles **parlèrent**	*they spoke*
2nd group				
Vender	**Vender**	**Vendere**	**Vendre**	*To sell*
yo **vendí**	eu **vendi**	io **vendei**	je **vendis**	*I sold*
tú **vendiste**	tu **vendeste**	tu **vendesti**	tu **vendis**	*you sold*
él\ella\usted **vendió**	ele\ela\você **vendeu**	lui\lei\Lei **vendè**	il\elle\on **vendit**	*he\she\it sold*
nosotros\as **vendimos**	nós **vendemos**	noi **vend-emmo**	nous **vendîmes**	*we sold*
vosotros\as **vendisteis**	vós **vendestes**	voi **vendeste**	vous **vendîtes**	*you sold*
ellos\ellas\ustedes **vendieron**	eles\elas **venderam**	loro\Loro **vend-erono**	ils\elles **vendirent**	*they sold*
3rd group				
Partir	**Partir**	**Partire**	**Partir**	*To leave*
yo **partí**	eu **parti**	io **partii**	je **partis**	*I left*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tú partiste	tu partiste	tu partisti	tu partis	you left
él\ella\usted partió	ele\ela\você partiu	lui\lei\Lei parti	il\elle\on partit	he\she\it left
nosotros\as partimos	nós partimos	noi part-immo	nous partîmes	we left
vosotros\as partisteis	vós partistes	voi partiste	vous partîtes	you left
ellos\ellas\ustedes partieron	eles\elas partiram	loro\Loro part-irono	ils\elles partirent	they left

Irregular Verbs in the Preterite

Below is a table presenting irregular verbs in the preterite tense, which are common for all or several Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
Ser	**Ser**	**Essere**	**Être**	*To be*
(fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron)	(fui, foste, foi, fomos, fostes, foram)	(fui, fosti, fu, fummo, foste, furono)	(je fus, tu fus, il\elle\on fut, nous fûmes, vous fûtes, ils\elles furent)	

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
Estar (estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis estuvieron)	**Estar** (estive, estiveste, esteve, estivemos, estivestes, estiveram)	**Stare** (stetti, stesti, stette, stemmo, steste, stettero)	**Être** (je fus, tu fus, il\elle\on fut, nous fûmes, vous fûtes, ils\elles furent)	*To be*
Haber (hube, hubiste, hubo, hubimos, hubisteis, hubieron)	**Haver** (houve, houveste, houve, houvemos, houvestes, houveram)	**Avere** (ebbi, avesti, ebbe, <u>avemmo</u>, <u>aveste</u>, ebbero)	**Avoir** (j'eus, tu eus, il\elle\on eut, nous eûmes, vous eûtes, ils\elles eurent)	*To have*
Poner (puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusisteis, pusieron)	**Pôr** (pus, puseste, pôs, pusemos, pusestes, puseram)	**Mettere** (misi, <u>mettesti</u> mise, <u>mettemmo</u>, metteste, misero)	**Mettre** (je mis, tu mis, il\elle\on mit, nous mîmes, vous mîtes, ils\elles mirent)	*To put*
Hacer (hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron)	**Fazer** (fiz, fizeste, fez, fizemos, fizestes, fizeram)	**Fare** (feci, facesti, fece, facemmo, faceste, fecero)	**Faire** (je fis, tu fis, il\elle\on fit, nous fîmes, vous fîtes, ils\elles firent)	*To do*

291

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
Decir (dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dijeron)	**Dizer** (disse, disseste, disse, dissemos, dissestes, disseram)	**Dire** (dissi, dicesti, disse, dicemmo, diceste, dissero)	**Dire** (dis, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent)	*To say*
Venir (vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinisteis, vinieron)	**Vir** (vim, vieste, veio, viemos, viestes, vieram)	**Venire** (venni, venne, vennero)	**Venir** (vins, vins, vint, vînmes, vîntes, vinrent)	*To come*
Saber (supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supisteis, supieron)	**Saber** (soube, soubeste, soube, soubemos, soubestes, souberam)	**Sapere** (seppi, seppe, seppero)	**Savoir** (sus, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent)	*To know*
—	—	**Prendere** (presi, prese, presero)	**Prendre** (pris, pris, prit, primes, prîtes, prirent)	*To take*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
Conocer (regular)	**Conhecer** (regular)	**Conoscere** (conobbi, conobbe, conobbero)	**Connaître** (connus, connus, connut, connûmes, connûtes, connurent)	*To know* *To be acqua inted*
Leer (regular)	**Ler** (regular)	**Leggere** (lessi, lesse, lessero)	**Lire** (lus, lus, lut; lûmes, lûtes, lurent)	*To read*
Escribir (regular)	**Escrever** (regular)	**Scrivere** (scrissi, scrisse, scrissero)	**Écrire** (écrivis, écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent)	*To write*
Tener (tuve, tuviste, tuvo, tuvimos, tuvisteis, tuvieron)	**Ter** (regular)	**Tenere** (tenni, tenne, tennero)	**Tenir** (tins, tins, tint, tînmes, tîntes, tînrent)	*To have,* *To hold*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	
Traer	**Trazer**	**Portare**	**Apporter**	*To carry*
(traje, trajiste, trajo, trajimos, trajisteis, trajeron)	(trouxe, trouxeste, trouxe, trouxemos, trouxestes, trouxeram)	(regular)	(regular)	

- In Spanish **tener** is used to express possession, while **haber** is used as the auxiliary verb to form compound sentences.

    It is seen from the table that the range of Spanish and Portuguese irregular verbs are more similar to each other than to Italian and French, and vice versa, Italian and French set of irregular verbs are virtually identical. In this regard, it can be argued that there is a partial convergence of irregular verbs in Romance languages.

NOTE:

It should be noted that Italian irregular verbs of the preterite tense are only irregular in the 1st and 3rd person singular as well as the 3rd person plural. The other three forms are always regular.

Irregularities in Formation the Preterite

Did you know?

Turin (It. Torino) is a city and an important cultural and educational center in northern Italy. The city has Italy's best universities and academies, such as the University of Turin and the Turin Polytechnic.

    However, despite the majority of similar irregular verbs, Spanish and Italian have their own number of irregular verbs with specific models of conjugation. In other words some verbs have specific spelling changes in order to preserve the pronunciation (sound) presented in the infinitive

and others change their vowel within the stem. Therefore, it is important to consider the rules of the spelling or vowels change in a verb conjugation. Since the rules are very divergent and particular for each language, it makes it difficult to combine these changes in a verb conjugation of the Romance languages. So, it is necessary to consider them separately.

> ***NOTE:***
>
> *Unlike Spanish and Italian, Portuguese and French have an insignificant number of irregular verbs with specific models of conjugation in the preterite. The most common of them were presented in the table of the irregular verbs (**See** **Irregular Verbs in the Preterite p. 290**).*

Spanish

i **changed to** *y* **or deleted in the 3rd person endings**

In **-er** and **-ir** verbs the stem of which is ended in a vowel, for example: **cre-er**, **le-er**, **hu-ir**, **constru-ir**, the 3rd person endings become **-yó** and **yeron** respectively. Study the following:

Creer: él/ella cre**yó**, ellos/ellas cre**yeron** - *he/she believes, they believe*;

Leer: él/ella le**yó**, ellos/ellas le**yeron** - *he/she reads, they read*;

Huir: él/ella hu**yó**, ellos/ellas hu**yeron** - *he/she flees, they flee*;

Construir: él/ella constru**yó**, ellos/ellas constru**yeron** - *he/she constructs, they construct.*

The verb conjugated like ***leer*** and ***creer*** is *oír* (*hear*). The verb conjugated like ***construir*** and ***huir*** is ***disminuir*** (*diminish*).

In verbs whose stem ends in one of the consonants **ll** or **ñ**, the 3rd person endings become **-ó** and **-eron**, for example:

Hervir: él/ella hirv**ió**, ellos/ellas hirv**ieron** - *he/she boils, they boil*;

Gruñir: él/ella gruñó, ellos/ellas gruñ*eron* - *he/she/it growls, they growl.*

The verb conjugated like **bullir** and **gruñir** are **teñir** (*dye*), **reñir** (*quarrel*), **zambullirse** (*dive*).

Orthographic changes

The following spelling changes take place before e in *the 1st person singular*: **c - qu, g - gu, z - c, gu - gü** in *-ar* verbs. Observe the following:

Tocar: yo **toqué** - *I touched.*

Llegar: yo **llegué** - *I arrived.*

Cazar - yo **cacé** - *I hunted.*

Averiguar - yo **averigüé** - *I checked.*

Portuguese

Portuguese does not have such an extended number of irregular verbs like other Romance languages. The list of irregular verbs was fully presented in the table above in Portuguese.

Italian

Verbs with a single *-s-*

There are a lot of verbs that operate the same as **chiudere** (*close*) and have a second, irregular root with a single **-s-** in the 1st, 3rd person singular and 3rd person plural forms of the preterite. To illustrate:

Chiudere

io **chiusi**

tu **chiudeste**

lui, lei, Lei *chiu__se*

noi *chiudemmo*

voi *chiudeste*

loro, Loro *chiu__sero*

Below are the verbs that are conjugated like *chiudere* in the preterite:

Italian	English
chiedere (chiesi, chiese, chiesero)	*to ask*
concludere (conclusi, concluse, conclusero)	*to conclude*
accudere (accusi, accuse, accusero)	*to enclose*
escludere (esclusi, escluse, esclusero)	*to exclude*
includere (inclusi, incluse, inclusero)	*to include*
decidere (decisi, decise, decisero)	*to decide*
coincidere (coincisi, coincise, coincisero)	*to coincide*
uccidere (uccisi, uccise, uccisero)	*to kill*
dividere (divisi, divise, divisero)	*to divide*
prendere (presi, prese, presero)	*to take*
accendere (accesi, accese, accesero)	*to light, to turn on*

Italian	English
attendere (attesi, attese, attesero)	*to wait*
apprendere (appresi, apprese, appresero)	*to learn*
difendere (difesi, difese, difesero)	*to defend*
offendere (offesi, offese, offesero)	*to offend*
scendere (scesi, scese, scesero)	*to descend*
sorprendere (sorpresi, sorprese, sorpresero)	*to surprise*
spendere (spesi, spese, spesero)	*to spend*
stendere (stesi, stese, stesero)	*to extend*
ridere (risi, rise, risero)	*to laugh*
sorridere (sorrisi, sorrise, sorrisero)	*to smile*
rimanere (rimasi, rimase, rimasero)	*to stay*
rispondere (risposi, rispose, risposero)	*to answer*
***mettere** (misi, mise, misero)	*to put*

It should be remembered that:

- The vowel change in **mettere** should be noted. Also there are other verbs conjugated like **mettere**: **ammettere** - *to admit*; **commettere** - *to commit*; **permettere** - *to allow*; **promettere** - *to promise*; **rimettere** - *to return*; **smettere** - *to stop*; **trasmettere** - *to convey, to transmit*.

- The verb **porre** - *to put* follows the same rules as the above *-s-* verbs. To demonstrate:

Porre

io **posi**

tu ponesti

lui, lei, Lei **pose**

noi ponemmo

voi poneste

loro, Loro **posero**

There are also other verbs conjugated like **porre**: **comporre** - *to compose*; **disporre** - *to dispose, to arrange*; **opporre** - *to oppose, to object*; **proporre** - *to propose*.

- Also, the verbs **correre** - *to run*; **scegliere** - *to choose* and **volgere** - *to turn* also have a single *-s-* in the preterite. To illustrate:

Correre

io **corsi**

tu corresti

lui, lei, Lei **corse**

noi corremmo

voi correste

loro, Loro **corsero**

There are also other verbs conjugated like **correre**: **occorrere** - *to need, to be necessary*; **incorrere** - *to incur*;

rincorrere - *to run after;* **scorrere** - *to slide;* **trascorrere** - *to spend, to pass by.*

Scegliere

io **scelsi**

tu scegliesti

lui, lei, Lei **scelse**

noi scegliemmo

voi sceglieste

loro, Loro **scelsero**

There are also other verbs conjugated like **scegliere**: **accogliere** - *to welcome, to receive;* **cogliere** - *to pick, to catch;* **raccogliere** - *to collect;* **togliere** - *to remove.*

Volgere

io **volsi**

tu volgesti

lui, lei, Lei **volse**

noi volgemmo

voi volgeste

loro, Loro **volsero**

Other verbs conjugated like **volgere** are: **dipingere** - *to paint;* **fingere** - *to pretend, to simulate;* **giungere** - *to reach, to arrive;* **piangere** - *to cry;* **scorgere** - *to sight, to notice, to make out;* **sorgere** - *to rise;* **spingere** - *to push;* **svolgere** - *to perform, to develop.*

It should be remembered that when a single *-s-* is preceded and followed by a vowel is pronounced like *z*. When a single *-s-* is preceded by a consonant, it is pronounces like *s*.

Verbs with a double *-s-* (*-ss-*)

Such verbs as ***leggere*** - *to read,* ***scrivere*** - *to write* and ***vivere*** - *to live,* as you might notice from the table of the irregular verbs, have a double *s* in the 1st person singular and the 3rd person singular and plural of the preterite. It is so because *s* is preceded by a vowel and must be doubled in order to preserve the *s* sound. Other verbs having a double *s* in the 1st person singular and the 3rd person singular and plural in the preterite are:

Italian	English
proddure (produssi, produsse, produssero)	*to produce*
trarre (trassi, trasse, trassero)	*to draw*
sottrarre (sottrassi, sottrasse, sottrassero)	*to subtract*
correggere (corressi, corresse, corressero)	*to correct*
eleggere (elessi, elesse, elessero)	*to elect*
proteggere (protessi, protesse, protessero)	*to protect*
reggere (ressi, resse, ressero)	*to hold*
descrivere (descrissi, descrisse, descrissero)	*to describe*
prescrivere (prescrissi, prescrisse, prescrissero)	*to prescribe*

Italian	English
trascrivere (trascrissi, trascrisse, trascrissero)	*to transcribe*
addurre (addussi, addusse, addussero)	*to adduce*
condurre (condussi, condusse, condussero)	*to lead*
indurre (indussi, indusse, indussero)	*to induce*
introdurre (introdussi, introdusse, introdussero)	*to introduce*
ridurre (ridussi, ridusse, ridussero)	*to reduce*
tradurre (tradussi, tradusse, tradussero)	*to translate*
contraddire (contraddissi, contraddisse, contraddissero)	*to contradict*
disdire (disdissi, disdisse, disdissero)	*to cancel*
indire (indissi, indisse, indissero)	*to call*
maledire (maledissi, maledisse, maledissero)	*to curse*
predire (predissi, predisse, predissero)	*to predict*
ridire (ridissi, ridisse, ridissero)	*to object*
attrarre (attrassi, attrasse, attrassero)	*to attract*
contrarre (contrassi, contrasse, contrassero)	*to contract*

Italian	English
detrarre (detrassi, detrasse, detrassero)	*to deduct*
distrarre (distrassi, distrasse, distrassero)	*to distract*
ritrarre (ritrassi, ritrasse, ritrassero)	*to portray*

Verbs with other double consonants

Such verbs as *cadere, tenere* and *volere* double the consonant of the root in the 1st person singular and 3rd person singular and plural in the preterite (*tenere* and *volere* are already presented in the list of the irregular verbs above (**See Irregular Verbs in the Preterite p.290**). Below is a list of verbs that double the consonant:

Italian	English
cadere (caddi, cadde, caddero)	*to fall*
decadere (decaddi, decadde, decaddero)	*to decay*
ricadere (ricaddi, ricadde, ricaddero)	*to fall*
appartenere (appartenni, appartenne, appartennero)	*to belong*
contenere (contenni, contenne, contennero)	*to contain*
mantenere (mantenni, mantenne, mantennero)	*to maintain*
sostenere (sostenni, sostenne, sostennero)	*to support*

Italian	English
bere (bevvi, bevve, bevvero)	*to drink*
divenire (divenni, divenne, divennero)	*to prescribe*
avvenire (avvenne)	*to occur*
convenire (convenni, convenne, convennero)	*to agree*
intervenire (intervenni, intervenne, intervennero)	*to intervene*
pervenire (pervenni, pervenne, pervennero)	*to reach*
rivenire (rivenni, rivenne, rivennero)	*to come back*
sovvenire (sovvenni, sovvenne, sovvennero)	*to remember*
svenire (svenni, svenne, svennero)	*to faint*
conoscere (conobbi, conobbe, conobbero)	*to know*
riconoscere (riconobbi, riconobbe, riconobbero)	*to recognize*

Verbs with -*qu*-

Verbs such as ***nascere*** and ***piacere*** get -*qu*- in the 1st person singular and the 3rd person singular and plural in the preterite. Below is a list of verbs that obtain -*qu*-:

Italian	English
nascere (nacqui, nacque, nacquero)	*to be born*
piacere (piacqui, piacque, piacquero)	*to please*
compiacere (compiacqui, compiacque, compiacquero)	*to satisfy*
dispiacere (dispiacqui, dispiacque, dispiacquero)	*to dislike*
giacere (giacqui, giacque, giacquero)	*to lie*

Use of the Preterite

The preterite in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French is used to express:

- *actions that happened in the past without any relation to the present*:

<div align="center">

Sp. ***abrieron*** la ventana;

Port. ***abriram*** a janela;

It. ***aprirono*** la finestra,

Fr. ils ***ouvrirent*** la fenêtre.

- *They **opened** the window.*

</div>

- *two or more completed continuous or consecutive actions in the past*:

Did you know?

Togo is a French-speaking country in West Africa located on the Gulf of Guinea. The capital, Lomé, hosts the world's largest voodoo market called the Fetish Market. It features monkey heads, skulls, crocodiles and skins of animals.

Sp. **entraron** en la sala y **abrieron** la ventana;

Port. **entreram** na sala e **abriram** a janela;

It. **entrarono** nella sala e **aprirono** la finestra;

Fr. ils **entrèrent** dans la sale et **ouvrirent** la fenêtre.

- *They **entered** the room and **opened** the window.*

·The following are the most common expressions that are usually used with the preterite:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ayer	ontem	ieri	hier	*yesterday*
ayer por la tarde	ontem à tarde	ieri pomeriggio	hier après-midi	*yesterday afternoon*
anoche	noite passada	ieri sera	la nuit dernière	*last night*
anteayer	anteontem	l'altro ieri	la journée d'avant-hier	*the day before yesterday*
el otro día	no outro dia	l'altro giorno	l'autre jour	*the other day*
hace dos días	há dois dias	due giorni fa	il ya deux jours	*two days ago*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la semana pasada	na semana passada	la settimana scorsa	la semaine dernière	*last week*
el mes pasado	no mês passado	il mese scorso	le mois dernier	*last month*
el año pasado	no ano passado	l'anno scorso	l'année dernière	*last year*
esta mañana	esta manhã	stamani	ce matin	*this morning*
de repente	de repente	di colpo	tout d'un coup	*suddenly*
durante mucho tiempo	por muito tempo	per molto tempo	pendant longtemps	*for a long time*
el verano pasado	no verão passado	l'estate scorsa	l'été dernier	*last summer*
hace poco	há pouco	poco fa	il y a peu	*a little while ago*
durante poco tiempo	por pouco tempo	per poco tempo	pendant une courte période	*for a little while*

Special Use of the Preterite in French

It should be mentioned that **passé simple** (*the preterite*) is a literary tense used only in literary contexts in French. In

conversational French **passé compose** (*the present perfect*) is used.

Difference between the Preterite and the Present Perfect
in the Romance languages

In Romance languages the Preterite expresses a fully completed action in the past, whereas the Present Perfect expresses an action that started in the past and has been developing over a period of time and may or may not tend to continue into the future. Study the following:

Did you know?

Nicaragua has the largest lake in Central America, which provides the water supply for many parts of the country. Lake Nicaragua is also a popular tourist attraction.

Sp. ***Encontré*** a mi amigo en la calle;

Port. Eu ***encontrei*** o meu amigo na rua;

It. ***Ho incontrato*** il mio amico per la strada;

Fr. J'***ai rencontré*** mon ami dans la rue.

*- I **met** my friend in the street.*

Sp. ***He encontrado*** mi amigo en la calle;

Port. Eu ***tenho encontrado*** o meu amigo na rua;

It. ***Ho incontrato*** il mio amico per la strada;

Fr. J'***ai rencontré*** mon ami dans la rue.

*- I **have been meeting** my friend in the street (and I may still be continuing to meet him in the street).*

Asking Questions

We have already looked at question words and now we will consider yes/no questions, which are questions that can be answered with "yes" or "no", and questions that get more detailed information.

Unlike in English, in Romance languages questions are formed differently. In English the verb **to do** is used to form questions: "**Do** you know him?", whereas in Romance languages this verb is never used. Generally speaking in Romance languages, asking a question which can be answered with "yes" or "no" is quite simple. In order to pose such a question, you should raise your intonation at the end of the question. For example:

Sp. ¿Lo conoces?

Port. Você conhece ele?

It. Lo conosci?

Fr. Tu le connais?

- Do you know him?

Also, you can change a statement into a question by adding the word Sp. ¿*no*? Port. *não*? It. *no*? Fr. *non*? to the end of a statement in all the Romance languages. For instance:

Did you know?

The Brazilian state of Ceará (capital city: Fortaleza) was the first state to abolish slavery in 1884. For this reason the state got the nickname "Land of Light".

Sp. ¿Vienes mañana, *no*?

Port. Você vem amanhã, *não*? (Vens amanhã, *não*?)

It. Vieni domani, *no*?

Fr. Tu viens demain, *non*?

- *You are coming tomorrow, aren't you?*

309

Peculiarities of Interrogation in the Romance languages

Spanish

➤ In written Spanish you should put marks around the question, which is extremely important. It is notable that an upside down question mark is placed in front of the question. Observe the following:

¿Hablas español? - Do you speak Spanish?

¿Donde trabajas? - Where do you work?

Portuguese

➤ In Portuguese there is also an expression "*será que*", which you can use to make a question requiring a yes or no answer. It can be translated "*Is it so that...?*" or "*I wonder if...?*", however there is no direct equivalent in English. For example:

Did you know?

Venice (It. Venezia) gets between 20 million to 30 million tourists annually, which is around 60 thousand tourists per day. The population of the city, however, is only about 55 thousand people.

Será que falas português? / *Será que* você fala português?

- *Do you speak Portuguese?* (lit. *Is it so that you speak Portuguese?*)

Italian

➤ In Italian you can make a question by placing the subject either at the end of the sentence or after the verb. Study the following:

310

L'insegnante parla italiano. - Parla italiano l'insegnante? (Parla l'insegnante italiano?)

- The teacher speaks Italian. Does the teacher speak Italian?

➤ Also, you can form a question by adding such expressions as **non è vero?**, **è vero?** or **vero?** to the end of a statement. For instance:

Parli italiano, **non è vero?** - *You speak Italian, don't you? (lit. You speak Italian, **isn't it true**?)*

Lavori in ufficio, **è vero?** - *You work in the office, **right?***

Hai un fratello, **vero?** - *You have a brother, **don't you?***

French

➤ In French questions can also be formed by adding **n'est-ce pas?** to a statement. For example:

Tu parle français, **n'est-ce pas?** - *You speak French, **don't you?***

Tu travailles dans le bureau, **n'est-ce pas?** - *You work in the office, **don't you?***

Tu as un frère, **n'est-ce pas?** - *You have a brother, **don't you?***

➤ Also, you can form a question by adding **est-ce que** or **est-ce qu'** (before vowels) at the beginning of the statement and putting a question mark at the end of a question.

Est-ce que tu parles français? - *Do you speak French?*

Est-ce qu'il travaille dans le bureau? - *Does he work in the office?*

- French questions can also be formed by means of inversion of the subject pronoun and verb in declarative sentences. It should be noted that the subject is connected to the verb with a hyphen. Study the following:

Parlez-vous français? - *Do you speak French?*

Travaillez-vous dans le bureau? - *Do you work in the office?*

It should be remembered that when inverting a 3rd person singular subject pronoun and a verb, a *t* should be added between the inverted verb and the subject when the verb ends in a vowel, for example:

Parle-t-il français? - *Does he speak French?*

Va-t-il à Paris? - *Does he go to France?*

With the 1st person singular subject *je* inversion is usually not used. In this case *est-ce que* should be used. For instance:

Est-ce que je joue bien? - *Do I play well?*

However, inversion with *je* is possible with certain frequently used verbs, which are *avoir* (*to have*), *être* (*to be*), *pouvoir* (*can*). The verb *pouvoir* becomes *puis* in the inversion with *je*.

Ai-je...? - *Do I have...?*; *Suis-je...?* - *Am I...?*; *Puis-je...?* - *Can I...?*

Inversion is also possible in compound tenses in French. In this case, the subject pronoun and the auxiliary verb are inverted. Observe the following:

A-t-il travaillé au bureau? - *Does he work in the office?*

Es-tu venu? - *Have you come?*

Negation

Unlike in English, in Romance languages negation is also formed quite different. For instance, in English the verb **to do** is widely used to make a sentence negative: "*I **don't** know*", while in the Romance languages the verb to do is never used in negative sentences.

Furthermore, double negation, which is not acceptable in English, is frequently used in Romance languages, for example *I know nobody/I don't know anybody* (since it is not grammatically correct to say I don't know nobody):

Did you know?

Réunion Island is a French overseas territory in the Indian Ocean, east of Madagascar. The island is known for its volcanos, coral reefs and tropical beaches. Its culture is a mix of various cultures influenced by people of African, Indian, European and Chinese origin.

Sp. **No** conozco a **nadie,**

Port. Eu **não** conheço **ninguém,**

It. Io **non** conosco **nessuno,**

Fr. Je **ne** connais **personne.**

- I know nobody./I don't know anybody.

Formation of Negation in Simple Tenses

Spanish, Portuguese and Italian negative sentence are formed by putting the word Sp. *no*, Port. *não*, It. *non* before the verb.

In French the combination *ne...pas* is used where *ne* is placed before the verb and *pas* after it. It should be noted that *ne* becomes *n'* before words that begin with a *vowel* or *h*.

Below are the examples demonstrating the formation of negative sentences from affirmative in Romance languages:

Affirmative:	Negative:
Sp. Yo trabajo; Port. Eu trabalho; It. il lavoro; Fr. Je travaille - *I work.*	Sp. Yo **no** trabajo; Port Eu **não** trabalho; It. io **non** lavoro; Fr. je **ne** travaille **pas** - *I don't work.*

Affirmative:	Negative:
Sp. Ella escribe un libro; Port. Ela escreve um livro; It. lei scrive un libro; Fr. Elle écrit un livre - *She writes a book.*	Sp. Ella **no** escribe un libro; Port. Ela **não** escreve um livro; It. lei **non** scrive un libro; Fr. Elle **n'écrit pas** un livre - *She doesn't write a book.*

If an object pronoun (**See Object Pronoun p.98, p.108**) precedes the verb, the negative word should be placed before the object pronoun in Romance languages. In French *ne* is put before the object pronoun and *pas* is placed after the verb. For example:

Affirmative:	Negative:

Sp. La conozco;	Sp. **No** la conozco;
Port. Eu a conheço;	Port. Eu **não** a conheço;
It. Lo conosco;	It. **Non** la conosco;
Fr. Je la connais	Fr. Je **ne** la connais **pas**
- *I know her.*	- *I don't know her.*

If there is an infinitive which follows the verb in a sentence, the negative word is placed before the main verb. In French **ne** is put before the main verb and **pas** is placed after the main verb. For instance:

Affirmative:	**Negative:**
Sp. Quiero dormir;	Sp. **No** quiero dormir;
Port. Quero dormir;	Port. Eu **não** quero dormir;
It. Voglio dormire;	It. Io **non** voglio dormire;
Fr. je veux dormir	Fr. Je **ne** veux **pas** dormir
- *I want to sleep.*	- *I don't want to sleep.*

Omission of *Pas* in French

In French **pas** can be omitted in the negative sentences after such verbs as **pouvoir** (*can*), **savoir** (*to know*), **oser** (*dare*) and **cesser** (*to cease*) when they are accompanied by an infinitive, for example:

Je **ne** sais que dire - *I don't know what to say;*

Ils **ne** peuvent le faire - *They cannot do it;*

Tu **n'**oses y aller - *You don't dare go there;*

Il **ne** cesse de pleuvoir - *It doesn't stop raining.*

Negation of the Infinitive

In order to make an infinitive negative, you should put the negative words Sp. *no*, Port. *não*, It. *non*, Fr. *ne pas* before the infinitive. Study the following:

Did you know?

Spain's central capital, Madrid, is a European Cultural Capital. It's a city of overwhelming cultural venues and activities. It's renowned for its stunning museums like the Prado museum, museum of 12th-19th century European and Spanish art, and Reina Sofia Museum of Modern Art.

Sp. Me dijo *no* lo hagas;

Port. Ele me disse para *não* o fazer;

It. Mi ha detto di *non* farlo;

Fr. Il m'a dit de *ne pas* le faire

- He told me not to do it.

Sp. Ella me dijo *no* vayas allí;

Port. Ela me disse para *não* ir lá;

It. Lei mi ha detto di *non* andarci;

Fr. Elle m'a dit de *ne pas* y aller.

- He told me not to go there.

Negation with Adjectives and the Adverb V*ery*

The negative words Sp. *no*, Port. *não*, It. *non*, Fr. *pas* can also be used to negate adjectives or the adverb Sp. *muy*, Port. *muito*, It. *molto*, Fr. *très* - *very*. For example:

Sp. un filme *no interesante*;

Port. um filme *não interessante*;

It. un film *non interessante*;

Fr. un film *pas intéressant*

- An uninteresting film.

Did you know?

Portugal is named after the city of Porto. The Latin name for Porto was Pontus Cale and the region itself was known as "Condado Portucalense" (County of Portucale), which eventually became the name of the country of Portugal.

Sp. una casa *no muy* grande;

Port. uma casa *não muito* grande;

It. una casa *non molto* grande;

Fr. une maison *pas très* grande.

- A not very big house.

Formation of Negation in Compound Tenses

Compound tenses in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian negative sentences are formed by placing the negative word (Sp. *no*, Port. *não*, It. *non*) before the auxiliary verb, while in French *ne* is put before and *pas* after the auxiliary verb.

In Romance languages auxiliary verbs are Sp. *haber*; Port. *ter*; It. *avere*; Fr. *avoir* - *to have*. The auxiliary verb: It. *essere*; Fr. *être* - *to be* is also used in Italian and French with reflexive and intransitive verbs (**See Formation of the Present Perfect with the Verb *to be* in Italian and French p.282**) For instance:

Affirmative:	**Negative:**
Sp. Ha terminado;	Sp. **No** ha terminado;
Port. Ele tem terminado;	Port. Ele **não** tem terminado;
It. Ha finito;	It. **Non** ha finito;
Fr. Il a fini	Fr. Il **n'a pas** fini
- He has finished.	*- He hasn't finished.*

317

Other Negative Expressions

There are many other negative expressions, which are used in the Romance languages. Below is a table demonstrating the most common negative combinations and expressions, which consist of the negative word Sp. *no*, Port. *não*, It. *non*, Fr. *ne* + *an adjective*, *pronoun* or *adverb*.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
no...nadie	não... ninguém	non... nessuno	ne... personne	*no one, nobody*
no...nada	não...nada	non... niente; non...nulla	ne...rien	*nothing*
no...ni...ni	não...nem... nem	non...né... né	ne...ni...ni	*neither... nor*
no... nunca, (jamás)	não...nunca, (jamais)	non...mai	ne...jamais	*never*
no...más	não...mais	non...più	ne...plus	*no longer*
no... ningún (-o,-a,-os,-as)	não... nenhum (-a)	non... nessun (-o,-a,-i,-e)	ne...aucun (-e)	*not any, none*
en absoluto; en mi/la vida	de modo nenhum; de modo algum	non... affatto; non...punto	ne...pas du tout; ne...point	*not at all, absolutely not*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ni siquiera; ni tan siquiera	nem sequer; tão sequer	non... neanche; non... nemmeno; non... neppure	ne...même pas	*not even*
no... más que/sino	não...mais que	non...che	ne...que	*only*

It should be remembered that the negative words Sp. *no*, Port. *não*, It. *non*, Fr. *ne* always preceded the main verb in simple tenses or the auxiliary verb in compound tenses, while the placement of adjectives, pronouns or adverbs in the sentence can vary.

Therefore, it is important to consider all the expressions in order to demonstrate their positions in which they can be used in the sentence.

No one, Nobody
Sp. *no...nadie*; Port. *não...ninguém*; It. *non...nessuno*; Fr. *ne...personne*

1. If the pronouns *no one*, *nobody* (Sp. *nadie*, Port. *ninguém*, It. *nessuno*, Fr. *personne*) precede the verb, the negative words Sp. *no*; Port. *não*; It. *non* are omitted in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian.

NOTE:

*In French **ne** is not omitted and the negative word **personne** is placed before it. Study the following:*

Sp. *Nadie* me mira;

Port. *Ninguém* olha para mim;

It. *Nessuno* mi guarda;

Fr. *Personne ne* me regarde

- *No one* looks at me.

Sp. *Nadie* vino;

Port. *Ninguém* veio;

It. *Nessuno* è venuto;

Fr. *Personne n'*est venu

- *No one* came.

2. If they are are used with the negative words Sp. *no*, Port. *não*, It. *non*, Fr. *ne*, the pronouns *no one*, *nobody* (Sp. *nadie*, Port. *ninguém*, It. *nessuno*, Fr. *personne*) follow the main verb in simple tenses and the past participle in compound tenses in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. To illustrate:

Sp. *No* veo a *nadie*;

Port. Eu *não* vejo *ninguém*;

It. *Non* vedo *nessuno*;

Fr. Je *ne* vois *personne*

- *I see no one.*

Sp. Él *no* ha visto a *nadie*;

Port. Ele *não* tem visto *ninguém*;

It. *Non* ha visto *nessuno*;

Fr. Il *n'*a vu **personne**

- *He has seen **no one**.*

It should be remembered that Sp. **nadie**, Port. **ninguém**, It. **nessuno**, Fr. **personne** are always placed after the verb when they function as the object. When they are the subject, they are put before the verb.

3. If an infinitive is used in the sentence, the negative words Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**, Fr. **ne** precede the main verb or the auxiliary verb and Sp. **nadie**, Port. **ninguém**, It. **nessuno**, Fr. **personne** follow the infinitive. For instance:

Sp. **No** quiero ver a **nadie**;

Port. Eu **não** quero ver **ninguém**;

It. **Non** voglio vedere **nessuno**;

Fr. Je **ne** veux voir **personne**

- *I want to see **no one**.*

Nothing
Sp. **no...nada**; Port. **não...nada**; It. **non... niente, non...nulla**; Fr. **ne...rien**

Like *no one* and *nobody*, *nothing* has similar rules of placement in the sentence in the Romance languages.

1. If *nothing* (Sp. **nada**, Port. **nada**, It. **niente** (**nulla**), Fr. **rien**) precedes the verb, the negative words Sp. **no**; Port. **não**; It. **non** is dropped in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, whereas in French ne is not omitted and the pronoun rien is placed before it. Observe the following:

Sp. **Nada** me agrada;

Port. *Nada* me agrada;

It. *Niente* mi piace;

Fr. *Rien ne* me plait

- *I like **nothing** (**Nothing** pleases me)*.

2. When they are used with the negative words Sp. *no*, Port. *não*, It. *non*, Fr. *ne*, the pronouns nothing Sp. *nada*, Port. *nada*, It. *niente* (*nulla*), Fr. *rien*) follow the main verb in simple tenses. In compound tenses they follow the past participle in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian.

NOTE:

*In French **rien** precedes the past participle in compound tenses.*

Sp. *No* veo *nada*;

Port. Eu *não* vejo *nada*;

It. *Non* vedo *niente*;

Fr. Je *ne* vois *rien*

- *I see **nothing***.

Sp. *No* he visto *nada*;

Port. *Não* tenho visto *nada*;

It. *Non* ho visto *niente*;

Fr. Je *n'*ai *rien* vu

- *I have seen **nothing***.

3. When there is an infinitive in the sentence, Sp. *no*, Port. *não*, It. *non*, Fr. *ne* precede the main verb or the auxiliary verb and

Spanish **nada**, Portuguese **nada** and Italian **niente** (**nulla**) follow the infinitive; in French **rien** is placed before the infinitive. For example:

Sp. **No** quiero comer **nada**;

Port. Eu **não** quero comer **nada**;

It. **Non** voglio mangiare **nulla**;

Fr. Je **ne** veux <u>rien</u> manger

- *I want to eat **nothing**.*

Neither...nor
Sp. no...ni...ni; Port. não...nem...nem; It. non...né...né; Fr. ne...ni...ni

These negative words are usually placed after the main verb in simple tenses or after the past participle in compound tenses in the Romance languages. It should be mentioned that the negative words Sp. **no**, Port. **não**; It. **non**; Fr. **ne** always precede the main verb in simple tenses or the auxiliary verb in compound tenses. For instance:

Sp. **No** hablan **ni** español **ni** portugués;

Port. Eles **não** falam **nem** espanhol **nem** português;

It. **Non** parlano **né** spagnolo **né** portoghese;

Fr. Ils **ne** parlent **ni** espagnol, **ni** portugais

- *They speak **neither** Spanish **nor** Portuguese.*

Sp. **No** he viajado **ni** a España **ni** a Brasil;

Port. Eu **não** tenho viajado **nem** para a Espanha **nem** para o Brasil;

It. *Non* ho viaggiato *né* in Spagna *né* in Brasile;

Fr. Je *n'*ai voyagé *ni* en Espagne *ni* au Brésil

- *I have travelled **neither** to Spain **nor** to Brazil.*

It worth noting that Sp. *ni*; Port. *nem*; It. *né*; Fr. *ni* can be used in the sentence more than twice. Observe the following:

Sp. *No* quiere *ni* comer, *ni* beber, *ni* dormir;

Port. Ela *não* quer *nem* comer, *nem* beber, *nem* dormir;

It. *Non* vuole *né* mangiare, *né* bere, *né* dormire;

Fr. Elle *ne* veut *ni* manger, *ni* boire, *ni* dormir

- *She wants **neither** to eat, **nor** to drink, **nor** to sleep.*

Never
Sp. no...nunca, (jamás); Port. não...nunca, (jamais); It. non...mai; Fr. ne..jamais

1. Unlike in French, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the adverbs Sp. *nunca (jamás)*; Port. *nunca, (jamais)*; It. *mai* - *never* can be used before the main verb. In this case, the negative words Sp. *no*; Port. *não*; It. *non* should be dropped.

NOTE:
*In French **jamais** must be used with **ne** where **ne** precedes the verb and **jamais** follows it.*

Sp. *Nunca* me visita;

Port. Ele *nunca* me visita;

It. *Mai* mi visita;

Fr. Il *ne* me rend *jamais*_visite.

*- He **never** visits me.*

2. The adverbs Sp. ***nunca** (**jamás**)*; Port. ***nunca**, (**jamais**)*; It. ***mai***; Fr. ***jamais*** - *never* are also used in combination with the negative words Sp. ***no***; Port. ***não***; It. ***non***; Fr. ***ne***. In this case, *never* follows the main verb in simple tenses in all the Romance languages. In compound tenses it follows the past participle in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian. However in Italian *never* can also be placed before the past participle.

NOTE:
*In French **never** must precede the past participle in compound tenses.*

Sp. ***No*** me visita ***nunca***;

Port. Ele ***não*** me visita ***nunca***;

It. ***Non*** mi visita ***mai***;

Fr. Il ***ne*** me rend ***jamais***_visite

*- He **never** visits me.*

Sp. ***No*** he viajado ***nunca***;

Port. Eu ***não*** tenho viajado ***nunca*** (or Eu ***nunca*** viajei);

It. ***Non*** ho ***mai*** viaggiato (or ***Non*** ho viaggiato ***mai***);

Fr. Je ***n'***ai ***jamais*** voyagé

*- I have **never** travelled.*

NOTE:
*In French **de** is used instead of the partitive article after **ne...jamais**. Example:*

*Fr. Je **ne** mange **jamais de** champignons*
- I never eat mushrooms.

No longer, Anymore
Sp. *no...más*; Port. *não...mais*; It. *non... più*; Fr. *ne...plus*

The adverbs Sp. *más*; Port. *mais*; It. *più*; Fr. *plus* - *no longer, anymore* can only be used in combination with the negative words Sp. *no*; Port. *não*; It. *non*; Fr. *ne*. Therefore, *no longer, anymore* follows the main verb in simple tenses in all the Romance languages. In compound tenses it follows the past participle in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian. In Italian, however, *no longer, anymore* can also be placed before the past participle.

NOTE:

*In French **no longer, anymore** Fr. **plus** must precede the past participle in compound tenses.*

Sp. *No* trabaja *más* en el hospital;

Port. Ele *não* trabalha *mais* no hospital;

It. *Non* lavora *più* in ospedale;

Fr. Il *ne* travaille *plus* à l'hôpital

*- He doesn't work at the hospital **anymore**.*

Sp. *No* lo he visto *más*;

Port. Eu *não* o tenho visto *mais*;

It. *Non* l'ho visto *più*;

Fr. Je *ne* l'ai *plus* vu

*- I haven't seen him **anymore**.*

When there is an infinitive in the sentence, *no longer*, *anymore* follow the infinitive in Spanish and Portuguese, while in Italian and French it is placed before the infinitive. For example:

Sp. *No* quiero comer *más*;

Port. Eu *não* quero comer *mais*;

It. *Non* voglio *più* mangiare;

Fr. Je *ne* veux *plus* manger

- *I don't want to eat **anymore**.*

Not any, None
Sp. no...ningún; Port. não...nenhum; It. non...nessun; Fr. ne...aucun

Sp. *ningún*; Port. *nenhum*; It. *nessun*; Fr. *aucun* - *not any*, none are used as adjectives and must agree in gender and number with the noun. When used with the negative words Sp. *no*; Port. *não*; It. *non*; Fr. *ne*, these adjectives always follow the main verb in simple tenses and the past participle in compound tenses in in all the Romance languages. For example:

Sp. *No* veo *ningún* hombre;

Port. Eu *não* vejo *nenhum* homem;

It. *Non* vedo *nessun* uomo;

Fr. Je *ne* vois *aucun* homme

- *I don't see **any** man.*

Sp. *No* he visto a *ninguna* mujer;

Port. Eu *não* tenho visto *nenhuma* mulher;

It. *Non* ho visto *nessuna* donna;

Fr. Je *n'*ai vu *aucune* femme.

*- I didn't see **any** woman.*

Not at all, Absolutely not
Sp. en absoluto, en mi/la vida; Port. de modo nenhum, de modo algum; It. non... affatto, non...punto; Fr. ne...pas du tout, ne...point

The negative expression *not at all* is quite different in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, so it needs to be considered separately in each Romance language.

Spanish

En absoluto en *mi* (*tu,su*)/*la vida* seem like affirmative phrases in Spanish, but nonetheless they are commonly used to convey negative meaning, meaning "*not at all*" or "*absolutely not*". These phrases can be placed either in the beginning or at the end of a sentence. For example:

Sp. Él no vino *en absoluto*/ *En absoluto* él no vino (Él no vino *en su vida*)

*- He didn't come **at all**.*

Portuguese

De modo nenhum, de modo algum are negative phrases which are used to express "*not at all*". They are placed at the end of a sentence. For instance:

Port. Ele não veio *de modo nenhum* (Ele não veio *de modo algum*)

- *He didn't come at all.*

Italian

Affatto, if used with *non*, can be put either between the auxiliary verb and the past participle or after the past participle, while *punto* always come before the past participle in compound tenses. Study the following:

It. Non è venuto *affatto* (*Non* è *punto* venuto)

- *He didn't come at all.*

French

Pas du tout, *point*, if used with *non*, should be placed after the main verb in simple tenses and after the auxiliary verb in compound tenses. For example:

Fr. Il *n'*est pas *du tout* venu (Il *n'*est *point* venu)

- *He didn't come at all.*

Not even
Sp. ni siquiera, ni tan siquiera; Port. nem sequer, tão sequer; It. non...neanche, non...nemmeno, non...neppure; Fr. ne... même pas

Spanish negative expression *ni siquiera, ni tan siquiera* should be regarded along with Portuguese *nem sequer, tão sequer* since they have more grammatical and lexical similarities between them, rather than with Italian and

French. On the other hand, Italian ***non...neanche, non...
nemmeno, non...neppure*** should be considered in pair with
French ***ne...même pas***, for they are quite alike in terms
grammatical usage.

Spanish and Portuguese

Sp. ***ni siquiera, ni tan siquiera*** and Port. ***nem
sequer, tão sequer*** should be placed in the beginning of a
sentence. For example:

Sp. ***Ni siquiera*** me saludó (***Ni tan siquiera*** me saludó);

· Port. ***Nem sequer*** me cumprimentou (***tão sequer*** me
cumprimentou)

- *She **didn't even** greet me.*

Italian and French

It. ***neanche, nemmeno, neppure*** and Fr. ***même pas***
are usually placed after the main verb in simple tenses and after
the auxiliary verb in compound tenses. However, in Italian they
can be put either between the auxiliary verb and the past participle
or after the past participle. For example:

It. ***Non*** mi ha salutato ***neanche/ nemmeno/ neppure*** (***Non***
mi ha ***neanche*** salutato);

Fr. Elle ***ne*** m'a ***même pas*** salué

- *She **didn't even** greet me.*

Only
Sp. no...más que/sino; Port. não...mais
que; It. non...che; Fr. ne...que

Did you know?

Bologna, the capital of Emilia-Romagna region in Northern Italy, is popular for The Two Towers (Le due torri), that stand next to each other. The tower of Asinelli and the tower of Garisenda. The names derive from families who built them between 1109 and 1119. The construction was a competition between the two families to demonstrate which was the wealthier family.

Sp. ***más que/sino***; Port. ***mas que***; It. ***che***; Fr. ***que***, if used with ***no/non/ne***, should be placed after the main verb in simple tenses and follow the past participle in compound tenses. For example:

Sp. ***No*** tengo ***más que*** una hermana (***No*** tengo ***sino*** una hermana);

Port. Eu ***não*** tenho ***mais que*** uma irmã;

It. ***Non*** ho ***che*** una sorella;

Fr. Je ***n'***ai ***que*** une soeur

*- I have **only** one sister.*

Sp. Ella ***no*** ha leído ***más que*** un libro;

Port. Ela ***não*** tem lido ***mais que*** um livro;

It. ***Non*** ha letto ***che*** un libro;

Fr. Elle ***n'***a lu ***qu'***un livre.

*- She has read **only** one book.*

The Imperfect Tense

Formation of the Imperfect

The imperfect tense (Sp. el imperfecto, Port. o pretérito imperfeito, It. l`imperfetto Fr. l`imparfait) is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding the appropriate personal ending to the root of a verb.

NOTE:

In French the Imperfect tense is formed by dropping the ending -ons of the 1st person plural of the present tense and adding the appropriate endings.

Below is a table demonstrating the endings of the imperfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1ˢᵗ conj.: -AR: -aba, -abas, -aba, -ábamos, -abais, -aban;	**1ˢᵗ conj.: -AR:** -ava,-avas,-ava,-ávamos,-áveis, -avam;	**1ˢᵗ conj.: -ARE:** -avo, -avi, -ava,-avamo,-avate, -avano;	**all the conj.:** -ais, -ais, - ait, -ions, -iez, -aient;
2ⁿᵈ conj.: -ER: -ía, -ías, -ía, -íamos, - íais, -ían;	**2ⁿᵈ conj.: -ER:** -ia, -ias, -ia, -íamos, -íeis, -iam;	**2ⁿᵈ conj.: -ERE:** -evo,-evi,-eva,-evamo,-evate,-evano	
3ʳᵈ conj.: -IR: -ía, -ías, -ía, -íamos, - íais, -ían;	**3ʳᵈ conj.: -IR:** -ia, -ias, -ia, -íamos, -íeis, -iam;	**3 conj.: -IRE:** -ivo, -ivi, -iva, -ivamo, -ivate,-ivano;	

Below is the table showing the example of conjugation of regular verbs in the imperfect tense :

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 conjugation			

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Sp.: habl**ar**	Port.: fal**ar**	It.: parl**are**	Fr.: parl**er**
yo habl**aba** *tú* habl**abas** *él\ella\usted* habl**aba** *nosotros\as* habl**ábamos** *vosotros\as* habl**abais** *ellos\ellas\usted-es* habl**aban**	*eu* fal**ava** *tu* fal**avas** *ele\ela\você* fal**ava** *nós* fal**ávamos** *vós* fal**áveis** *eles\elas\voc ês* fal**avam**	*io* parl**avo** *tu* parl**avi** *lui\lei\Lei* parl**ava** *noi* parl**avamo** *voi* parl**avate** *loro\Loro* parl**avano**	*je* parl**ais** *tu* parl**ais** *il\elle\on* parl**ait** *nous* parl**ions** *vous* parl**iez** *ils\elles* parl**aient**
2 conjugation			
vend**er**	vend**er**	vend**ere**	vend**re**
vend**ía** vend**ías** vend**ía** vend**íamos** vend**íais** vend**ían**	vend**ia** vend**ias** vend**ia** vend**íamos** vend**íeis** vend**iam**	vend**evo** vend**evi** vend**eva** vend**evamo** vend**evate** vend**evano**	vend**ais** vend**ais** vend**ait** vend**ions** vend**iez** vend**aient**
3 conjugation			
part**ir**	part**ir**	part**ire**	part**ir**

333

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
partía	partia	partivo	partais
partías	partias	partivi	partais
partía	partia	partiva	partait
partíamos	partíamos	partivamo	partions
partíais	partíeis	partivate	partiez
partían	partiam	partivano	partaient

NOTE:

*In French verbs ending in **-cer** and **-ger**, the spelling changes before **a** take place, which is in order to preserve the initial sound. For example:*

***Commencer** (to begin): je commençais - tu commençais - il/elle/on commençait - nous commencions - vous commenciez - ils/ elles commençaient.*

***Manger** (to eat): je mangeais - tu mangeais - il/elle/on mangeait - nous mangions - vous mangiez - ils/elles mangeaient.*

Irregular Verbs in the Imperfect

The most common irregular verb of the imperfect tense in the Romance languages is the verb *to be*:

Sp. ***Ser***: yo ***era***; tú ***eras***; él\ella\usted ***era***; nosotros\as ***éramos***; vosotros\as ***erais***; ellos\ellas\ustedes ***eran***.

Port. ***Ser***: eu ***era***; tu ***eras***; ele\ela\você ***era***; nós ***éramos***; vós ***éreis***; eles\elas\vocês ***eram***.

It. ***Essere***: io ***ero***; tu ***eri***; lui\lei\Lei ***era***; noi ***eravamo***, voi ***eravate***, loro\Loro ***erano***.

Fr. *Être*: j'*étais*, tu *étais*, il\elle\on *était*, nous *étions*, vous *étiez*, ils\elles *étaient*.

- **To be:** *I was; you were; he, she, it was; we were; you were; they were.*

NOTE:

Spanish and Portuguese also have their own irregular verbs, which should be regarded as well.

Spanish

Ir (to go): ***iba, ibas, iba, íbamos, ibais, iban***

Ver (to see): ***veía, veías, veía, veíamos, veíais, veían***

Portuguese

Ter (to have): ***tinha, tinhas, tinha, tínhamos, tínheis, tinham***

Vir (to come): ***vinha, vinhas, vinha, vínhamos, vínheis, vinham***

Use of the Imperfect

Generally speaking the imperfect tense in the Romance languages is used to talk about what someone was doing or used to do. Therefore, the imperfect tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French is used to express:

▸ **Actions repeated habitually or regularly**

You use it when you talk about activities that you did repeatedly for a long period of undetermined time. The beginning and the end of the action is not specified. For example:

335

Sp. *Comíamos* en este restaurante todos los dias;

Port. *Comíamos* neste restaurante todos os dias;

It. *Mangiavamo* in questo ristorante tutti i giorni;

Fr. Nous *mangions* dans ce restaurant tous les jours.

- *We **used to eat** at this restaurant every day.*

‣ Two simultaneous actions

Use it to talk about actions that were taking place at the same time in the past:

Sp. Mientras ella *dormía*, él *leía* el periódico;

Port. Enquanto ela *dormia*, ele *lia* o jornal;

It. Mentre lei *dormiva*, lui *leggeva* il giornale;

Fr. Pendant qu'elle *dormait*, il *lisait* le journal.

- *While she **was sleeping**, he **was reading** the newspaper.*

‣ Background actions that set stage for other actions

The background action is expressed in the imperfect, while the action that interrupts the background action is used in · the preterite:

Sp. *Dormías* cuando llegué;

Port. *Dormias* (Você *dormia*) quando cheguei;

It. *Dormivi* quando sono venuto;

Fr. Tu *dormais* quand je suis arrivé.

- *You **were sleeping** when I arrived.*

NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the background action can also be expressed by the imperfect progressive (**See The Continuous Tenses p.465**). Study the following:*

Sp. **Estabas durmiendo** *cuando llegué;*

Port. **Estavas a dormir** *(Você **estava dormindo**) quando cheguei;*

It. **Stavi dormendo** *quando sono venuto.*

*- You **were sleeping** when I arrived.*

► **Time and dates in the past**

Sp. **Eran** las dos de la tarde;

Port. **Eram** duas horas da tarde;

It. **Erano** le due del pomeriggio;

Fr. Il **était** deux heures de l'après-midi.

*- It **was** two o'clock in the afternoon.*

Sp. **Era** lunes;

Port. **Era** segunda-feira;

It. **Era** lunedi;

Fr. C'**était** lundi.

*It **was** Monday.*

► **Descriptions in the past**

The imperfect tense is used to describe a scene, circumstances or person in the past:

Sp. *Hacía* frío esa noche;

Port. *Fazia* frio naquela noite;

It. *Faceva* freddo quella note;

Fr. Il *faisait* froid cette nuit.

- *It was cold that night.*

Sp. *Tenía* cuarenta años;

Port. Ele *tinha* quarenta anos;

It. Egli *aveva* quarant'anni;

Fr. Il *avait* quarante ans.

- *He was forty years old.*

Did you know?

Toulouse, the capital of France's southern Occitanie region, is known as La Ville Rose (The Pink City) owing to the pale coloured terra-cotta bricks used in most of its buildings.

Sp. *Era* alta y bonita;

Port. Ela *era* alta e bonita;

It. *Era* alta e bella;

Fr. Elle *était* grande et belle.

- *She was tall and beautiful.*

▸ Verbs denoting mental and emotional states, desires or conditions

As most mental processes include duration, verbs of mental states or conditions are usually expressed in the imperfect when used in the past. The following is a list of the most common verbs describing mental states:

338

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
amar	amar	amare	aimer	*to love*
ser	ser	essere	être	*to be*
tener	ter	avere	avoir	*to have*
creer	crer	credere	croire	*to believe*
desear	desejar	desiderare	désirer	*to desire*
esperar	esperar	sperare	espérer	*to hope*
pensar	pensar	pensare	penser	*to think*
poder	poder	potere	pouvoir	*to be able*
preferir	preferir	preferire	préférer	*to prefer*
saber	saber	sapere	savoir	*to know*
querer	querer	volere	vouloir	*to want*
reflejar	refletir	riflettere	refléter	*to reflect*

Sp. Yo *quería* ir a Francia;

Port. Eu *queria* ir para a França;

It. *Volevo* andare in Francia;

Fr. Je *voulais* aller en France.

- *I wanted to go to France.*

Sp. No *sabía* la respuesta;

Port. Ele não *sabia* a resposta;

It. Non *sapeva* la risposta;

Fr. Il ne *savait* pas la réponse.

- He didn't know the answer.

Sp. ***desde hace***; Port. ***desde***; It. ***da***; Fr. ***depuis*** + The Imperfect Tense

We have already studied the use of Sp. ***desde***; Port. ***desde***; It. ***da***; Fr. ***depuis*** (*for/since*) with the present indicative **(See Special Use of the Present Tense and Prepositions p. 274)**. In the Romance languages the prepositions Sp. ***desde hace***; Port. ***desde***; It. ***da***; Fr. ***depuis*** can also be used with the imperfect tense meaning *had been*. For instance:

Sp. ***Esperaba desde hace*** dos horas;

Port. ***Esperava desde*** as duas horas;

It. ***Aspettavo da*** due ore;

Fr. ***J'attendais depuis*** deux heures.

*- I **had been waiting** for two hours.*

The following are the most common adverbial expressions that are usually used with the imperfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
siempre	sempre	sempre	toujours	*always*
a veces	às vezes	a volte	parfois	*at times*
como siempre	como sempre	come sempre	comme toujours	*as always*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
como de costumbre, acostumbr adamente	como de costume usualmente, habitual- mente, costumeira mente	come d'uso, usualmente	d'habitude, habituelle ment	*usually*
algunas veces	algumas vezes	certe volte	quelquefois	*sometim es*
frecuente mente	freqüente- mente	con frequenza, frequente- mente	fréquem- ment	*frequent ly*
a menudo	freqüenteme nte	spesso	souvent	*often*
continua- mente	continua- mente	continua- mente	continuelle ment	*continuo usly*
de vez en cuando, de cuando en cuando	de vez em quando	di quando in quando, di tanto in tanto	de temps en temps	*from time to time*
sin interrup- ción	sem interrupção	ininterrotta mente	sans interrup- tion	*without interrup tion*
repetida- mente	repetida- mente	ripetuta- mente	à plusieurs reprises	*repeated ly*
sin cesar	sem parar	senza sosta	sans cesse	*without stopping*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cada día, todos los dias	cada dia, todos os dias	ogni giorno, tutti i giorni	chaque jour, tous les jours	*every day*
diaria-mente	diariamente	quotidiana mente	quotidienn ement	*daily*
los domingos	aos domingos	la domenica	le dimanche	*on Sundays*
en aquel entonces	naquele momento	in quel momento	en ce moment	*at that moment*

Difference between the Preterite and the Imperfect
in the Romance Languages

Generally speaking, the imperfect tense is used to express a continuing and habitual action in the past, whereas the preterite describes an action that began and finished in the past independently of its continuance. For instance:

The Preterite	The Imperfect
Sp. ***Jugué*** al tenis ***ayer***; Port. Eu ***joguei*** tênis ***ontem***; It. ***Ho giocato*** a tennis ***ieri***; Fr. J'***ai joué*** au tennis ***hier***. - *I played tennis yesterday.*	Sp. ***Jugaba*** al tenis ***de vez en cuando***; Port. Eu ***jogava*** tênis ***de vez em quando***; It. ***Giocavo*** a tennis ***di quando in quando***; Fr. Je ***jouais*** au tennis ***de temps en temps***. - *I used to play tennis from time to time.*

342

Compound Tenses in The Past

Overview

The compound tenses in the Romance languages are formed in the same way by using the auxiliary verb (Sp. *haber*, Port. *ter*, It. *avere* or *essere*, Fr. *avoir* or *être*) in the appropriate tense and the past participle.

NOTE:

It should be noted that Portuguese compound tenses differ from other Romance languages. In this case, Portuguese tense **pretérito mais-que-perfeito simples** *is not compound, since it is not formed with the help of the auxiliary verb. The distinctive feature of the Portuguese language is that it has two types of the pluperfect tenses, which are simple and compound (**pretérito mais-que-perfeito simples, pretérito mais-que-perfeito composto**).*

The Pluperfect Tense

Formation of the Pluperfect

In Spanish, Italian and French the pluperfect tense is formed by using the imperfect tense of the verb Sp. *haber*, It. *avere* or *essere*, Fr. *avoir* or *être* with the past participle.

NOTE:

In Portuguese this tense is formed by using the appropriate ending that is added to the infinitive.

343

The formation of the pluperfect of the Romance languages is presented in the drawing below:

Pluperfect Formula

Spanish ⟶ haber ⟹
había
habías
había
habíamos
habíais
habían

Italian

avere ⟹
avevo
avevi
aveva
avevamo
avevate
avevano

essere ⟹
ero
eri
era
eravamo
eravate
erano

French

avoir ⟹
avais
avais
avait
avions
aviez
avaient

être ⟹
étais
étais
était
étions
étiez
étaient

+ Past participle

(Sp. *-ado, -ido*;
Port. *-ado, -ido*;
It. *-ato, -uto, -ito*;
Fr. *-é, -u, -i*)

344
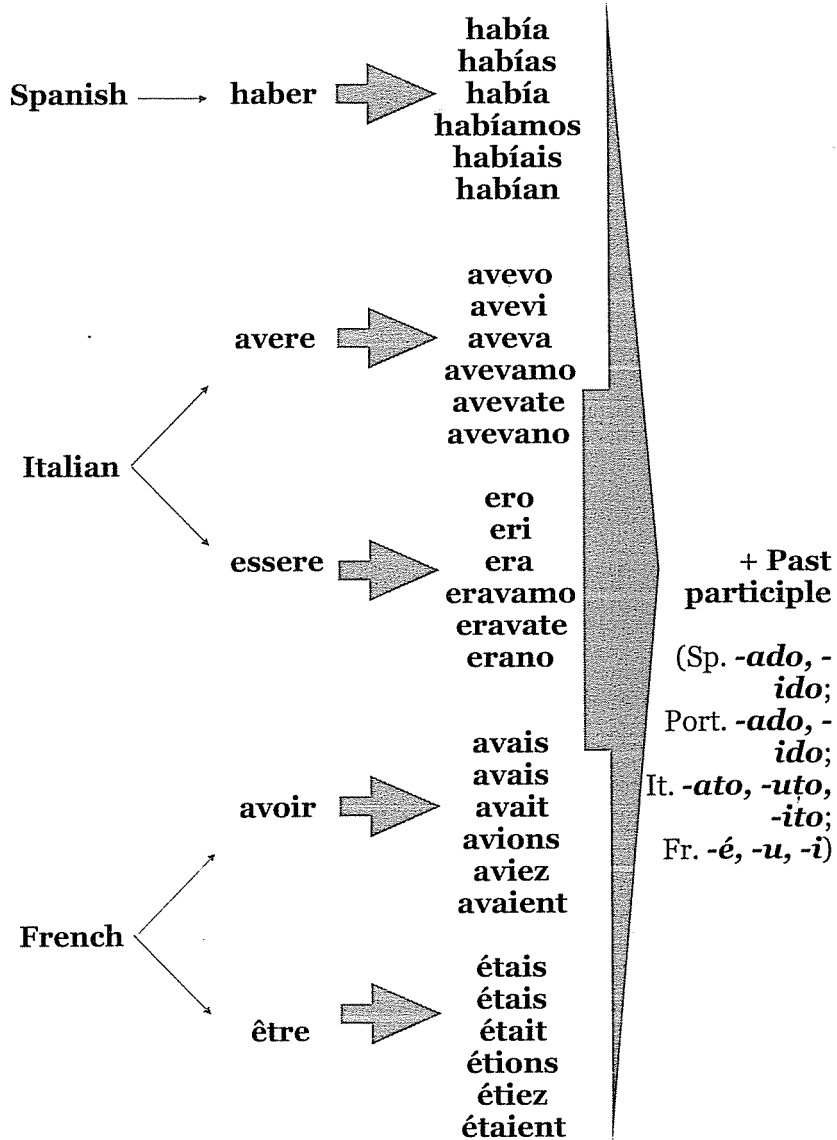
| Portugue se | ⟶ | Infinitive | + | -a, -as, -a, -amos, -eis, -am; |

NOTE:

*Like in the Present Perfect, in the Pluperfect as well as other compound tenses the auxiliary verbs It. **essere**; Fr. **être** (to be) are also used with reflexive and intransitive verbs in Italian and French. Also, the past participle that is used with the auxiliary verb to be (It. **essere**, Fr. **être**) always agrees in gender and number with the subject. This means that the endings change in the feminine and plural forms the way they change in adjectives: in French **-e** is added to agree with the feminine and **-s-** is added for the plural, in Italian to agree with the feminine **-a** is used and **-i**, **-e-** with the masculine and feminine plurals respectively.*

Below is the table showing the example of conjugation of verbs in the pluperfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Haber	*Ter*	*Avere*	*Avoir*
yo **había hablado**	eu **falara**	io **avevo parlato**	j`avais **parlé**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
tú **habías hablado**	tu **falaras**	tu **avevi parlato**	tu **avais parlé**
él/ella/usted **había hablado**	êle/ela/você **falara**	lui/lei/Lei **aveva parlato**	il/elle **avait parlé**
nosotros(as) **habíamos hablado**	nós **falaramos**	noi **avevamo parlato**	nous **avions parlé**
vosotros(as) **habíais hablado**	vós **falareis**	voi **avevate parlato**	vous **aviez parlé**
ellos/ellas/ustedes **habían hablado**	eles/elas/vocês **falaram**	loro/Loro **avevano parlato**	ils/elles **avaient parlé**
———	———	*Essere*	*Être*
———	———	io **ero partito (-a)**	j'**étais parti (-e)**
———	———	tu **eri partito (-a)**	tu **étais parti(-e)**
———	———	lui/lei/Lei **era partito (-a)**	il/elle **était parti (-e)**
———	———	noi **eravamo partiti(-e)**	nous **étions parti (-e)s**
———	———	voi **eravate partiti(-e)**	vous **étiez parti (-e)s**

346

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
———	———	loro/Loro **erano partiti** (-e)	ils/elles **étaient parti(-e)s**

For example:

Did you know?

Venezuela, the 43rd most populous country in the world (over 31 million people), has provided 6 Miss World winners and 7 Miss Universe winners, which is more than any other nation on Earth.

Sp. **Habíamos hablado** y luego se fue;

Port. Nós **falaramos** e depois ela foi embora;

It. **Avevamo parlato** e poi è andata via;

Fr. Nous **avions parlé** et puis elle est partie.

- *We **had spoken** and then she left.*

Sp. Ya **había partido** cuando llegué;

Port. Ela já **partira** quando eu cheguei;

It. **Era** gia **partita** quando sono arrivato;

Fr. Elle **était** déjà **partie** quand je suis arrivé.

- *She **had** already **left** when I arrived.*

Use of the Pluperfect Tense

The pluperfect tense is used the same in the Romance languages as in English to express:

- **Past action completed prior to another action in the past**. Study the following:

> **Did you know?**
>
> *The Azores, an autonomous region of Portugal, are a group of 9 volcanic islands located in the mid-Atlantic (850 miles west of continental Portugal). The Azores are known for blue-green lakes, fishing villages, green pastures, volcanic craters and 15th century churches.*

Sp. No sabía si ella me **había visto**;

Port. Eu não sabia se ela **vera**;

It. Non sapevo se mi **aveva visto**;

Fr. Je ne savais pas si elle m'**avait vu**.

- I didn't know if she had seen me.

Peculiarities of Use of the Pluperfect in the Romance Languages

In Spanish, Italian and French this tense is used in spoken language. However, in Portuguese the pluperfect is mainly used in literary language. Normally, in colloquial Portuguese, the past perfect is used instead.

Irregular Verbs of the Pluperfect in Portuguese

Portuguese has a number of irregular verbs in the pluperfect, which are:

Ser (fora, foras, fora, fôramos, fôreis, foram) - to be;

Dar (dera, deras, dera, déramos, déreis, deram) - to give;

Ir (fora, foras, fora, fôramos, fôreis, foram) - to go;

Vir (viera, vieras, viera, viéramos, viéreis, vieram) - to come;

Fazer *(fizera, fizeras, fizera, fizéramos, fizéreis, fizeram)* - to do.

The Past Perfect (Anterior) Tense

Formation of The Past Perfect (Anterior)

In the Romance languages the past perfect (anterior) tense is formed by using the preterite of the verb Sp. **haber**, It. **avere** or **essere**, Fr. **avoir** or **être** with the past participle.

NOTE:

It should be remembered that in Spanish, Italian and French the past perfect (anterior) tense is used mostly in literary contexts, whereas in Portuguese this tense is used in colloquial language.

Did you know?

Verona, an Italian city of 270 thousand inhabitants, is the city where 3 of William Shakespeare's plays are set: Romeo and Juliet, The Two Gentlemen of Verona and The Taming of the Shrew. Verona is considered one of the most beautiful cities in the world due to its architecture.

Below is the drawing demonstrating the formation of the past perfect (anterior) in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish   haber

hube
hubiste
hubo
hubimos
hubisteis
hubieron

Portuguese   ter

tinha
tinhas
tinha
tínhamos
tínheis
tinham

avere

ebbi
avesti
ebbe
avemmo
aveste
ebbero

Italian

essere

fui
fosti
fu
fummo
foste
furono

avoir

eus
eus
eut
eûmes
eûtes
eurent

French

être

fus
fus
fut
fûmes
fûtes
furent

+ Past
participle

(Sp. *-ado,*
-ido;
Port. *-ado,*
-ido;
It. *-ato, -uto,*
-ito;
Fr. *-é, -u, -i*)

Below is the table showing the example of conjugation of verbs in the past perfect (anterior) tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Haber	*Ter*	*Avere*	*Avoir*
yo **hube hablado**	eu **tinha falado**	io **ebbi parlato**	j`**eus parlé**
tú **hubiste hablado**	tu **tinhas falado**	tu **avesti parlato**	tu **eus parlé**
él/ella/usted **hubo hablado**	ele/ela/você **tinha falado**	lui/lei/Lei **ebbe parlato**	il/elle **eut parlé**
nosotros(as) **hubimos hablado**	nós **tínhamos falado**	noi **avemmo parlato**	nous **eûmes parlé**
vosotros(as) **hubisteis hablado**	vós **tínheis falado**	voi **aveste parlato**	vous **eûtes parlé**
ellos/ellas/ ustedes **hubieron hablado**	eles/elas/ vocês **tinham falado**	loro/Loro **ebbero parlato**	ils/elles **eurent parlé**
———	———	*Essere*	*Être*
———	———	io **fui partito(-a)**	je **fus parti (-e)**
———	———	tu **fosti partito(-a)**	tu **fus parti (-e)**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
___	___	lui/lei/Lei **fu partito** **(-a)**	il/elle **fut parti(-e)**
___	___	noi **fummo partiti(-e)**	nous **fûmes parti(-e)s**
___	___	voi **foste partiti(-e)**	vous **fûtes parti (-e)s**
___	___	loro/Loro **furono partiti(-e)**	ils/elles **furent parti(-e)s**

Did you know?

The Central African Republic is a landlocked nation situated in Central Africa. The CAR's 2 official languages are French and Sango. The country has 5 national parks and 33 protected areas. They are home to around 3,500 species of plants, 660 birds, 130 mammals, 185 reptiles and 25 amphibians.

For example:

Sp. Después que **hubo terminado** el trabajo, partió;

Port. Depois que **tinha terminado** o trabalho, ele partiu;

It. Dopo che **ebbe finito** il lavoro, è partito;

Fr. Après qu'il **eut terminé** le travail, il est parti.

- When he **had finished** the work, he left.

Sp. Cuando **hubo partido**, llegué;

Port. Quando ela já **tinha partido**, eu cheguei;

It. Quando *fu partita*, sono arrivato;

Fr. Quand elle *fut partie*, je suis arrivé.

- *When she **had left**, I arrived.*

Use of the Past Perfect (Anterior) Tense

Like the pluperfect tense, the past perfect (anterior) is also used to express a past action that *had* occurred before another action in the past. This tense is generally used in subordinate clauses after temporal conjunctions, which indicate a past action instantly preceding another. In such sentences the main verb is in the preterite.

The following are the most common temporal conjunctions that are usually used in the past perfect (anterior) tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
después (de) que	depois que	dopo che (dopoché)	après que	*after*
cuando	quando	quando	quand (lorsque)	*when*
luego que, apenas	logo que, apenas	come, appena	dès que (aussitôt que), à peine	*as soon as, scarcely (hardly)*

Sp. *Luego que hube vuelto* a casa, me llamó;

Port. *Logo que* eu *tinha voltado* para casa, ela me chamou;

It. *Appena fui tornato* a casa, mi ha chiamato;

Fr. *Dès que* je *fus rentré* à la maison, elle m'a appelé.

- *As soon as I had returned* home, she called me.

NOTE:
In French the subject and verb are inverted
after à peine.

Fr. *À peine fus-je rentré* à la maison,
qu'elle m'a appelé.

- *I had hardly returned home when she*
called me.

However, in modern spoken language the past perfect (anterior) is usually replaced by the preterite in the Romance languages:

Sp. *Luego que volví* a casa, me llamó;

Port. *Logo que voltei* para casa, ela me chamou;

It. *Appena sono tornato* a casa, mi ha chiamato;

Fr. *Dès que* je *suis rentré* à la maison, elle m'a appelé.

- *As soon as I returned home,* she called me.

The Future Tense

Regular Formation of the Future

The future tense of most verbs is formed by adding the appropriate endings to the infinitive in all the conjunctions.

Below is the table demonstrating the endings of the future tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st, *2nd* and *3rd* person singular	-é, -ás, -á,	-ei, -ás, -á,	-ò, -ai, -à,	-ai, -as, -a,
1st, *2nd* and *3rd* person plural	-emos, -éis, -án;	-emos, -eis, -ão;	-emo, -ete, -anno;	-ons, -ez, -ont;

NOTE:

The final -e of the 2nd conjunction (-re verbs) in French, as well as the final -e of all the conjunctions in Italian is dropped before adding the future endings (e.g. It. partire (to leave) io partirò - I will leave; Fr. attendre (to wait) j'attendrai - I will wait).

Also, Italian future tense of the 1st conjunction (-are verbs) is formed by changing the infinitive ending -are into -er (we changed the initial -a- to -e- and dropped the final -e-) before adding the appropriate future endings (e.g. It. aspettare (to wait) io aspetterò - I will wait).

The following is the table showing the example of conjugation of regular verbs in the future tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
hablar	falar	parlare	parler

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
yo hablar**é**	eu falar**ei**	io parler**ò**	je parler**ai**
tú hablar**ás**	tu falar**ás**	tu parler**ai**	tu parler**as**
él\ella\usted hablar**á**	ele\ela\você falar**á**	lui\lei\Lei parler**à**	il\elle\on parler**a**
nosotros\as hablar**emos**	nós falar**emos**	noi parler**emo**	nous parler**ons**
vosotros\as hablar**éis**	vós falar**eis**	voi parler**ete**	vous parler**ez**
ellos\ellas\usted es hablar**án**	eles\elas\vo cês falar**ão**	loro\Loro parler**anno**	ils\elles parler**ont**

NOTE:

In French the 2nd and 3rd person singular forms sound alike (e.g. tu parleras; il\elle parlera); the 1st person singular and the 2nd person plural sound alike (e.g. je parlerai; vous parlerez), and then the 1st and 3rd person plurals also sound alike (e.g. nous parlerons; ils\elles parleront). However, these forms are all spelled differently.

Irregular Verbs in The Future

The following is a table presenting irregular verbs in the future tense, which are common for all or several Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ser (regular)	**ser** (regular)	**essere** (sarò, sarai, sarà, saremo, sarete, saranno)	**être** (serai, seras, sera, serons, serez, seront)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
estar (regular)	**estar** (regular)	**stare** (starò, starai, starà, staremo, starete, staranno)	——
haber (habré, habrás, habrá, habremos, habréis, habrán)	**haver** (regular)	**avere** (avrò, avrai, avrà, avremo, avrete, avranno)	**avoir** (aurai, auras, aura, aurons, aurez, auront)
tener (tendré, tendrás, tendrá, tendremos, tendréis, tendrán)	**ter** (regular)	**tenere** (terrò, terrai, terrà, terremo, terrete, terrano)	**tenir** (tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra, tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront)
hacer (haré, harás, hará, haremos, haréis, harán)	**fazer** (farei, farás, fará, faremos, fareis, farão)	**fare** (farò, farai, farà, faremo, farete, faranno)	**faire** (ferai, feras, fera, ferons, ferez, feront)
venir (vendré, vendrás, vendrá, vendremos, vendréis, vendrán)	**vir** (regular)	**venire** (verrò, verrai, verrà, verremo, verrete, verrano)	**venir** (viendrai, viendras, viendra, viendrons, viendrez, viendront)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
saber (sabré, sabrás, sabrá, sabremos, sabréis, sabrán)	**saber** (regular)	**sapere** (saprò, saprai, saprà, sapremo, saprete, sapranno)	**savoir** (saurai, sauras, saura, saurons, saurez, sauront)
ver (regular)	**ver** (regular)	**vedere** (vedrò, vedrai, vedrà, vedremo, vedrete, vedranno)	**voir** (verrai, verras, verra, verrons, verrez, verront)
morir (regular)	**morrer** (regular)	**morire** (morrò, morrai, morrà, morremo, morrete, morranno)	**mourir** (mourrai, mourras, mourra, mourrons, mourrez, mourront)
dar (regular)	**dar** (regular)	**dare** (darò, darai, darà, daremo, darete, daranno)	**donner** (regular)
decir (diré, dirás, dirá, diremos, diréis, dirán)	**dizer** (direi, dirás, dirá, diremos, direis, dirão)	**dire** (regular)	**dire** (regular)
querer (querré, querrás, querrá, querremos, querréis, querrán)	**querer** (regular)	**volere** (vorrò, vorrai, vorrà, vorremo, vorrete, vorranno)	**vouloir** (voudrai, voudras, voudra, voudrons, voudrez, voudront)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
deber (regular)	**dever** (regular)	**dovere** (dovrò, dovrai, dovrà, dovremo, dovrete, dovranno)	**devoir** (devrai, devras, devra, devrons, devrez, devront)
poder (podré, podrás, podrá, podremos, podréis, podrán)	**poder** (regular)	**potere** (potrò, potrai, potrà, potremo, potrete, potranno)	**pouvoir** (pourrai, pourras, pourra, pourrons, pourrez, pourront)
ir (regular)	**ir** (regular)	**andare** (andrò, andrai, andrà, andremo, andrete, andranno)	**aller** (irai, iras, ira, irons, irez, iront)

Did you know?

Havana (La Habana), the capital city and major port of Cuba, has a nickname: Ciudad de las Columnas (The City of Columns) because of its notable colonial architecture. Havana was selected as one of the New7Wonders Cities and attracts over 1 million tourists every year.

As it is seen from the table, Italian and French have almost the same set of regular and irregular verbs in comparison with other Romance languages. Similarly, Spanish and Portuguese also have almost identical number of regular and irregular verbs between each other, which demonstrate their pair convergence. Therefore, it will be much easier to memorize these irregular verbs in pairs where Italian make a pair with French on the one hand, and Spanish with Portuguese on the other.

Irregularities in Formation of the Future in French

However, despite the majority of similar irregular verbs with other Romance languages, French has its own number of irregular verbs with specific models of conjugation. Some verbs, in order to form the future tense, use the 3rd person singular of the present tense rather than the infinitive.

Below are the most common verbs that use the 3rd person singular form while forming the future tense in French:

Infinitive	the 3rd form singular	Future
acheter (*to buy*)	*achète*	*j'achèterai*
appeler (*to call*)	*appelle*	*j'appellerai*
employer (*to employ*)	*emploie*	*j'emploierai*
ennuyer (*to be bored*)	*ennuie*	*j'ennuierai*
essayer (*to try*)	*essaie*	*j'essaierai*
essuyer (*to dry*)	*essuie*	*j'essuierai*
jeter (*to throw*)	*jette*	*je jetterai*
lever (*to lift*)	*lève*	*je lèverai*
mener (*to lead*)	*mène*	*je mènerai*
nettoyer (*to clean*)	*nettoie*	*je nettoierai*
payer (*to pay*)	*paie*	*je paierai*
peser (*to weigh*)	*pèse*	*je pèserai*

Use of The Future Tense

Like in English, the future tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French is used:

➢ **to express an action that will occur in the future:**

> *Did you know?*
>
> *Equatorial Guinea, a Central African nation, is the only sovereign country in Africa in which Spanish is an official language. The population of the country is over 1.2 million people.*

Sp. Le *visitaré* mañana;

Port. *Visitarei-o* amanhã;

It. lo *visiterò* domain;

Fr. je le *visiterai* demain.

- I will visit him tomorrow.

Also, the present tense can be used to express an action or intention that will occur in the future:

Sp. *voy* a París mañana;

Port. eu *vou* para Paris amanhã;

It. *vado* a Parigi domani;

Fr. je *vais* à Paris demain.

- I am going to Paris tomorrow.

➢ **to express probability and assumption:**

In conversational Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the future can be used to express probability. In questions it is used to express surprise. As it is used in conversation, it is necessary to convey the meaning with intonation and use it in context. In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the verbs *to be* and *to have* (Sp. *estar*, *ser*, *tener*; Port. *estar*, *ser*, *ter*; It.

essere, avere; Fr. *être, avoir*) are generally used in order to express probability in the future.

Sp. ¿ Donde **estará** tu hermano? - **Estará** en casa;

Port. Onde **estará** o seu irmão? - **Estará** em casa;

It. Dove **sarà** tuo fratello? - **Sarà** a casa;

Fr. Où **sera** ton frère? - Il **sera** à la maison.

- *Where **will** your brother **be**? - He **will be** at home.*

The Informal Future

In the Romance languages the informal future is used primarily in colloquial language in order to express future actions. In Spanish, Portuguese and French it is formed by the verb *to go* of the present tense which is placed right before the infinitive. This expression is the equivalent of the English *to be going to.*

The formula of the informal future of Spanish, Portuguese and French is the following:

Sp. *ir a*, Port. *ir*, Fr. *aller* + *Infinitive*

NOTE:

*It should be added that in Spanish the preposition **a** is put after the verb **ir** and before an infinite to form informal future.*

In Italian this expression is formed by using the verb *stare* (*to be*) and the preposition *per*, which are put before an infinitive:

It. *stare per* + *Infinitive*

Sp. *Va a leer* un libro,

Port. Ele *vai ler* um livro,

It. *Sta per leggere* un libro,

Fr. Il *va lire* un livre

- He *is going to* read a book.

Special Use of the Future

Did you know?

São Tomé and Príncipe is a Portuguese-speaking island nation located in the equatorial Atlantic and Gulf of Guinea. It is the smallest of all Portuguese-speaking countries with a population of about 200 thousand. The people are friendly and it is safe to walk in the parks at night or sleep on the beaches.

In Romance languages the future tense can also be used after certain conjunctions when the verb of the main clause is in the future tense, as well as in the dependent clause. It should be noted that, unlike in the Romance languages, in English the verb of the main clause is used in the present tense. However, in Spanish, the subjunctive present is used in the main clause. In Portuguese, the subjunctive future should be used in the main clause in this case.

The following are the most common conjunctions used with the future tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cuando	quando	quando	quand, lorsque, au moment où	*when*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
luego que, apenas, tan pronto como	logo que, apenas, assim que	come, appena	dès que, aussitôt que	as soon as
mientras que, en tanto que	enquanto que, no tanto que	mentre (ché), intanto che	pendant que, tandis que	while

Sp. **Cuando llegue**, voy a verla (**Cuando llegue**, la veré);

Port. **Quando ela chegar**, eu vou vê-la (**Quando ela chegar**, verei-a);

It. **Quando sta per arrivare**, sto per vederla (**Quando arriverà**, la vedrò);

Fr. **Quand elle va arriver**, je vais la voir (**Quand elle arrivera**, je la verrai).

- *When she arrives, I will see her.*

Sp. Vamos a hablar **apenas venga** (Hablaremos **apenas venga**);

Port. Vamos falar **logo que chegar** (Falaremos **logo que chegar**);

It. Stiamo per parlare **appena sto per venire** (Parleremo **appena verrò**).

Fr. On va parler **dès que je vais arriver** (Nous parlerons **dès que j'arriverai**).

- *We will talk as soon as I come.*

364

The Future Perfect Tense

Formation of the Future Perfect

Like other compound tenses, The future perfect in the Romance languages is formed similarly by using the auxiliary verb (Sp. *haber*, Port. *ter*, It. *avere* or *essere*, Fr. *avoir* or *être*) in the future tense and the past participle. The future perfect is generally used to express an action that *will have been* completed at a certain moment in the future.

Did you know?

The Italian language has a co-official status in Slovenia. About 4000 Slovenian people speak Italian as their mother tongue. Around 15% Slovenians speak Italian as a second language.

The drawing below shows the ways of forming the future perfect in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Future Perfect Formula
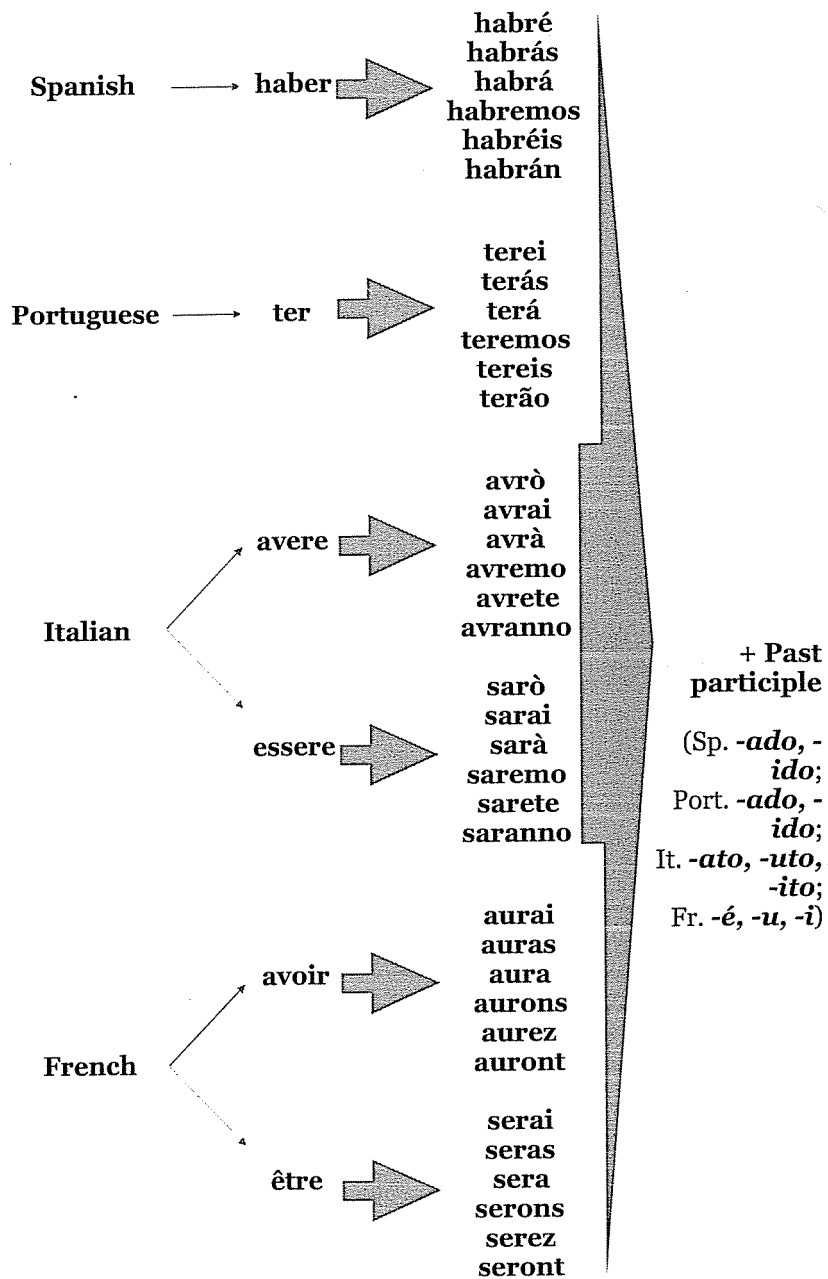
Spanish ⟶	haber ⟹	habré habrás habrá habremos habréis habrán
Portuguese ⟶	ter ⟹	terei terás terá teremos tereis terão
Italian	avere ⟹	avrò avrai avrà avremo avrete avranno
	essere ⟹	sarò sarai sarà saremo sarete saranno
French	avoir ⟹	aurai auras aura aurons aurez auront
	être ⟹	serai seras sera serons serez seront

+ Past
participle

(Sp. *-ado, -ido*;
Port. *-ado, -ido*;
It. *-ato, -uto, -ito*;
Fr. *-é, -u, -i*)

Below is the table that demonstrates the example of conjugation of verbs in the future perfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Haber	*Ter*	*Avere*	*Avoir*
yo **habré hablado**	eu **terei falado**	io **avrò parlato**	j`**aurai parlé**
tú **habrás hablado**	tu **terás falado**	tu **avrai parlato**	tu **auras** . **parlé**
él/ella/usted **habrá hablado**	ele/ela/você **terá falado**	lui/lei/Lei **avrà parlato**	il/elle **aura parlé**
nosotros(as) **habremos hablado**	nós **teremos falado**	noi **avremo parlato**	nous **aurons parlé**
vosotros(as) **habréis hablado**	vós **tereis falado**	voi **avrete parlato**	vous **aurez parlé**
ellos/ellas/ ustedes **habrán hablado**	eles/elas/ vocês **terão falado**	loro/Loro **avranno parlato**	ils/elles **auront parlé**
		Essere	*Être*
		io **sarò partito(-a)**	je **serai parti(-e)**
		tu **sarai partito(-a)**	tu **seras parti(-e)**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
		lui/lei/Lei **sarà partito(-a)**	il/elle **sera parti(-e)**
		noi **saremo partiti(-e)**	nous **serons parti(-e)s**
		voi **sarete partiti(-e)**	vous **serez parti(-e)s**
		loro/Loro **saranno partiti(-e)**	ils/elles **seront parti(-e)s**

Observe the example:

Sp. Cuando ella llegue, yo **habré partido**;

Port. quando ela chegar, eu **terei partido**;

It. Quando lei arriverà, **sarò partito**;

Fr. Quand elle arrivera, je **serai parti**.

- *I will **have already left** when she arrives.*

Use of the Future Perfect Tense

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the future perfect tense is used:

➤ To express a future action that will have been completed before another action in the future:

Sp. Mañana a las nueve, **habrán llegado** a Buenos Aires;

Port. Amanhã às nove horas, eles **terão chegado** em Buenos Aires;

It. Domani alle nove, **saranno arrivati** a Buenos Aires;

Fr. Demain à neuf heures, ils **seront arrivés** à Buenos Aires.

- *Tomorrow at nine o'clock, they **will have arrived** in Buenos Aires.*

Sp. **Habremos terminado** el trabajo para enero;

Port. **Teremos terminado** o trabalho em janeiro;

It. **Avremo terminato** il lavoro per gennaio;

Fr. Nous **aurons fini** le travail pour janvier.

- *We **will have finished** the work by January.*

‣ Like the future tense, the future perfect is also used to express probability in the Romance languages. However, it is used in this way with all verbs (**See Use of the Future Tense p.361**).

Did you know?

Monaco is a French-speaking micro-state in Western Europe. It is surrounded by France on 3 sides while the other side borders the Mediterranean Sea. The most famous Casino de Monte-Carlo was opened in Monaco 155 years ago, in 1863.

Sp. Ella **habrá salido** de Madrid;

Port. Ela **terá deixado** Madrid;

It. lei **avrà lasciato** Madrid;

Fr. Elle **sera partie de** Madrid.

- *She **must have left** Madrid.*

Special Use of the Future Perfect

Like the future tense, the future perfect tense can also be used after certain conjunctions with the future or future perfect in the main clause in Romance languages. Note that in Portuguese the subjunctive future can be used here as well.

The following are the most common conjunctions that are usually used in the future perfect tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
después (de) que	depois que	dopo che (dopoché)	après que	after
cuando	quando	quando	quand	when
luego que, apenas	logo que, apenas	come, appena	dès que, aussitôt que	as soon as, scarcely

Study the following:

Sp. ***Después de haber comprado*** un billete de avión, volará a Italia;

(***Después de que comprará*** un billete de avión, volará a Italia).

Port. ***Depois que ele terá comprado*** (or ***comprar***) um bilhete de avião, ele voará para a Itália;

(***Depois que ele comprará*** (or ***comprar***) um bilhete de avião, ele voará para a Itália).

It. ***Dopo che avrà comprato*** un biglietto aereo, volerà in Italia;

(***Dopo che comprerà*** un biglietto aereo, volerà in Italia).

Fr. ***Après qu'il aura acheté*** un billet d'avion, il volera en Italie;

(***Après qu'il achètera*** un billet d'avion, il volera en Italie).

- After he has bought an plane ticket, he'll fly to Italy.

The Conditional Tense

Overview

Like in English, in the Romance languages the conditional tense is generally used to express what *would* happen in the future, which means that it refers to possible and hypothetical situations.

Formation of the Present Conditional

Did you know?

Honduras is a Central American nation with the Caribbean Sea coastline to the north and the Pacific Ocean to the south. The term "Honduras" literally means Great Depths in Spanish. When Christopher Columbus discovered the country, he exclaimed: "Thank God we have departed from those great depths" (Gracias a Dios que hemos salido de esas Honduras).

The present conditional is formed by adding the appropriate endings to the future stem of the verb in the Romance languages. It should also be noted that the endings are similar to those of the imperfect tense in Spanish, Portuguese and French. However, Italian has different endings, which requires more attention while memorizing them.

Below is the table displaying the endings of the present conditional tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st, 2nd and 3rd person singular	-ía, -ías, -ía,	-ia, -ias, -ia,	-ei, -esti, -ebbe,	-ais, -ais, -ait,
1st, 2nd and 3rd person plural	-íamos, -íais, -ían;	-íamos, -íeis, -iam;	-emmo, -este, -ebbero;	-ions, -iez, -aient;

The following is the table showing the example of conjugation of regular verbs in the present conditional tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
hablar	falar	parlare	parler
yo hablaría	eu falaria	io parlerei	je parlerais
tú hablarías	tu falarias	tu parleresti	tu parlerais
él\ella\usted hablaría	ele\ela\você falaria	lui\lei\Lei parlerebbe	il\elle parlerait
nosotros\as hablaríamos	nós falaríamos	noi parleremmo	nous parlerions
vosotros\as hablaríais	vós falaríeis	voi parlereste	vous parleriez
ellos\ellas\ ustedes hablarían	eles\elas\ vocês falariam	loro\ Loro parlerebbero	ils\ elles parleraient

NOTE:

In Italian verbs that end in -ciare and -giare drop the i get -ce and -ge respectively in the present conditional root. Also, verbs ending in -care and -gare add an h in order to preserve the sound of the c and g, and therefore get -che and -ghe.

Irregular Verbs in the Conditional

The very verbs that are irregular in the future are also irregular in the conditional in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which definitely makes it easier to learn and memorize them.

The following is a table presenting some irregular verbs in the conditional tense, which are common for all or several Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ser (regular)	**ser** (regular)	**essere** (sarei, saresti, sarebbe, saremmo, sareste, sarebbero)	**être** (serais, serais, serait, serions, seriez, seraient)
estar (regular)	**estar** (regular)	**stare** (starei, staresti, starebbe, staremmo, stareste, starebbero)	___
haber (habría, habrías, habría, habríamos, habríais, habrían)	**haver** (regular)	**avere** (avrei, avresti, avrebbe, avremmo, avreste, avrebbero)	**avoir** (aurais, aurais, aurait, aurions, auriez, auraient)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
tener (tendría, tendrías, tendría, tendríamos, tendríais, tendrían)	**ter** (regular)	**tenere** (terrei, terresti, terrebbe, terremmo, terreste, terrebbero)	**tenir** (tiendrais, tiendrais, tiendrait, tiendrions, tiendriez, tiendraient)
hacer (haría, harías, haría, haríamos, haríais, harían)	**fazer** (faria, farias, faria, faríamos, faríeis, fariam)	**fare** (farei, faresti, farebbe, faremmo, fareste, farebbero)	**faire** (ferais, ferais, ferait, ferions, feriez, feraient)
venir (vendría, vendrías, vendría, vendríamos, vendríais, vendrían)	**vir** (regular)	**venire** (verrei, verresti, verrebbe, verremmo, verreste, verrebbero)	**venir** (viendrais, viendrais, viendrait, viendrions, viendriez, viendraient)
saber (sabría, sabrías, sabría, sabríamos, sabríais, sabrían)	**saber** (regular)	**sapere** (saprei, sapresti, saprebbe, sapremmo, sapreste, saprebbero)	**savoir** (saurais, saurais, saurait, saurions, sauriez, sauraient)
ver (regular)	**ver** (regular)	**vedere** (vedrei, vedresti, vedrebbe, vedremmo, vedreste, vedrebbero)	**voir** (verrais, verrais, verrait, verrions, verriez, verraient)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
morir (regular)	**morrer** (regular)	**morire** (morrei, morresti, morrebbr, morremmo, morreste, morrebbero)	**mourir** (mourrais, mourrais, mourrait, mourrions, mourriez, mourraient)
dar (regular)	**dar** (regular)	**dare** (darei, daresti, darebbe, daremmo, dareste, darebbero)	**donner** (regular)
decir (diría, dirías, diría, diríamos, diríais, dirían)	**dizer** (diria, dirias, diria, diríamos, diríeis, diriam)	**dire** (regular)	**dire** (regular)
querer (querría, querrías, querría, querríamos, querríais, querrían)	**querer** (regular)	**volere** (vorrei, vorresti, vorrebbe, vorremmo, vorreste, vorrebbero)	**vouloir** (voudrais, voudrais, voudrait, voudrions, voudriez, voudraient)
deber (regular)	**dever** (regular)	**dovere** (dovrei, dovresti, dovrebbe, dovremmo, dovreste, dovrebbero)	**devoir** (devrais, devrais, devrait, devrions, devriez, devraient)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
poder (podría, podrías, podría, podríamos, podríais, podrían)	**poder** (regular)	**potere** (potrei, potresti, potrebbe, potremmo, potreste, potrebbero)	**pouvoir** (pourrais, pourrais, pourrait, pourrions, pourriez, pourraient)
ir (regular)	**ir** (regular)	**andare** (andrei, andresti, andrebbe, andremmo, andreste, andrebbero)	**aller** (irais, irais, irait, irions, iriez, iraient)

Irregularities in Formation the Conditional in French

French has a number of verbs that have irregular stems in the conditional. Some of them are the same as in the future tense.

Infinitive	Conditional
acheter (to buy)	*j'achèterais*
appeler (to call)	*j'appellerais*
employer (to employ)	*j'emploierais*
envoyer (to send)	*j'enverrais*
falloir (to need)	*il faudrait*
recevoir (to receive)	*je recevrais*
valoir (to value)	*je vaudrais*
apercevoir (to notice)	*j'apercevrais*

376

décevoir (*to disappoint*)	*je décevrais*
courir (*to run*)	*je courrais*

Use of the Conditional Tense

In the Romance languages the conditional is used:

- **To express and describe an action that would happen if it were not for some other circumstances.** It is expressed by *would* in English (**See Conditional Clauses p.383**):

  Sp. Si yo tuviera el tiempo, *iría* a Lisboa;

  Port. Se eu tivesse o tempo, *iria* a Lisboa;

  It. Se avessi tempo, *andrei* a Lisbona;

  Fr. Si j'avais le temps, j'*irais* à Lisbonne.

  - *If I had time, I **would** go to Lisbon.*

- **To express a polite request, desire or advice:**

Did you know?

Brasília, the federal capital of Brazil, was built in 41 months, from 1956 to April 21, 1960. The city was designed and developed by Lúcio Costa and Oscar Niemeyer, and is distinguished by its modernist architecture and artistic urban planning.

Sp. *Me gustaría* ir a Lisboa;

Port. *Gostaria de* ir para Lisboa;

It. *Vorrei* andare a Lisbona;

Fr. J'*aimerais* aller à Lisbonne.

- *I **would like** to go to Lisbon.*

Sp. ¿**Podría** darme un vaso de agua?;

Port. **Poderia** me dar um copo de água?;

It. **Potrei** avere un bicchiere d'acqua?;

Fr. **Pourrais**-je avoir un verre d'eau?

- *Could I have a glass of water?*

- **To express a future action in indirect speech** when the main verb is in the past tense. In this case, the present conditional can be equivalent to a simple future in the past in English:

Sp. Ella dijo que **vendría**;

Port. Ela disse que **viria**;

It. lei ha detto che **verrebbe**;

Fr. Elle m'a dit qu'elle **viendrait**.

- *She told me that she **would come**.*

*NOTE: In this use the imperfect tense of **ir a** + **infinitive** is more common in Spanish. Study the following:*

*Sp. Ella dijo que **iba a venir**.*

It should be remembered that if the verb in the main sentence is in the present tense, the future tense is used. Observe the following:

Sp. Ella dice que **vendrá**;

Port. Ela diz que **virá**;

It. lei dice che **verrà**;

Fr. Elle dit qu'elle **viendra**.

- *She says that she will come.*

The Conditional Perfect Tense

Overview

Like in English, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the conditional tense expresses an action in the past that *would have* happened but did not because of another event.

Formation of the Conditional Perfect

Did you know?

The Italian language is an officially recognized minority language in Croatia. It is spoken by around 7% of the population in Istria County. Native Italian speakers are mainly concentrated along the western coast of the Istrian peninsula.

The conditional perfect is formed by using the present conditional of the auxiliary verb (Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter**; It. **avere** or **essere**; Fr. **avoir** or **être**) and the past participle in the Romance languages.

The drawing below demonstrates the ways of forming the conditional perfect in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Conditional Perfect Formula

Spanish ⟶ haber ⟹
habría
habrías
habría
habríamos
habríais
habrían

Portuguese ⟶ ter ⟹
teria
terias
teria
teríamos
teríeis
teriam

Italian
⟶ avere ⟹
avrei
avresti
avrebbe
avremmo
avreste
avrebbero

⟶ essere ⟹
sarei
saresti
sarebbe
saremmo
sareste
sarebbero

French
⟶ avoir ⟹
aurais
aurais
aurait
aurions
auriez
auraient

⟶ être ⟹
serais
serais
serait
serions
seriez
seraient

+ Past
participle

(Sp. *-ado,*
-ido;
Port. *-ado,*
-ido;
It. *-ato, -uto,*
-ito;
Fr. *-é, -u, -i*)

Below is the table demonstrating examples of verb conjugation in the conditional perfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Haber	*Ter*	*Avere*	*Avoir*
yo **habría hablado**	eu **teria falado**	io **avrei parlato**	j`**aurais parlé**
tú **habrías hablado**	tu **terias falado**	tu **avresti parlato**	tu **aurais parlé**
él/ella/usted **habría hablado**	ele/ela/você **teria falado**	lui/lei/Lei **avrebbe parlato**	il/elle **aurait parlé**
nosotros(as) **habríamos hablado**	nós **teríamos falado**	noi **avremmo parlato**	nous **aurions parlé**
vosotros(as) **habríais hablado**	vós **teríeis falado**	voi **avreste parlato**	vous **auriez parlé**
ellos/ellas/ ustedes **habrían hablado**	eles/elas/ vocês **teriam falado**	loro/Loro **avrebbero parlato**	ils/elles **auraient parlé**
		Essere	*Être*
——	——	io **sarei partito(-a)**	je **serais parti(-e)**
——	——	tu **saresti partito(-a)**	tu **serais parti(-e)**
——	——	lui/lei/Lei **sarebbe partito(-a)**	il/elle **serait parti(-e)**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
—	—	noi **saremmo partiti(-e)**	nous **serions parti(-e)s**
—	—	voi **sareste partiti(-e)**	vous **seriez parti(-e)s**
—	—	loro/Loro **sarebbero partiti(-e)**	ils/elles **seraient parti(-e)s**

Use of the Conditional Perfect Tense

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the conditional perfect tense is used:

- **To express what would have happened if something else had not prevented it (See Conditional Clauses p. 383):**

Sp. Si hubiéramos tenido tiempo, nos *habríamos ido* a Lisboa;

Port. Se tivéssemos tido tempo, *teríamos ido* a Lisboa;

It. Se avessimo avuto tempo, *saremmo andati* a Lisbona;

Fr. Si nous avions eu le temps, nous *serions allés* à Lisbonne.

- *If we had had time, we would have gone to Lisbon.*

Sp. Yo *habría comprado* este libro, si tenía dinero;

Port. Eu *teria comprado* este livro, se eu tivesse tido dinheiro;

Did you know?

The Republic of the Congo (or simply Congo) is a country in Central Africa with great rainforest reserves. The Nouabalé-Ndoki National Park is known as the world's "Last Eden". This region of swampy forest is home to western lowland gorillas, chimpanzees, bongo and forest elephants. In 2012, Unesco declared the Park a World Heritage Site.

It. *Avrei comprato* questo libro, se avessi avuto i soldi;

Fr. J'*aurais acheté* ce livre, si j'avais d'argent.

- *I would have bought this book if I had had the money.*

Conditional Clauses

A conditional clause refers to an event (ofter hypothetical), which may or may not happen in reality. Conditional sentences have two parts: the conditional or *if* clause, and the main clause, for instance: *"If you have time, we will go to the cinema"*. In this sentence the conditional clause or *if* clause *"If you have time"* refers to a hypothetical event, the main clause *"we will go to the cinema"* shows what will happen if the condition of the *if* clause is met.

Normally, conditional clauses are introduced by *if* (Sp. *si*; Port. *se*; It. *se*; Fr. *si*) in the Romance languages.

Conditional clauses have a particular sequence of tenses that needs to be followed. However, the sequence of tenses slightly differs in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which requires more attention while learning. There are three types of *if* clauses in the Romance languages.

1. Possible Condition

Below is the formation of the first type of *if* clause in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which is **Possible Condition**:

If Clause	Main Clause
Sp. *si*; Port. *si*; It. *se*; Fr. *si* + *Present Indicative*	*Present Indicative* or *Future* or *Imperative*

NOTE:

In this case in Portuguese Future Subjunctive (See Future subjunctive p.435) can also be used in the if clause.

The first type of the conditional clause is used to demonstrate that the condition is likely to be implemented and therefore the consequence is regarded as possible. Observe the following:

Sp. *Si tienes* hambre, *compra* algo para comer;

Port. *Se estás* (*você está*) com fome, *eu compro* algo para comer (*Se estiveres* (*você estiver*) com fome, *eu compro* algo para comer);

It. *Se hai* fame, *compro* qualcosa da mangiare;

Fr. *Si tu as* faim, *j'achète* quelque chose à manger.

- *If you're* hungry, *I'll buy* something to eat.

Sp. *Si él tiene* bastante tiempo, *irá* a América del Sur;

Port. *Se ele tem* bastante tempo, *ele irá* para a América do Sul (*Se ele tiver* bastante tempo, ele *irá* para a América do Sul);

It. *Se lui ha* abbastanza tempo, *andrà* in America del Sud;

Fr. *S'il a* assez de temps, *il ira* en Amérique du Sud.

- *If he has* enough time, *he will go* to South America.

Sp. *Si sabes* dónde está, *dímelo*;

Port. *Se sabes* (*você sabe*) onde ele está, *diga-me* (*Se souberes* (*você souber*) onde ele está, *diga-me*);

It. *Se sai* dove lui sta, *dimmelo*;

Fr. *Si tu sais* où il est, *dis-le moi*.

- *If you know* where he is, *tell me*!

2. Impossible condition

The following is the formation of the second type of *if* clause in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which is called **impossible condition**:

If Clause	Main Clause
Sp. *si*; Port. *se*; It. *se*; Fr. *si* + *Imperfect Tense*	*Conditional Present*

> **NOTE:**
>
> In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian **the Imperfect Subjunctive** is used in the **if** clause, whereas in French **the Imperfect Indicative** is used in this case.

It should be mentioned that in Portuguese **the Imperfect Indicative** can also be used in the main clause of the second type of conditional clause.

The second type of conditional clause is contrary to the reality of the present and so the consequence is considered to be impossible. For example:

Sp. *Si yo tuviera* bastante tiempo, *iría* a América del Sur;

Port. *Se eu tivesse* tempo suficiente, *eu iria* para a América do Sul (*Se eu tivesse* tempo suficiente, *eu ia* para a América do Sul);

It. *Se io avessi* abbastanza tempo, *andrei* in Sud America;

Fr. *Si j'avais* assez de temps, *j'irais* en Amérique du Sud.

- *If I had* enough time, *I would go* to South America.

3. Impossible condition in the past

The following is the formation of the third type of *if* clause in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which is called **impossible condition in the past**:

If Clause	Main Clause
Sp. *si*; Port. *se*; It. *se*; Fr. *si* + *Pluperfect Tense*	*Past Conditional*

NOTE:

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian **the Pluperfect Subjunctive** is used in the **if** clause, whereas in French **the Pluperfect Indicative** is used in this case.

It should be remembered that in Portuguese **the Pluperfect Indicative** can also be used in the main clause of the third type of conditional clause.

The third type of conditional clause is predominantly used for the situations that are contrary to the reality of the past. Therefore, it describes an unrealized past possibility. For instance:

Sp. *Si yo hubiera tenido* bastante tiempo, *habría ido* a América del Sur;

386

Port. **Se eu tivesse tido** tempo suficiente, eu **teria ido** para a América do Sul (Se **eu tivesse tido** tempo suficiente, **eu tinha ido** para a América do Sul);

It. **Se io avessi avuto** abbastanza tempo, **sarei andato** in Sud America;

Fr. **Si j'avais eu** assez de temps, **je serais allé** en Amérique du Sud.

- If I had had enough time, I would have gone to South America

The Subjunctive Mood

Overview

Did you know?

The Canary Islands (Las Islas Canarias) are a Spanish autonomous community made up of an archipelago of 7 islands situated on the Atlantic Ocean, about 100 kilometres (62 miles) west of Morocco. The Islands are home to a whistling language called "Silbo Gomero". It was developed on the island of La Gomera in order to communicate across valleys.

The subjunctive is one of the most difficult features of language for those who speak English, since the subjunctive is rarely used in English, whereas it is widely used in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

At first let's look at the difference between the indicative and subjunctive moods in the Romance languages. *The indicative mood* is used to express a truth, fact, probability or action which is not dependent on an opinion or condition, while *the subjunctive mood* conveys desires, doubts, emotions or actions which are possible, uncertain, doubtful or unreal. Such ideas are dependent on an opinion or condition.

Basic Rules for Indicative and Subjunctive

The Indicative mood is

- generally used to talk about events, states or actions that are considered to be facts or true;

- quite common in speech to make real, accurate and factual statements or for describing evident qualities while referring to a situation or person.

The Subjunctive mood is

- generally used to talk about desires, doubts, emotions, the abstract and other unreal situations;

- commonly used in speech for making recommendations and expressing how particular things make you feel;

- widely used to express opinions concerning another action.

Study the following:

Indicative mood	Subjunctive mood
Example 1 Sp. Sé que ella *viene*; Port. Eu sei que ela *chega*; It. So che lei *arriva*; Fr. Je sais qu'elle *arrive*. *- I know that she is coming.*	*Example 1* Sp. Dudo que ella *venga*; Port. Duvido que ela *chegue*; It. Dubito che *arrivi*; Fr. Je doute qu'elle *arrive.*, *- I doubt that she is coming.*
Example 2 Sp. John *va* al cine; Port. John *vai* ao cinema; It. John *va* al cinema; Fr. John *va* au cinéma. *- John goes to the cinema.*	*Example 2* Sp. Él quiere que John *vaya* al cine; Port. Ele quer que John *vá* ao cinema; It. Egli vuole che John *vada* al cinema; Fr. Il veut que John *aille* au cinéma. *- He wants John to go to the cinema.*

In the second example, it can be seen that even though he wants John to go to the cinema, it is uncertain whether John will fulfill his desire, and so the action is conveyed in the subjunctive. In this case, in English an infinitive is used (he wants John **to go** to the cinema).

NOTE:

It should be mentioned that the subjunctive mood has many of the same verb tenses as the indicative mood, but not all. Moreover, the number of tenses in the subjunctive mood differs among Romance languages. Subjunctive in Italian and French has four tenses, which are present subjunctive, present perfect subjunctive, past subjunctive and past perfect subjunctive, whereas Spanish and Portuguese possess six tenses, in addition to the mentioned above there are also the future subjunctive and future perfect subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive

Formation of the Present Subjunctive

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian regular verbs form the present subjunctive by dropping the final *-o* of the 1st person singular of the present indicative and adding the appropriate personal ending to the root of a verb.

NOTE:

*However, in French the **-ent** ending from the 3rd person plural of the indicative is dropped before adding the endings in order to form the present subjunctive.*

Below is a table demonstrating the endings of the present subjunctive in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st conj.: -AR: -e, -es, -e, -emos, -éis, -en; **2nd and 3rd conj.: -ER and -IR:** -a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an;	**1st conj.: -AR:** -e, -es, -e, -emos, -eis, -em; **2nd and 3rd conj.: -ER and -IR:** -a, -as, -a, -amos, -ais, -am;	**1st conj.: -ARE:** -i, -i, -i, -iamo,-iate, -ino; **2nd and 3rd conj.: -ERE and -IRE:** -a, -a, - a, -iamo, -iate, -ano;	**1st ,2nd and 3rd conj.: -ER, -RE and -IR:** -e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent;

Below is the table displaying the examples of conjugation of regular verbs in the present subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 conjugation			
hablar	falar	parlare	parler
que yo hable	que eu fale	che io parli	que je parle
que tú hables	que tu fales	che tu parli	que tu parles
que él\ella\usted hable	que ele\ela\você fale	che lui\lei\Lei parli	qu'il\elle parle
que nosotros\as hablemos	que nós falemos	che noi parliamo	que nous parlions
que vosotros\as habléis	que vós faleis	che voi parliate	que vous parliez

390

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
que ellos\ellas\ustedes habl**en**	que eles\elas\vocês fal**em**	che loro\Loro parl**ino**	qu'ils\elles parl**ent**
2 conjugation			
vend**er**	vend**er**	vend**ere**	vend**re**
que vend**a**	que vend**a**	che vend**a**	que je vend**e**
que vend**as**	que vend**as**	che vend**a**	que tu vend**es**
que vend**a**	que vend**a**	che vend**a**	qu'il\elle vend**e**
que vend**amos**	que vend**amos**	che vend**iamo**	que nous vend**ions**
que vend**áis**	que vend**ais**	che vend**iate**	que vous vend**iez**
que vend**an**	que vend**am**	che vend**ano**	qu'ils\elles vend**ent**
3 conjugation			
part**ir**	part**ir**	part**ire**	part**ir**
que part**a**	que part**a**	che part**a**	que je part**e**
que part**as**	que part**as**	che part**a**	que tu part**es**
que part**a**	que part**a**	che part**a**	qu'il\elle part**e**
que part**amos**	que part**amos**	che part**iamo**	que nous part**ions**
que part**áis**	que part**ais**	che part**iate**	que vous part**iez**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
que part**an**	que part**am**	che part**ano**	qu'ils\elles part**ent**

Irregular Verbs in the Present Subjunctive

Below is a table presenting irregular verbs in the present subjunctive, which are common for all or several Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ser (sea, seas, sea, seamos, seáis, sean)	**ser** (seja, sejas, seja, sejamos, sejais, sejam)	**essere** (sia, sia, sia, siamo, siate, siano)	**être** (sois, sois, soit, soyons, soyez, soient)
estar (esté, estés, esté, estén)	**estar** (esteja, estejas, esteja, estejamos, estejais, estejam)	**stare** (stia, stia, stia, stiano)	____
haber (haya, hayas, haya, hayamos, hayáis, hayan)	**haver** (haja, hajas, haja, hajamos, hajais, hajam)	**avere** (abbia, abbia, abbia, abbiamo, abbiate, abbiano)	**avoir** (aie, aies, ait, ayons, ayez, aient)
tener (tenga, tengas, tenga, tengamos, tengáis, tengan)	**ter** (tenha, tenhas, tenha, tenhamos, tenhais, tenham)	**tenere** (tenga, tenga, tenga, tengano)	**tenir** (tienne, tiennes, tienne, tiennent)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
hacer (haga, hagas, haga, hagamos, hagáis, hagan)	**fazer** (faça, faças, faça, façamos, façais, façam)	**fare** (faccia, faccia, faccia, facciamo, facciate, facciano)	**faire** (fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent)
venir (venga, vengas, venga, vengamos, vengáis, vengan)	**vir** (venha, venhas, venha, venhamos, venhais, venham)	**venire** (venga, venga, venga, vengano)	**venir** (vienne, viennes, vienne, viennent)
saber (sepa, sepas, sepa, sepamos, sepáis, sepan)	**saber** (saiba, saibas, saiba, saibamos, saibais, saibam)	**sapere** (sappia, sappia, sappia, sappiamo, sappiate, sappiano)	**savoir** (sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent)
ver (vea, veas, vea, veamos, veáis, vean)	**ver** (veja, vejas, veja, vejamos, vejais, vejam)	**vedere** (vegga (veda), vegga (veda), vegga (veda), veggano (vedano))	**voir** (voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient)
morir (muera, mueras, muera, muramos, muráis, mueran)	**morrer** (regular)	**morire** (muoia, muoia, muoia, muoiano)	**mourir** (meure, meures, meure, meurent)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
dar (dé, des, de, demos deis, den)	**dar** (dê, dês, dê, demos, deis, dêem)	**dare** (dia, dia, dia, diano)	**donner** (regular)
decir (diga, digas, diga, digamos, digáis, digan)	**dizer** (diga, digas, diga, digamos, digais, digam)	**dire** (dica, dica, dica, diciamo,diciate, dicano)	**dire** (dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent)
querer (quiera, quieras, quiera, queramos, quieran)	**querer** (queira, queiras, queira, queiramos, queirais, queiram)	**volere** (voglia, voglia, voglia, vogliamo, vogliate, vogliano)	**vouloir** (veuille, veuilles, veuille, veuillent)
deber (regular)	**dever** (regular)	**dovere** (debba (deva), debba (deva), debba (deva), dobbiamo, dobbiate, debbano (devano))	**devoir** (doive, doives, doive, doivent)
poder (pueda, puedas, pueda, podamos, puedan)	**poder** (possa, possas, possa, possamos, possais, possam)	**potere** (possa, possa, possa, possiamo, possiate, possano)	**pouvoir** (puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ir (vaya, vayas, vaya, vayamos, vayáis, vayan)	**ir** (vá, vás, vá, vamos, vades, vão)	**andare** (vada, vada, vada, vadano)	**aller** (aille, ailles, aille, aillent)

Use of the Present Subjunctive

As it has been explained before, the present subjunctive is used in clauses following verbs which designate desires, doubts, emotions, feelings, requests, uncertainty, necessity, etc. in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. The subjunctive verb is usually introduced by Sp. *que*, Port. *que*, It. *che*, Fr. *que*.

The present subjunctive is commonly used after the following verbs and expressions in the Romance languages:

1. **Verbs expressing wishing, desire or preference:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
querer **que**	**querer** **que**	**volere** **che**	**vouloir** **que**	*to want*
desear **que**	**desejar** **que**	**desiderar** **e che**	**desirer** **que**	*to wish,* *to desire*
preferir **que**	**preferir** **que**	**preferire** **che**	**préférer** **que**	*to prefer*
——	——	**augurare** **che**	**souhaiter** **que**	*to wish*

395

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
esperar que	esperar que	sperare che	**espérer que** (*indicative*)	*to hope*
sugerir que	sugerir que	suggerire che	suggérer que (proposer)	*to suggest*
ojalá (que)	——	——	——	*if only*

NOTE:

*French **espérer** is followed by the indicative.*

Study the following examples:

Did you know?

Belo Horizonte (Beautiful Horizon) is the capital of the state of Minas Gerais. It is the first planned modern metropolis in Brazil. It was planned and built in the 1890s. Belo Horizonte also has chic resorts, skyscrapers, spacious parks and a tropical climate.

Sp. **Quiero que** ella **venga**;

Port. Eu **quero que** ela **venha**;

It. **Voglio che** lei **venga**;

Fr. Je **veux qu'**elle **vienne**.

- *I want her to come.*

Sp. **Espero que puedas** venir mañana;

Port. *Eu espero que possas* (você *possa*) vir amanhã;

It. *Spero che tu possa* venire domain;

Fr. J'*espère que tu peux* venir demain.

- I hope you can come tomorrow.

Sp. *Ojalá (que)*

Sp. *ojalá* comes from Arabic saying *"Oh, Allah!"* and was probably used in prayers. Nowadays, this expression means *"I hope..."* or *"if only..."* and is used with the subjunctive and pronoun *que*, which is placed right after Sp. *ojalá*. However, this expression can be used without pronoun *que*. Observe the following:

Sp. ¡*Ojalá que veas* a tu padre!

- I hope you see your father!

Sp. ¡*Ojalá él sepa!*

- If only he knew!

NOTE:

In Portuguese, Italian and French such expression does not exist. The possible equivalents of these expressions are Port. **Quem dera;** *It.* **Spero** *(or* **Se solo/ soltanto***); Fr.* **J'espère** *(or* **Si seulement***) - I hope or if only. Observe the following:*

Port. **Quem dera** *ele soubesse!*

It. **Se soltanto** *sapesse!*

*Fr. **Si seulement** il savait!*

- If only he knew!

2. Verbs of denial:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
negar que	negar que	negare che	nier que	*to deny*

Sp. *Niegan que* nos *conozcan*;

Port. Eles *negam que* eles nos *conheçam*;

It. *Negano che* ci *conoscano*;

Fr. Ils *nient qu'*ils nous *connaissent*.

- They deny that they know us.

3. Verbs of doubt:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dudar que	duvidar que	dubitare che	douter que	*to doubt*

Sp. *Dudo que* ella lo *sepa*;

Port. *Duvido que* ela o *saiba*;

It. *Dubito che* lei lo *sappia*;

Fr. Je *doute qu'*elle le *sache*.

- I doubt that she knows.

4. Verbs which express emotions and feelings:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
estar contento que	estar contente que	essere contento che	être content que	to be glad that
estar feliz que	estar feliz que	essere felice che	être heureux que	to be happy that
estar enojado que	estar com raiva que	essere arrabbiato che	être fâché que	to be angry that
estar triste que	estar triste que	essere triste che	être triste que	to be sad that
lamentar que	lamentar que	essere spiacente che	être désolé que	to be sorry that
estar orgullos o que	estar orgulhoso que	essere orgoglioso che	être fier que	to be proud that
estar sorprend ido que	estar surpreso que	essere sorpreso che	être surpris que	to be surprise d that
estar furioso que	estar furioso que	essere furioso che	être furieux que	to be furious that
tener miedo que	ter medo que	avere paura che	avoir peur que	to be afraid that
——	——	——	avoir crainte que	to be afraid that

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
temer que	temer que	temere che	craindre que	to fear that
lamentar que	lamentar que	lamentare che	regretter que	to be sorry that
enojarse que	ficar com raiva que	arrabbiarsi che	se fâcher que	to get angry
regocijar se que	regozijar-se que	gioire che	se réjouir que	to rejoice, to be delighted

Sp. *Estoy feliz que estés* aquí;

Port. *Estou feliz que estejas* (você *esteja*) aqui;

It. *Sono felice che tu sia* qui;

Fr. *Je suis heureux que tu sois* ici.

- *I am happy that you are here.*

Did you know?

Padua (It. Padova) is a city in Northern Italy. The University of Padua, one of the oldest universities in Italy, was founded in 1222. It established the first anatomy hall in Europe in 1594. Galileo Galilei was a lecturer at the university (1592-1610).

Sp. *Estoy sorprendido que te guste* esta canción;

Port. *Estou surpreso que gostes* (você *goste*) dessa canção.

It. *Sono sorpreso che ti piaccia* questa canzone;

Fr. *Je suis surpris que tu aimes* cette chanson.

- *I am surprised that you like this song.*

400

Sp. *Estamos tristes que dejes* el trabajo;

Port. *Estamos tristes que deixes* (você *deixe*) o trabalho;

It. *Siamo tristi che tu lasci* il lavoro;

Fr. *Nous sommes tristes que tu quittes* le travail.

- *We are sad that you are leaving the work.*

5. Verbs expressing commands or requirements:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
comand ar que	comandar que	comandar e che	command er que	*to command*
exigir que	exigir que	esigere che	exiger que	*to demand*
ordenar que	ordenar que	ordinare che	ordonner que	*to order*
requerir que	requerer que	richieder e che	requérir que	*to require*

Sp. Ella *exige que* usted *venga* a tiempo mañana;

Port. Ela *exige que* o senhor *venha* a tempo amanhã;

It. Lei *esige che* Lei *venga* a tempo domani;

Fr. Elle *exige que* vous *veniez* à temps demain.

- *She demands that you be on time tomorrow.*

6. Verbs demonstrating permission or refusal of permission:

Spanish	Portugues e	Italian	French	English
permitir que	permitir que	permettere che	permettre que	*to permit*
consentir que	consentir que	consentire che	consentir que	*to consent*
prohibir que	proibir que	proibire che	interdire que	*to forbid*
requerir que	requerer que	impedire che	empêcher que	*to prevent*

Sp. Ella *permite que* él *vaya* allí;

Port. Ela *permite que* ele *vá* para lá;

It. Lei *permette che* lui ci *vada*;

Fr. Elle *permet qu'il* y *aille*.

- *She permits him to go there.*

Sp. Te *prohíbo que hagas* eso;

Port. Eu *proíbo que faças* (você *faça*) isso;

It. Ti *proibisco che* tu *faccia* questo;

Fr. J'*interdis que* tu *fasses* cela.

- *I forbid you to do that.*

7. **Impersonal expressions that convey opinion or emotions:**

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
es tiempo que	é tempo que	è tempo che	il est temps que	*it is time that/for*
es mejor que	é melhor que	è meglio che	il vaut (vaudrait) mieux que	*it is better that/for*
es preferibl e que	é preferível que	è preferibil e che	il est préférabl e que	*it is better that/for*
es necesario que	é necessári o que	è necessari o che	il est nécessair e que	*it is necessary that*
hace falta que	faz falta que	bisogna che	il faut (faudrait) que	*it is necèssary that*
es importan te que	é importan te que	è importan te che	il est importan t que	*it is important that*
importa que	importa que	importa che	il importe que	*it is important that*
es esencial que	é essencial que	è essenzial e che	il est essentiel que	*it is essential that*
es justo que	é justo que	è giusto che	il est juste que	*it is right that*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
es suficient e que	é suficiente que	è sufficient e che	il suffit que	*it is enough that*
es indispens able que	é indispens ável que	è indispens abile che	il est indispens able que	*it is indispens able that*
es convenie nte que	é convenie nte que	è convenie nte che	il est convenab le que	*it is proper that*
conviene que	convém que	conviene che	il convient que	*it is fitting that*
es posible que	é possível que	è possibile che	il est possible que	*it is possible that/for*
puede que	se pode que	si può che	il se peut que	*it is possible that/for*
es imposibl e que	é impossí- vel que	è impossi- bile che	il est impossi- ble que	*it is impossibl e that/for*
es útil que	é útil que	è utile che	il est utile que	*it is useful that/for*
es inútil que	é inútil que	è inutile che	il est inutile que	*it is useless that/for*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
es dudoso que	é duvidoso que	è dubbio che (si dubita che)	il est douteux que	*it is doubtful that*
es poco probable que	é pouco provável que	è poco probabile che	il est peu probable que	*it is unlikely that*
no es cierto que	não é certo que	non è certo che	il n'est pas certain que	*it is uncertain that*
es afortunado que	é afortunado que	è fortunato che	il est heureux que	*it is fortunate that*
es bueno que	é bom que	è bene che	il est bon que	*it is good that*
es una lastima que	é uma pena que	è un peccato che	c'est (il est) dommage que	*it is a pity that*
parece que	parece que	sembra che	il semble que	*it seems that*
es vergonzoso que	é vergonhoso que	è vergognoso che	il est honteux que	*it is shameful that*
es triste que	é triste que	è triste che	il est triste que	*it is sad that*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
es sorpren- dente que (sorpren de que)	é surpreen- dente que (surpreen de que)	è sorpren- dente che (sorprend e che)	il est surpren- ant que (il surprend que)	*it is surprisin g that*
es asombro so que	é espantoso que	è stupeface nte che	il est étonnant que	*it is astonishin g that*
es urgente que	é urgente que	è urgente che	il est urgent que	*it is urgent that*

Sp. *Es necesario que estudies*;

Port. *É necessário que estudes* (você *estude*);

It. *È necessario che* tu *studi*;

Fr. *Il est nécessaire que* tu *étudies*.

- *It is necessary that you to study.*

Sp. *Es posible que* ella me *llame* hoy;

Port. *É possível que* ela me *chame* hoje;

It. *È possibile che* mi *chiami* oggi;

Fr. *Il est possible qu*'elle m'*appelle* aujourd'hui.

- *It is possible that she will call me today.*

Sp. *Es una lástima que* él *esté* enfermo;

Port. *É uma pena que* ele *esteja* doente;

It. *È un peccato che* lui *sia* malato;

Fr. *Il est dommage qu'*il *soit* malade.

- It is a pity that he is ill.

Sp. *Es triste que partan* tan temprano;

Port. *É triste que* eles *partam* tão cedo;

It. *È triste che partano* così presto;

Fr. *Il est triste qu'*ils *partent* si tôt.

- It is sad that they are leaving so early.

Use of the Present Indicative instead of Subjunctive

The present indicative is normally used with the verbs and expressions that involve certainty in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

The following is a list of the most common verbs and expressions that are used in the present indicative:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
pensar que	pensar que	pensare che	penser que	*to think*
creer que	acreditar que	credere che	croire que	*to believe*
es cierto que	é certo que	è certo che	il est certain que	*it is certain that*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
es seguro que	é seguro que	è sicuro che	il est sûr que	*it is sure that*
es probable que	é provável que	è probabile che	il est probable que	*it is probable that*
es evidente que	é evidente que	è evidente che	il est évident que	*it is evident that*
es exacto que	é exato que	è esatto che	il est exact que	*it is correct that*
es claro que	é claro que	è chiaro che	il est clair que	*it is clear that*
es verdad que	é verdade que	è vero che	il est vrai que	*it is true that*

Sp. *Pienso que vienen*;

Port. Eu *penso que* eles *vêm*;

It. *Penso che vengono*;

Fr. Je *pense qu'ils viennent*.

- *I think they are coming.*

Did you know?

Corsica (Fr.Corse) is a French mountainous island in the Mediterranean Sea. Corsica was sold to France in 1768. A year later, in 1769, Napoleon Bonaparte was born in the Corsican capital of Ajaccio. Today, his home "Maison Bonaparte" is used as a museum.

Sp. ***Es verdad que*** él ***sabe*** nadar;

Port. ***É verdade que*** ele ***sabe*** nadar;

It. ***È vero che*** lui ***sa*** nuotare;

Fr. ***Il est vrai qu'***il ***sait*** nager.

- It is true that he can swim.

However, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French forms of the above expressions are used in the subjunctive for the negative and interrogative, since uncertainty is expressed:

Sp. ***No creo que vengan***;

Port. Eu ***não acredito que*** eles ***venham***;

It. ***Non credo che vengano***;

Fr. Je ***ne crois pas qu'***ils ***viennent***.

- I don't believe they are coming.

Sp. ***No es cierto que*** él ***sepa*** nadar;

Port. ***Não é certo que*** ele ***saiba*** nadar;

It. ***Non è certo che*** lui ***sappia*** nuotare;

Fr. ***Il n'est pas certain qu'***il ***sache*** nager.

- It is not certain that he can swim.

409

Subjunctive with Subordinate Conjunctions

The following is a list of conjunctions that require the subjunctive in the Romance languages:

1. Conjunctions of time:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
antes que	antes que	prima che	avant que	*before*
después que	depois que	dopo che	**après que** *(indicative)*	*after*
luego que, así que,	logo que, assim que,	non appena che	**aussitôt que** *(indicative)*	*as soon as*
mientras que	enquanto	mentre che	**pendant que** *(indicative)*	*while*
cuando	quando	quando	**quand** *(indicative)*	*when*
hasta que	até que	finché (fino a quando)	en attendant que (jusqu'à ce que)	*until*

NOTE:

*In French **après que, aussitôt que, pendant que** and **quand** always take the indicative.*

Sp. Hablaremos **antes que** ella **salga**;

Port. Falaremos **antes que** ela **saia**;

It. Parleremo **prima che** lei **esca**;

Fr. Nous parlerons **avant qu'**elle **sorte**.

- *We will talk before she leaves.*

2. Conjunctions of cause or negation:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
no que	**não que**	**non che; (nonché)**	**non que**	*not that*
sin que	**sem que**	**senza che**	**sans que**	*without*

Sp. Él partió **sin que** yo le **hable**;

Port. Ele partiu **sem que** eu lhe *falasse*;

It. Lui è partito **senza que** io le **parlassi**;

Fr. Il est parti **sans que** je lui **parle**.

- *He left without me speaking to him.*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese and Italian the Imperfect Subjunctive Port. **falasse** (not the Present Subjunctive **fale**) and It. **parlassi** (the Present Subjunctive **parli**) should be used in the above example.*

3. Conjunctions of purpose:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a fin de que	a fim de que	affinché	afin que	in order that, so that
para que	para que	perché	pour que	in order that, so that
de manera que, de forma que, de modo que	de maneira que, de forma que de modo que	in maniera che, in forma che in modo che	de manière que, de façon que, de sorte que	so that
por miedo que	por medo que	per paura che	de crainte que, de peur que	for fear that

Sp. Lo decimos **para que** tu **sepas**;

Euro. Port. Nós o dizemos **para que** tu **saibas** (Braz. Port. voçê **saiba**);

It. Lo diciamo **perché** tu lo **sappia**;

Fr. Nous le disons **pour que** tu le **saches**;

- *We say it so that you know it.*

NOTE:
However, in certain cases, Sp. de manera que, de forma que, de modo que; Port. de maneira que, de forma que, de modo que; It. in maniera che, in

412

forma che, in modo che; Fr. de manière que, de façon que, de sorte que are followed by the indicative, especially when the result is an implemented and supposedly irrevocable fact or action.

In this case, these expressions can be translated in English as **so**. For example:

Sp. Llegué temprano **de modo que** nadie me **vio;**

Port. Eu vim cedo **de modo que** ninguém me **viu;**

It. Sono venuto presto **in modo che** nessuno mi **ha visto;**

Fr. Je suis venu tôt **de façon que** personne ne m'a **vu.**

- *I came early (in a way) so (that) nobody saw me.*

4. Conjunctions of concession:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aunque	embora, mais que	benché, quantunque, sebbene	bien que, quoique, encore que	*although, though*
a pesar de que	apesar de	malgrado che	malgré que	*despite that*

Sp. **Aunque** yo **esté** muy ocupado, voy a llamarte;

Port. **Embora** eu **esteja** muito ocupado, vou te telefonar (vou telefonar para você);

413

It. **Benché** io **sia** molto impegnato, ti telefonerò.

Fr. **Bien que** je **sois** très occupé, je vais te téléphoner.

- *Although I am very busy, I will call you.*

5. Conjunctions of condition:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
con la (a) condición de que	com a (na) condição de que	a condizione che	à condition que	*on the condition that*
en caso de que	em caso de que	in caso che	en cas que	*in the case that*
siempre que, (con tal (de) que	contanto que	purché	pourvu que	*provided that*
supuesto que	suposto que	supposto che, posto che	supposé que	*supposing that*
a menos que	a menos que	a meno che (non)	à moins que	*unless*
sea que...sea que	seja que...seja que	sia che... sia che	soit que... soit que	*whether... or*

Sp. Voy a dar un paseo **con la condición de que haga** buen tiempo;

Port. Vou dar um passeio **com a condição de que** o tempo **esteja** bom;

It. Sto per fare una passeggiata **a condizione che faccia** bel tempo;

Fr. Je vais faire un tour **à condition qu'il fasse** beau.

- *I will go for a walk on the condition that the weather is good.*

NOTE:

*In French the negative particle **ne** is normally used after **à moins que, avant que, de peur que, de crainte que, de manière que, de sorte que** when the verb in the dependent clause is affirmative. **Ne...pas** is used if the verb is negative. For instance:*

Fr. *J'irai au marché **à moins qu'il ne** fasse mauvais.*

- *I will go to the market unless the weather is bad.*

Fr. *Je viens plus tôt **de crainte qu'il ne** m'attende **pas**.*

- *I come early for fear that he will not wait for me.*

The following conjunction does not take the subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
porque	**porque**	**perché**	**parce que**	*because*

Indirect Commands in Romance languages

The present subjunctive may be used in indirect commands, which are quite common for stating a wish or hope that something will occur. They are normally used to refer to a third person.

The following is the formula to form indirect commands in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Sp. Port. Fr. *Que*, It. *Che* + *Present Subjunctive*

Study the following:

Sp. *Que* ella *trabaje*!

Port. *Que* ela *trabalhe*!

It. *Che* lei *lavori*!

Fr. *Qu'*elle *travaille*!

- Let her work!

Subjunctive after Affirmation in Romance Languages

The subjunctive is used with the following expression of affirmation is Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
que yo sepa	que eu saiba	che io sappia	que je sache	*as far as I know*

Observe the following:

Sp. Nadie lo sabe, *que yo sepa*;

Port. Ninguém o sabe, *que eu saiba*;

It. Nessuno lo sa, *che io sappia*;

Fr. Personne ne le sait, *que je sache*.

- *No one knows as far as I know*.

Subjunctive in Relative Clauses

The subjunctive is usually used in relative clauses when the antecedent is indefinite, meaning a noun or pronoun that represents somebody or something that is not yet found or identified. The indicative is used when the antecedent is definite. Compare the following:

Did you know?

Mexico City is the oldest capital in the Americas. The city was built on an island of Lake Texcoco by the Aztecs in 1325. Its original name in the local indigenous language was Tenochtitlan or México-Tenochtitlan. In 1585 it was officially named as Ciudad de México (Mexico City).

Sp. *Conocemos* un hombre que *puede* viajar con nosotros;

Port. *Conhecemos* um homem que *pode* viajar conosco;

It. *Conosciamo* un uomo che *può* viaggiare con noi;

Fr. Nous *connaissons* un homme qui *peut* voyager avec nous.

- *We know a man who can travel with us.*

Sp. *Buscamos* un hombre que *pueda* viajar con nosotros;

Port. *Procuramos* um homem que *possa* viajar conosco;

It. *Cerchiamo* un uomo che *possa* viaggiare con noi;

Fr. Nous *cherchons* un homme qui *puisse* voyager avec nous.

- We are looking for a man who can travel with us.

Subjunctive with the Superlative and It. *solo, unico*; Fr. *seul, unique*

The present subjunctive is also used in a relative clause after a superlative expression and after It. *solo, unico*; Fr. *seul, unique* that are preceded by the appropriate definite article when these expressions express judgment or exaggeration. For instance:

It. È *il miglior film che* io *conosca*;

Fr. C'est *le meilleur film que* je *connaisse*.

- It is the best film that I know.

It. Egli è *l'unico studente che studi* bene;

Fr. Il est *le seul étudiant qui étudie* bien.

- He is the only student who studies well.

NOTE:
Unlike in French and Italian, in Spanish and Portuguese, the present indicative is used in a relative clause after a superlative expression and after Sp. único, solo; Port. único, só. For instance:

Sp. Es *la mejor película que* yo *conozco*;

Port. É *o melhor filme que* eu *conheço*;

- It is the best film that I know.

Sp. Él es *el único estudiante que estudia* bien;

Port. Ele é *o único aluno que estuda* bem;

- He is the only student who studies well.

Subjunctive with Indefinite Words

The subjunctive is also used after the following indefinite words in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por más...que por mucho... que	por mais...que	comunque ...che	si... que	*however*
de cualquier modo (manera) que	de qualquer modo (maneira) que	in qualche modo che	de quelque manière que	*however*
lo que sea que...	o que quer que...	checché...	quoi que ce soit...	*whatever*
cualquier ...que, cual- quiera que sea... que	qualquer ...que, qualquer que seja... que, seja qual(s) for...que	qualunque ...che	quelque (s)...que, quel que soit...que	*whatever / whichever (with a noun)*
cualquier a que...	quem quer que...	chiunque ...., chicche- ssia...	qui que ce soit...	*whoever*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
donde quiera que...	onde quer que...	ovunque ..., dovunque ...	où que...	*wherever*

Sp. ***Cualquiera que sea*** el libro ***que leas***, debes terminarlo;

Port. ***Qualquer que seja*** o livro ***que leias*** (Braz. Port. você ***leia***), deves (Braz. Port. você deve) terminá-lo;

It. ***Qualunque*** libro ***che*** tu ***legga***, devi finirlo;

Fr. ***Quel que soit*** le livre ***que*** tu ***lises***, tu dois le finir.

- *Whichever book you read, you must finish it.*

Sp. ***Cualquiera que*** lo ***diga***, no lo creería;

Port. ***Quem quer que*** o ***diga***, não o acredita (Braz. Port. não o acredite);

It. ***Chiunque*** lo ***dica***, non crederci;

Fr. ***Qui que ce soit qui*** te le ***dise***, ne le crois pas.

- *Whoever says it, do not believe him.*

The Present Perfect Subjunctive

Formation of the Present Perfect Subjunctive

Did you know?

Madeira is a Portuguese autonomous archipelago of 4 islands located in the north Atlantic Ocean, southwest of Portugal. The capital of Madeira is Funchal. The Madeira islands have the largest fireworks show for New Year celebrations in the world. It was officially recognized by Guinness World Records in 2006.

The present perfect subjunctive in the Romance languages is formed by using the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb (Sp. *haber*, Port. *ter*, It. *avere* or *essere*, Fr. *avoir* or *être*) and the past participle.

The drawing below demonstrates the ways of forming the present perfect subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Present Perfect Subjunctive Formula

Spanish ——→ que haber ⇒
haya
hayas
haya
hayamos
hayáis
hayan

Portuguese ——→ que ter ⇒
tenha
tenhas
tenha
tenhamos
tenhais
tenham

Italian
che avere ⇒
abbia
abbia
abbia
abbiamo
abbiate
abbiano

che essere ⇒
sia
sia
sia
siamo
siate
siano

French
que avoir ⇒
aie
aies
ait
ayons
ayez
aient

que être ⇒
sois
sois
soit
soyons
soyez
soient

+ Past
participle

(Sp. *-ado,*
-ido;
Port. *-ado,*
-ido;
It. *-ato, -uto,*
-ito;
Fr. *-é, -u, -i*)
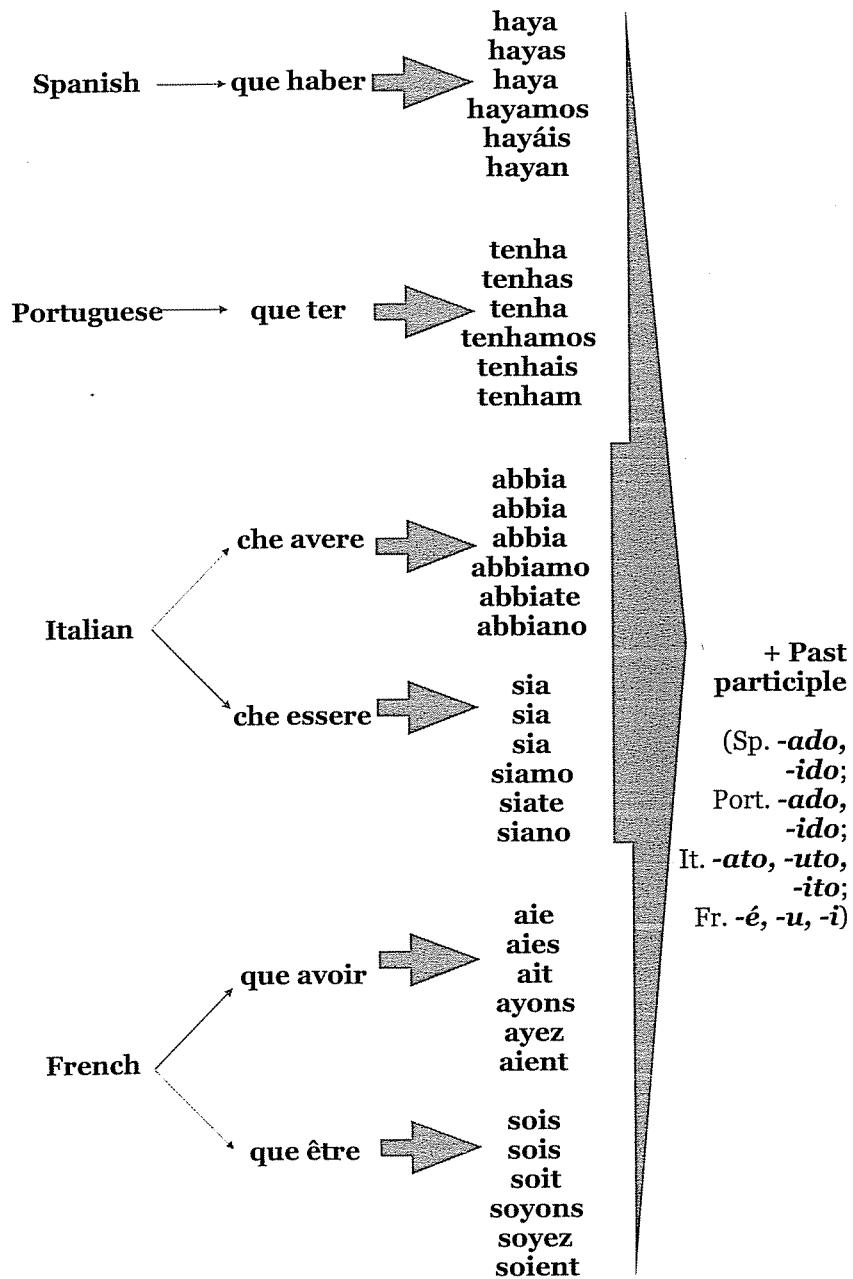
Below is the table that illustrates the example of verb conjugation in the present perfect subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Haber	*Ter*	*Avere*	*Avoir*
que yo **haya hablado**	que eu **tenha falado**	che io **abbia parlato**	que j'**aie parlé**
que tú **hayas hablado**	que tu **tenhas falado**	che tu **abbia parlato**	que tu **aies parlé**
que él/ella/ usted **haya hablado**	que ele/ela/ você **tenha falado**	che lui/lei/ Lei **abbia parlato**	que il/elle **ait parlé**
que nosotros(as) **hayamos hablado**	que nós **tenhamos falado**	che noi **abbiamo parlato**	que nous **ayons parlé**
que vosotros(as) **hayáis hablado**	que vós **tenhais falado**	che voi **abbiate parlato**	que vous **ayez parlé**
que ellos/ellas/ ustedes **hayan hablado**	que eles/ elas/ vocês **tenham falado**	che loro/Loro **abbiano parlato**	que ils/elles **aient parlé**
———	———	*Essere*	*Être*
———	———	che io **sia partito (-a)**	que je **sois parti(-e)**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
—	—	che tu **sia partito** (-a)	que tu **sois parti**(-e)
—	—	che lui/lei/ Lei **sia partito** (-a)	que il/elle **soit parti**(-e)
—	—	che noi **siamo partiti**(-e)	que nous **soyons parti**(-e)s
—	—	che voi **siate partiti**(-e)	que vous **soyez parti** (-e)s
—	—	che loro/Loro **siano partiti**(-e)	que ils/elles **soient parti**(-e)s

Use of the Present Perfect Subjunctive

Did you know?

Until 1934 Italian was the official language of Malta. Even though Italian has since been replaced by English as the official language, today, 68% of the Maltese population speaks Italian, and 10% of the population use it in everyday conversations.

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the present perfect subjunctive is used:

•when a present indicative or future verb in a main clause governs a verb that requires the subjunctive which refers to a past action in a dependent clause, for example:

Sp. ***Estoy feliz que hayas venido***;

Port. ***Estou feliz que tenhas (você tenha) vindo***;

It. *Sono felice che tu sia venuto*;

Fr. *Je suis heureux que tu sois venu.*

- I am happy that you came.

Sp. *Estoy triste que ella me haya dejado*;

Port. *Estou triste que ela tenha me deixado*;

It. *Sono triste che lei mi abbia lasciato*;

Fr. *Je suis triste qu'elle m'ait laissé.*

- I am sad that she left me.

The Imperfect Subjunctive

Formation of the Imperfect Subjunctive

In Spanish and Portuguese the imperfect subjunctive is formed by dropping the Sp. *-ron* and Port. *-ram* of the 3rd person plural of the preterite and adding the proper ending. It is important to remember that the diacritic marks must be put above the stressed vowel in the 1st person plural, which is right before the attached ending of the imperfect subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese (e.g. Sp. que trabaj*á*ramos; Port. que trabalh*á*ssemos - *that we work*).

In Italian and French the imperfect subjunctive is formed by dropping the Fr. *-s* and It. *-sti* of the 2nd person singular of the preterite tense (Fr. *le passé simple*; It. *il passato remoto*) and adding the appropriate endings. In French the diacritic mark must be put above the stressed vowel in the 3rd person singular, which is also before the attached ending of the imperfect subjunctive (e.g. que travaill*â*t - *that he works*). However, Italian does not have any diacritical marks in the imperfect subjunctive.

The following is a table demonstrating the endings of the imperfect subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st variant -ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran; **2nd variant** -se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen;	-sse, -sses, -sse, -ssemos, -sseis, -ssem;	-ssi, -ssi, -sse, -ssimo,-ste, -ssero;	-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent;

NOTE:

In Spanish there are two variants of conjugation for the imperfect subjunctive. The 1st variant is generally used in speech in Spain and Latin America, whereas the 2nd variant is used predominantly in written language and in the country of Spain.

Below is the table illustrating the example of conjugation of regular verbs of all conjugations in the imperfect subjunctive:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 conjugation			
Sp.: hablar	Port.: falar	It.: parlare	Fr.: parler

Spanish		Portugue se	Italian	French
1st variant: que yo hablara	**2nd variant:** que yo hablase	que eu falasse	che io parlassi	que je parlasse
que tu hablaras	que tu hablases	que tu falasses	che tu parlassi	que tu parlasses
que el, ella hablara	que el, ella hablase	que ele\ela falasse	che lui\lei parlasse	que il\elle parlât
que nosotros\as hablá-ramos	que nosotros\as hablá-semos	que nos fal-ássemos	che noi parla-ssimo	que nous parla-ssions
que vosotros\as hablarais	que vosotros\as hablaseis	que vos falásseis	che voi parlaste	que vous parlassiez
que ellos\ellas hablaran	que ellos\ellas hablasen	que eles\elas falassem	che loro parlassero	que ils\elles parlassent
2 conjugation				
vender		vender	vendere	vendre
que vendiera	que vendiese	que vendesse	che vendessi	que vendisse
que vendieras	que vendieses	que vendesses	che vendessi	que vendisses
que vendiera	que vendiese	que vendesse	che vendesse	que vendît

Spanish		Portugue se	Italian	French
que vendie-**ramos**	que vendie-**semos**	que vend-**êssemos**	che vende-ssimo	que vendi-**ssions**
que vendie**rais**	que vendie**seis**	que vend-**êsseis**	che vende**ste**	que vendi**ssiez**
que vendie**ran**	que vendie**sen**	que vende-**ssem**	che vende-**ssero**	que vendi-**ssent**
3 conjugation				
partir		partir	partire	partir
que partie**ra**	que partie**se**	que parti**sse**	che parti**ssi**	que parti**sse**
que partie**ras**	que partie**ses**	que parti**sses**	che parti**ssi**	que parti**sses**
que partie**ra**	que partie**se**	que parti**sse**	che parti**sse**	que partît
que partié-**ramos**	que partie-**semos**	que part-**íssemos**	che parti-ssimo	que parti-**ssions**
que partie**rais**	que partie**seis**	que part**ísseis**	che parti**ste**	que parti**ssiez**
que partie**ran**	que partie**sen**	que parti**ssem**	che parti**ssero**	que parti**ssent**

Irregular Verbs in the Imperfect Subjunctive

All verbs that are considered to be irregular in the preterite are also irregular in the imperfect subjunctive in the Romance languages. (**See The Preterite p.287**)

Use of the Imperfect Subjunctive

In the Romance languages the imperfect subjunctive is used:

- in subordinate or dependent clauses when the verb in the main clause is in the preterite, imperfect indicative, present perfect or conditional. That is to say the imperfect subjunctive expresses emotions, doubts and etc. that occurred in the past. Study the following:

Did you know?

French is one of the prestige languages in Morocco. It is often used in international commerce, media, government and diplomacy. French is taught at all schools. 34% of Moroccans speak French fluently.

Sp. Yo *quería que* él *fuera* al hospital;

Port. Eu *queria que* ele *fosse* para o hospital;

It. *Volevo che* lui *andasse* in ospedale;

Fr. Je *voulais qu'il allât* à l'hôpital.

- I wanted him to go to the hospital.

NOTE:

In French the imperfect subjunctive is used only in written language. In spoken language, the present subjunctive normally replaces the imperfect subjunctive, for example:

*Fr. Je **voulais qu'il aille** à l'hôpital.*

The Pluperfect (Past Perfect) Subjunctive

Overview

The pluperfect subjunctive expresses a completed action that *had* happened before another action in the past in all the cases that the subjunctive would be used in the Romance languages.

It is worth saying that the pluperfect is usually used with conditional perfect independent clauses to show hypothetical situations.

Formation of The Pluperfect Subjunctive

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the pluperfect subjunctive is formed by using the imperfect subjunctive of the verb Sp. **haber**, Port. **ter**, It. **avere** or **essere**, Fr. **avoir** or **être** with the past participle.

Did you know?

Ceuta is is a Spanish autonomous city situated on the north coast of Africa. It is separated from the Spanish mainland by the Strait of Gibraltar and shares land boarder with the Kingdom of Morocco. It has a population of over 80 thousand.

The formula of the pluperfect subjunctive of the Romance languages is presented in the drawing below:

Pluperfect Subjunctive Formula

Spanish ⟶ que haber ⟹ hubiera/hubiese
hubieras/
hubieses
hubiera/hubiese
hubiéramos/
hubiésemos
hubierais/
hubieseis
hubieran/
hubiesen

Portuguese ⟶ que ter ⟹ tivesse
tivesses
tivesse
tivéssemos
tivésseis
tivessem

Italian

che avere ⟹ avessi
avessi
avesse
avessimo
aveste
avessero

che essere ⟹ fossi
fossi
fosse
fossimo
foste
fossero

French

que avoir ⟹ eusse
eusses
eût
eussions
eussiez
eussent

que être ⟹ fusse
fusses
fût
fussions
fussiez
fussent

+ Past
participle

(Sp. *-ado,*
-ido;
Port. *-ado,*
-ido;
It. *-ato, -uto,*
-ito;
Fr. *-é, -u, -i*)
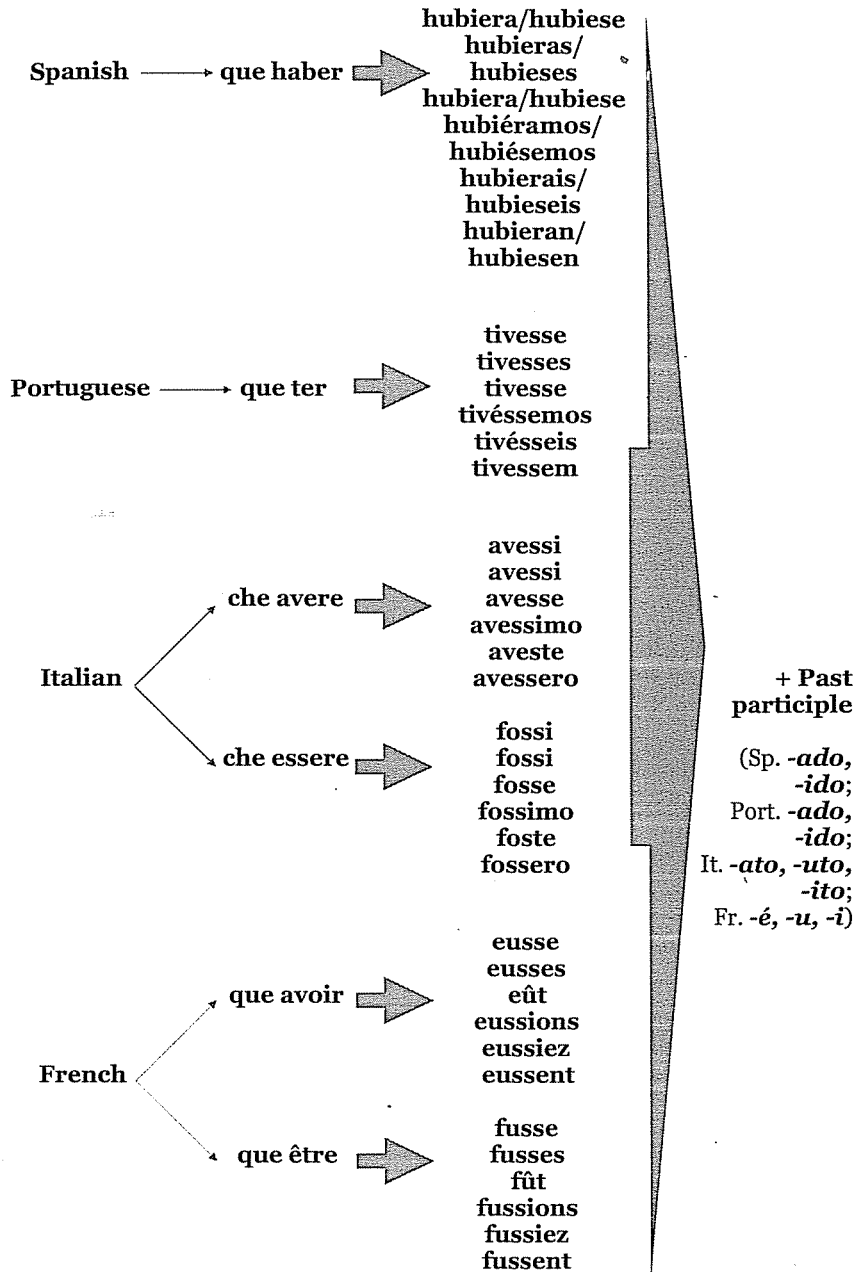
NOTE:

*It should be remembered that in the pluperfect subjunctive as well as other compound tenses, the auxiliary verbs It. **essere**; Fr. **être** (to be) are also used with reflexive and intransitive verbs in Italian and French. Also, the past participle which is used with the auxiliary verb to be (It. **essere**, Fr. **être**) always agrees in gender and number with the subject. This means that the endings change in the feminine and plural forms the way they change in adjectives: in French -e is added to agree with the feminine and -s- is added for the plural, in Italian to agree with the feminine -a is used and -i, -e- with the masculine and feminine plurals respectively.*

Below is the table demonstrating the example of conjugation of verbs in the pluperfect subjunctive:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Haber	*Ter*	*Avere*	*Avoir*
que yo **hubiera/ hubiese hablado**	que eu **tivesse falado**	che io **avessi parlato**	que **j'eusse parlé**
que tú/vos **hubieras/ hubieses hablado**	que tu **tivesses falado**	che tu **avessi parlato**	que tu **eusses parlé**

432

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
que él/ella/ usted **hubiera/ hubiese hablado**	que ele/ela/ você **tivesse falado**	che lui/lei/Lei **avesse parlato**	que il/elle **eût parlé**
que nosotros(as) **hubiéramos/ hubiésemos hablado**	que nós **tivéssemos falado**	che noi **avessimo parlato**	que nous **eussions parlé**
que vosotros(as) **hubierais/ hubieseis hablado**	que vós **tivésseis falado**	che voi **aveste parlato**	que vous **eussiez parlé**
que ellos/ ellas/ustedes **hubieran/ hubiesen hablado**	que eles/ elas/ vocês **tivessem falado**	che loro/Loro **avessero parlato**	que ils/elles **eussent parlé**
		Essere	*Être*
		che io **fossi partito (-a)**	que je **fusse parti (-e)**
		che tu **fossi partito (-a)**	que tu **fusses parti(-e)**
		che lui/lei/Lei **fosse partito(-a)**	que il/elle **fût parti(-e)**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
		che noi **fossimo partiti(-e)**	que nous **fussions parti(-e)s**
		che voi **foste partito(-a)s**	que vous **fussiez parti(-e)s**
		che loro/Loro **fossero partiti(-e)**	que ils/elles **fussent parti(-e)s**

Use of the Pluperfect Subjunctive

In the Romance languages the pluperfect subjunctive is used:

- in completed actions that had happened before another action in the past where the pluperfect is used in clauses that require the subjunctive and the main verb is put in a past tense. Observe the following:

Did you know?

Luanda is the capital and biggest city in Angola. Its metropolitan population is over 6 million. It is the world's 3rd most populous Portuguese-speaking city (behind São Paulo and Rio de Janeiro), and the most populous Portuguese-speaking capital city in the world.

Sp. Ella ***dudaba*** que él ***hubiera/hubiese dicho*** eso;

Port. Ela ***duvidava que*** ele ***tivesse dito*** isso;

It. Lei ***dubitava che*** lui ***avesse detto*** questo;

Fr. Elle ***doutait qu'il eût dit*** cela.

- *She doubted that he had said that.*

Sp. **Parecía que** ella **hubiera/hubiese ido** a Brasil;

Port. **Parecia que** ela **tivesse** (*or* **tinha**) **ido** para o Brasil;

It. **Sembrava che** lei **fosse andata** in Brasile;

Fr. Il **semblait qu'**elle **fût allée** au Brésil.

- *It seemed that she had gone to Brazil.*

NOTE:

In French the pluperfect subjunctive is also used in written language. In conversation, the past subjunctive usually replaces the pluperfect subjunctive, for example:

Fr. *Elle **a regretté qu'**elle **ait dit** cela.*
- *She was sorry that she had said that.*

The Future Subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese

Overview

The future subjunctive is only typical for Spanish and Portuguese. Italian and French do not have this tense. Unlike in Portuguese, the future subjunctive, however, is rarely used in modern Spanish, as it was historically used in complex sentences that require subjunctive clauses in order to express a hypothetical future action. Nevertheless the future subjunctive still appears in legal documents and literary contexts in Spanish, so it might be useful to know it.

Formation of the Future Subjunctive

435

The future subjunctive is formed similarly to the imperfect subjunctive by adding the appropriate endings to the stem of the 3rd person plural of the preterite without the Sp. *-ron* and Port. *-ram* at the end (e.g. Sp. *que trabajare*; Port. *que trabalhar* - *that I work*).

The following is the table illustrating the endings of the future subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese:

	Spanish	Portuguese
1st, 2nd and 3rd person singular	**-re, -res, -re,**	**-r, -res, -r,**
1st, 2nd and 3rd person plural	**-remos, -reis, -ren;**	**-rmos, -rdes, -rem;**

The future subjunctive endings are the same for all the conjugations in Spanish and Portuguese.

There is the table showing the example of conjugation of verbs in the future subjunctive below:

Spanish	Portuguese
hablar	**falar**
yo habla**re** tu habla**res** el\ella habla**re** nosotros\as habla**remos** vosotros\as habla**reis** ellos\ellas habla**ren**	eu fala**r** tu fala**res** ele\ela fala**r** nos fala**rmos** vos fala**rdes** eles\elas fala**rem**

Irregular verbs in the Future Subjunctive

All verbs that are irregular in the 3rd person plural of the preterite are also irregular in the future subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese. (**See The Preterite p.287**)

Use of The Future Subjunctive

In Spanish and Portuguese the future subjunctive is used:

- to indicate eventuality of a future action after words and expressions that refer to a future or uncertain action such as:

Did you know?

Siena is a city in Tuscany, Italy. It is famous for its art, museums, cuisine and the Palio - a horse race, which is held twice a year (on 2 July and 16 August).

Sp. *si*, Port. *se* (*if*),

Sp. *cuando*, Port. *quando* (*when*),

Sp. *luego que*, Port. *logo que* (*after*),

Sp. *así que*, Port. *assim que* (*as soon as*) and

Sp. *en cuanto*, Port. *enquanto* (*as soon as*) and etc.

For example:

Sp. Puedes venir, *si quisieres*.

Port. Podes (você pode) vir, *se quiseres*.

- *You can come, if you wish.*

NOTE:
Spanish and Portuguese future subjunctive is translated to the present indicative in English in this case.

The Future Perfect Subjunctive

Overview

The future perfect subjunctive also exists only in Spanish and Portuguese and it is also rarely used in modern Spanish and may only be seen in legal documents and literary contexts. Generally it is used to express actions that *will have* happened in the future at a certain point in Spanish and Portuguese.

Formation of the Future Perfect Subjunctive

The future perfect subjunctive is formed by using the future subjunctive form of the verb Sp. **haber**, Port. **ter** and *the past participle.*

The drawing below shows the ways of forming the future perfect subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese:

Future Perfect Sunjunctive Formula

Spanish ⟶ haber ⟹	hubiere hubieres hubiere hubiéremos hubiereis hubieren	+ Past participle
Portuguese ⟶ ter ⟹	tiver tiveres tiver tivermos tiverdes tiverem	(Sp. *-ado*, *-ido*; Port. *-ado*, *-ido*; It. *-ato*, *-uto*, *-ito*; Fr. *-é*, *-u*, *-i*)
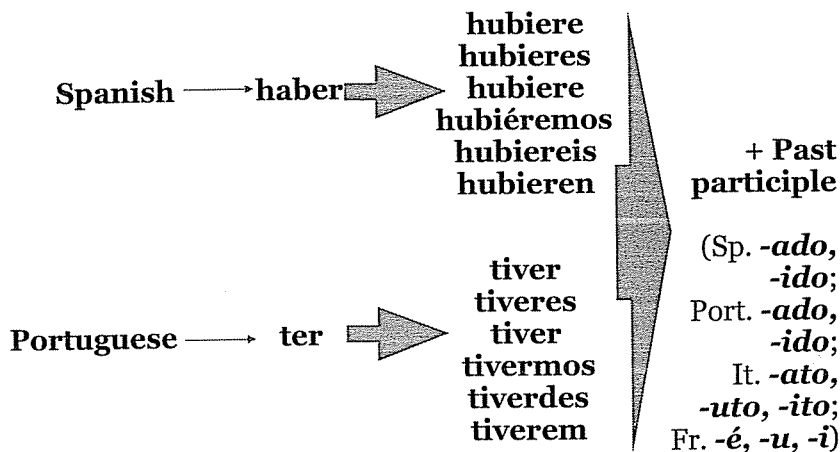
The following is the table that demonstrates the example of conjugation of verbs in the future perfect subjunctive:

Spanish	Portuguese
yo **hubiere hablado**	eu **tiver falado**
tú/vos **hubieres hablado**	tu **tiveres falado**
él/ella/usted **hubiere hablado**	êle/ela/você, o/a senhor(a) **tiver falado**
nosotros(as) **hubiéremos hablado**	nós **tivermos falado**
vosotros(as) **hubiereis hablado**	vós **tiverdes falado**
ellos/ellas/ustedes **hubieren hablado**	eles/elas/ vocês, os/as senhores(as) **tiverem falado**

Use of The Future Perfect Subjunctive

In Spanish and Portuguese the future subjunctive is used:

- to indicate a future action that will happen prior to another action also in the future. In Spanish and Portuguese the future subjunctive normally follows the words such as

Sp. *si*, Port. *se* (*if*),

Sp. *cuando*, Port. *quando* (*when*),

Sp. *luego que*, Port. *logo que* (*after*), and

Sp. *así que*, Port. *assim que* (*as soon as*), as well as other words and expressions that require the use of the subjunctive after them.

Did you know?

French Guiana is an overseas department of France, situated on the north Atlantic coast of South America. It Boarders Brazil and Suriname. French Guiana is home to the Guiana Space Centre (Fr. Le Centre Spatial Guyanais), which is a European spaceport.

However, in modern Spanish, the future perfect subjunctive is replaced by the past perfect subjunctive in most cases. Therefore, along with an example in which the future perfect subjunctive is used, there will be an example of sentence using the past perfect subjunctive as well in Spanish:

Sp. Cuando tenga 40 años, *hubiere comprado* una casa muy grande;

(Cuando tenga 40 años, *hubiera comprado* une casa muy grande).

Port. Quando eu tiver 40 anos, *tiver comprado* uma casa muito grande.

- *When I am 40, I will have bought a very big house.*

NOTE:

However, in Spanish and Portuguese, instead of using the future perfect subjunctive, the future perfect indicative is used in spoken language in this case. Observe the following:

*Sp. Cuando tenga 40 años, **habré comprado** una casa muy grande;*

*(Cuando tenga 40 años, **habré comprado** une casa muy grande).*

*Port. Quando eu tiver 40 anos, **terei comprado** uma casa muito grande.*

- *When I am 40, I will have bought a very big house.*

Sp. Si yo **hubiere terminado** el trabajo cuando llegues, vamos

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hagame el favor de + inf.	faça-me o favor de + inf.	mi faccia il favore di + inf.	faites-moi la faveur de + inf.	*do me a favor*
por favor	por favor	per favore; per piacere	s'il te plait; s'il vous plaît	*please*

juntos al teatro;

(Si yo **hubiera terminado** el trabajo cuando llegues, vamos juntos al teatro).

Port. Se eu **tiver terminado** o trabalho quando chegares (você chegar), vamos juntos ao teatro;

- *If I **have finished** my work by the time you come, we will go to the theater together.*

NOTE:

In this example the Spanish and Portuguese <u>future perfect subjunctive</u> is normally translated to <u>the present perfect</u> in English.

The Sequence of Tenses with the Subjunctive

As there are fewer subjunctive tenses than indicatives in the Romance languages, it might be helpful to demonstrate the most common sequence of these subjunctive tenses with their indicative equivalents. However, it should be mentioned that it as a common pattern in the sequence of tenses rather than a fixed rule since everything depends on contexts while conveying the correct meaning of a phrase.

The following is a table that illustrates the common sequence of indicative tenses with their subjunctive counterparts in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Verbs in main clause		Subjunctive in subordinate clause
present, future, perfect indicative	➡	*present, perfect*
preterite, imperfect, pluperfect indicative, conditional	➡	*imperfect, pluperfect*
command	➡	*present*

NOTE:

Instead of the preterite, the Italian and French conversational past tense (it. <u>passato prossimo</u>; fr. <u>passé composé</u>) - present perfect is followed by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

Sp. ***Estoy orgulloso que*** ella ***haya ganado***;

Port. ***Estou orgulhoso que*** ela ***tenha ganhado***;

It. ***Sono orgoglioso che*** lei ***abbia guadagnato***;

Fr. ***Je suis fier qu'***elle ***ait gagné***.

- I am proud that she won.

Sp. ***Será útil que haga*** los ejercicios por las mañanas;

Port. ***Será útil que ele faça*** os exercícios da manhã;

It. ***Sarà utile che faccia*** gli esercizi la mattina;

Fr. *Il sera utile qu'il fasse* les exercices le matin.

- It will be useful for him to do exercices in the morning.

Did you know?

Quito is the capital city of Ecuador. The popular tourist attraction La Mitad del Mundo (the middle of the world) is located 26 km north of the center of the city. The grounds contain the Monument to the Equator, marking the exact location of the Equator, and the Museo Etnográfico Mitad del Mundo (Etnographic Museum Middle of the Earth).

Sp. Yo le *prohibí que* me *molestara*;

Port. Eu o *proibi que* ele me *incomodasse*;

It. L'*ho proibito che* mi *molestassi*;

Fr. Je lui *ai interdit qu'*il me *dérangeasse* (Je lui *ai interdit qu'*il me *dérange*)

- I prohibited him to disturb me.

The Imperative Mood

The imperative mood is usually used to express commands. The exclamation marks must be used in the imperative. The Romance languages have several categories of commands that include both affirmative and negative commands. They are: **informal commands, formal commands, let's commands** and **indirect commands**.

1. Informal Commands

Affirmative informal commands, are used to tell your friend, family member or child to do something. The singular form of the affirmative informal command, or Sp. **tú**, Port. **tu**, It. **tu**, Fr. **tu** command is identical with the 3rd person of the present indicative in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, whereas in French the 2nd person singular is used for all conjugations except for **-er** verbs where **s** is usually dropped from the 2nd person singular in

order to form the imperative. The plural form of the affirmative informal command (Sp. **vosotros**, Port. **vós**, It. **voi**, Fr. **vous**) is also formed differently in the Romance languages.

NOTE:

To form Italian and French plural form of the affirmative informal command, or Sp. ***vosotros****, Port.* ***vós****, It.* ***voi****, Fr.* ***vous*** *command we should use the 2nd person plural form of the present indicative. Whereas Spanish and Portuguese plural form is attained by replacing the Spanish and Portuguese final -**r** of the infinitive with -**d** in Spanish and -**i** in Portuguese, respectively. It should be noted that Spanish plural form of the affirmative informal command is used only in Spain.*

Observe the example of the singular and plural forms of the affirmative informal commands in the Romance languages:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Singular form of the informal command	¡Habla! ¡Escribe!	Fala! Escreve!	Parla! Scrivi!	Parle! Écris!
Plural form of the informal command	¡Hablad! ¡Escribid!	Falai! Escrevei!	Parlate! Scrivete!	Parlez! Écrivez!

Informal Commands with *Vos* in Latin America

In some regions of Latin America where the Vos form is usually used (esp. in Argentina and Paraguay), one can notice that a singular, familiar imperative is formed by dropping the final -**d** from the **vosotros** form.

While forming the imperative with *vos*, a written accent is put over the final vowel, except the verbs with one syllable in the imperative (e.g. *¡da! - give!*; *¡ve! - see!*). Observe the following:

Spanish		English
Vos	*Tú*	
¡Hablá!	¡Habla!	*Speak!*
¡Probá!	¡Prueba!	*Try!*
¡Escribé!	¡Escribe!	*Write!*
¡Tené!	¡Ten!	*Take!*
¡Volvé!	¡Vuelve!	*Return!*
¡Decí!	¡Di!	*Give!*
¡Dormí!	¡Duerme!	*Sleep!*
¡Viví!	¡Vive!	*Live!*
¡Seguí!	¡Sigue!	*Go on!*

2. Formal Commands

Formal commands, or Sp. **usted** (**ustedes**), Port. **você** (**vocês**), It. **Lei** (**Loro**), Fr. **vous** commands are usually used while addressing people you do not know very well, people older than you or people you show respect, such as teachers, bosses and etc.

Spanish and Portuguese singular form of the formal commands is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding *-e* to the *-ar* (*1st conjugation*) verbs and *-a* to the *-er* and *-ir* (*2nd and 3rd conjugation*) verbs and to form the plural form of the formal commands Spanish *-en* and Portuguese *-em* is added to the *-ar* verbs and *-an* in Spanish and *-am* in Portuguese to the *-er* and *-ir* verbs, respectively.

In Italian *-i* is added to the *-are* verbs and *-a* to the *-ere* and *-ire* verbs for singular form of the formal commands. Italian plural form of the formal commands is obtained by adding *-ino* to the *-are* verbs and *-ano* to the *-ere* and *-ire* verbs.

NOTE:
It should be noted that French has a similar

445

form for the plural informal commands and formal commands.

Study the example of the singular and plural forms of the affirmative formal commands in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Singular form of the formal command	¡Hable! ¡Escriba!	Fale! Escreva!	Parli! Scriva!	Parlez! Écrivez!
Plural form of the formal command	¡Hablen! ¡Escriban!	Falem! Escrevam!	Parlino! Scrivano!	Parlez! Écrivez!

3. Let's Commands

The let's commands, or Sp. **nosotros**, Port. **nós**, It. **noi**, Fr. **nous** commands are normally used when someone suggests an action to be fulfilled by a group of people.

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Let's commands	¡Hablemos! ¡Escribamos!	Falemos! Escrevamos!	Parliamo! Scriviamo!	Parlons! Écrivons!

NOTE:

In Italian and French such commands are formed by simply using the 2nd person plural of the present indicative. Whereas, in order to form the let's commands in

Spanish and Portuguese, you must drop the infinitive ending and add -emos to the -ar (1st conjugation) verbs and -amos to the -er and -ir (2nd and 3rd conjugation) verbs, respectively.

*In French the imperative forms of the verb **aller** are **va, allons** and **allez**. It should be remembered that **va** becomes **vas** and the familiar form of the imperative of the -er verbs adds **s** before such pronouns as **y** and **en**, for example: Vas-y! - Go there!; Parles-en! - Speak about it!*

Spanish and Portuguese Let's Commands with the Verb *Ir*

There is another way to form the let's commands in Spanish and Portuguese, which is by using the following construction:

Spanish	Portuguese
ir + a + infinitive form	*ir + infinitive form*

You must put the verb *ir* in the 2nd form plural of the present indicative in Spanish and Portuguese, for example:

Sp. ¡*Vamos a ver* la película!

Port. *Vamos ver* o filme!

- Let's see the movie.

4. Indirect Commands

Indirect commands are given to an unspecific recipient and are used in a general sense applying to all listeners (**See The**

Present Subjunctive: Indirect Commands in Romance languages p.415).

NOTE:

Spanish, however, has one more type of the indirect commands, which is Infinitive commands. Spanish infinitive commands are generally used in signs and instructions. In order to form the infinitive commands in Spanish, we must use the infinitive form of the verb. Observe the following:

Sp. **Abrir** *aquí.*

- Open here.

Irregular Imperative

There are several verbs that have completely irregular imperative forms in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Ser (tú) ¡Sé! (nosotros) ¡Seamos! (usted) ¡Sea!	Ser (tu) Sê! (nós) Sejamos! (vós) Sede!	Essere (tu) Sii! (voi) Siate! (Lei) Sia! (Loro) Siano!	Être (tu) Sois! , (nous) Soyons! (vous) Soyez!
Estar (tú) ¡Está! (usted) ¡Estad!	Estar (tu) Está! (nós) Estejamos! (vós) Estai!	Stare (tu) Sta'! (voi) State! (Lei) Stia! (Loro) Stiano!	___

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Tener (tú) ¡**Ten!**	**Ter** (vós) **Tende!**	**Tenere** (regular)	**Tenir** (regular)
Hacer (tú) ¡**Haz!**	**Fazer** (nós) **Façamos!**	**Fare** (tu) **Fa'!** (Lei) **Fai!** (Loro) **Facciano!**	**Faire** (regular)
Venir (tú) ¡**Ven!**	**Vir** (vós) **Vinde!**	**Venire** (regular)	**Venir** (regular)
Saber (regular)	**Saber** (regular)	**Sapere** (tu) **Sappi!** (voi) **Sappiate!** (Lei) **Sappia!** (Loro) **Sappiano!**	**Savoir** (tu) **Sache!** (vous) **Sachez!**
Ver (regular)	**Ver** (nós) Vejamos! (vós) Vede!	**Vedere** (regular)	**Voir** (regular)
Dar (regular)	**Dar** (tu) **Dá!** (nós) **Demos!** (vós) **Dai!**	**Dare** (tu) **Da'!**	**Donner** (regular)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Decir (tú) ¡**Di**!	**Dizer** (tu) **Diz**! (nós) **Digamos**! (vós) **Dizei**!	**Dire** (tu) **Di'**!	**Dire** (regular)
Ir (tú) ¡**Ve**!	**Ir** (tu) **Vai**! (nós) **Vamos**! (vós) **Ide**!	**Andare** (tu) **Va'**!	**Aller** (regular)

The Negative Imperative

Negative commands are formed differently in the Romance languages, except Spanish and Portuguese which have similar ways of forming negative commands.

Thus, Spanish and Portuguese negative commands should be regarded simultaneously while Italian and French - separately.

Did you know?

Dili is the capital, largest city and main port of East Timor (Port. Timor-Leste). One of the town's main landmarks is the Cristo Rei of Dili. It is a 27-metre (88.6 ft) tall statue of Jesus located on a hilltop east of the city. Most of landmarks in Dili represent the nation's struggle for independence from Portugal and Indonesia.

Spanish and Portuguese

In order to form Spanish and Portuguese negative commands, whether familiar or polite, one must place a negative word Sp. *no*; Port. *não* in front of the appropriate 2nd or 3rd person of the present subjunctive.

450

NOTE:

It should be mentioned that object pronouns usually precede the verb in negative commands in Spanish and Portuguese.

Sp. ***No abras*** el libro.

Port. ***Não abras*** o livro.

- Do not open the book.

Sp. ***No parta*** mañana.

Port. ***Não parta*** amanhã.

- Do not leave tomorrow.

Sp. ***No lo digas***.

Port. ***Não o diga***.

- Do not say it.

Italian

The negative singular forms of informal commands, or ***tu*** commands are formed by placing a negative word ***non*** before the infinitive in Italian. For example:

It. ***Non aprire*** il libro.

- Do not open the book.

The negative plural forms of informal commands, or *voi* command forms are formed by putting the negative word *non* in front of the affirmative *voi* form.

It. ***Non partite*** domani.

- *Do not leave tomorrow.*

The *let's not commands* are expressed by placing the negative word non before the command in Italian, for example:

It. ***Non parliamo***.

- *Let's not talk.*

French

In French the negative commands are formed by placing *ne* or *n'* in front of the verb and *pas* after it, regardless whether the negative commands are informal or formal. Like in Spanish and Portuguese, in French object pronouns also precede the verb in negative commands. Observe the following:

Fr. ***N'ouvre pas*** le livre.

- *Do not open the book.*

Fr. ***Ne partez pas*** demain.

- *Do not leave tomorrow.*

Fr. ***Ne le dis pas***.

- *Do not say it.*

Softened Commands in the Romance Languages

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French there special formulas that can be used to soften the commands to sound more polite.

Below are the most common patterns to use in polite speech:

Sp. *Hagame el favor de abrir* la ventana;

Port. *Faça-me o favor de abrir* a janela;

It. *Mi faccia il favore di aprire* la finestra;

Fr. *Faites-moi la faveur d'ouvrir* la fenêtre.

- Do me a favor - open the window.

Did you know?

Trieste is a city in northeast Italy, which occupies a narrow strip of land between the Adriatic Sea and Slovenia. Italian, Germanic and Slavic cultural influences are visible in its layout. The most iconic landmark of the city is Unity of Italy Square (It. Piazza Unità d'Italia). It is the main square in Trieste located between the 19th-century avenues and the old medieval city.

Sp. Cierra la puerta, *por favor*;

Port. Fecha a porta, *por favor*;

It. Chiudi la porta, *per favore*;

Fr. Ferme la porte, *s'il te plaît*.

- Close the door, please.

Alternatively softened commands can be expressed as questions in the Romance languages. For example:

Sp. *¿Me da un poco de agua?*

Port. *Você me dá um pouco de água?*

It. *Mi dai un po' d'acqua?*

Fr. *Vous me donnez un peu d'eau?*

- Would you give me some water?

The Present Participle (Gerund)

Overview

The present participles (gerunds) are used to indicate several continuous actions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Generally speaking the present participle (gerund) expresses the concept of *"while doing"*, *"in doing"* or *"by doing"* in the Romance languages.

The present participle (gerund) in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian ends in Sp. *-ando, -iendo*; Port. *-ando, -endo, -indo*; It. *-ando, -endo* and Fr. *-ant* in French, which is the equivalent to the English form of *-ing*.

It should be noted that nouns and adjectives that end in *-ing* in English cannot be expressed by a gerund in the Romance languages.

Formation of the Present Participle (Gerund)

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the present participle (gerund) is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding *-ando* to the stem of *-ar* (it. *-are*) verbs and add Spanish *-iendo* to the stem of *-er* and *-ir* verbs and Italian *-endo* to the verb root

of **-ere** and **-ire** verbs. In Portuguese the ending **-endo** is added to stem of **-er** verbs and **-indo** to the stem of **-ir** verbs respectively.

Whereas, in French, the present participle is formed by dropping the ending -ons from the 1st person plural of the present tense and adding the present participle (gerund) ending **-ant** in all the conjugations.

Below is a table presenting how the present participle (gerund) is formed:

	1st conj.	*2nd conj.*	*3rd conj.*
Spanish	**-ar; -ando** (hablar – habl**ando**)	**-er; -iendo** (vender – vend**iendo**)	**-ir; -iendo** (partir – part**iendo**)
Portuguese	**-ar; -ando** (falar – fal**ando**)	**-er; -endo** (vender – vend**endo**)	**-ir; -indo** (partir – part**indo**)
Italian	**-are; -ando** (parl**are** – parl**ando**)	**-ere; -endo** (vend**ere** – vend**endo**)	**-ire; -endo** (part**ire** – part**endo**)
French	**-er; -ant** (parl**er** – parl**ant**)	**-re; -ant** (vend**re** – vend**ant**)	**-ir; -ant** (partir – part**ant**)

Irregularities in Formation of the Present Participle (Gerund) in Spanish and Italian

Unlike Portuguese and French, Spanish and Italian have a considerable number of irregularities in formation of the present participle (gerund), which should be remembered by learners.

Spanish

Unstressed *i* changes to *y*

In *-er* and *-ir* verbs the stem of which is ended in a vowel, for example: *cre-er*, *le-er*, *hu-ir*, *constru-ir*, *-iendo* changes to *-yendo* to form the present participle (gerund). Study the following:

> **Did you know?**
>
> La Paz is the de facto national capital and the 3rd most populous city in Bolivia. It is the highest administrative capital in the world situated at more than 3500 meters above sea level.

Cre**er**: cre**yendo** - *believing*;

Le**er**: le**yendo** - *reading*;

Hu**ir**: hu**yendo**- *fleeing*;

Constru**ir**: constru**yendo** - *constructing*.

Ir: **yendo** - *going*.

Orthographic changes

There are some verbs that change their stem before adding the present participle ending in order to preserve the pronunciation. *-ir* verbs that change their stem in the 3rd person preterite (*e - i*, *o - u*) will keep the same stem-change in the present participle (gerund) form in Spanish. The verb ***poder*** also maintains that preterite stem-change while forming the present participle (gerund). Observe the following:

Infinitive	Preterite (the 3rd person)	Present Participle (Gerund)

conseguir	consiguió	consiguiendo
decir	dijo	diciendo
mentir	mintió	mintiendo
pedir	pidió	pidiendo
repetir	repitió	repitiendo
seguir	siguió	siguiendo
venir	vino	viniendo
poder	pudo	pudiendo
dormir	durmió	durmiendo
morir	murió	muriendo

Italian

In Italian, most verbs form the present participle (gerund) with the root of the 1st person singular (*io*) of the present indicative form without the personal ending.

Infinitive	Root (the 1st person)	Present Participle (Gerund)
bere	bev	bevendo
dire	dic	dicendo
fare	fac	facendo
tradurre	traduc	traducendo

Use of Present Participle (Gerund)

Present participle (gerund) is generally used:

• **To indicate several ongoing actions:**

Present participles (Gerunds) can be used to express several continuous actions that occur at the same time in the Romance languages.

NOTE:

In French, in this case, the present participle (gerund) is used after the

457

preposition en.

> **Did you know?**
>
> *Vanuatu is a Pacific island nation situated in the South Pacific Ocean. The official languages are Bislama, French and English. The city is home to the Vanuatu National Museum situated in the capital, Port Vila. It specializes in exhibits of the nation's Melanesian culture.*

Sp. Ella leía el libro, **comiendo**;

Port. Ela leu o livro, **comendo**;

It. Lei ha letto il libro, **mangiando**;

Fr. Elle a lu le livre, **en mangeant**.

- **While eating**, she read the book.

Sp. Me miró **sonriendo**;

Port. Ele olhou para mim **sorrindo**;

It. Mi guardò **sorridendo**;

Fr. Il me regarda **en souriant**.

- *He looked at me **smiling**.*

However, the French preposition **en** plus the present participle is not used after the verbs **commencer** and *finir*. The preposition **par** with the infinitive is normally used with these verbs (e.g. Elle **a fini par travailler** - *She finally started to work*; Il **a commencé par faire la cuisine** - *He began by cooking*.).

• **In place of a relative clause**

Present participles (Gerunds) are also used to modify or qualify a noun, in place of a relative clause in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

NOTE:

In French, this usage is common in official language. In spoken language the relative clause is more likely to be used.

Sp. El hombre **cruzando** (que está cruzando) la calle es mi padre;

Port. O homem **cruzando** (que está cruzando) a rua é o meu pai;

It. L'uomo **attraversando** (che sta attraversando) la strada è mio padre;

Fr. Un homme **traversant** (qui est en train de traverser) la rue est mon père.

- The *man* **crossing** *the street is my father.*

NOTE:

This use of the present participle (gerund) is only possible in the case of action verbs. A relative clause must be used with other verbs in the Romance languages. Study the following:

Sp. *un libro* **que describe** *la historia de su vida;*

Port. *um livro* **que descreve** *a história de sua vida;*

It. *un libro* **che descrive** *la storia della sua vita;*

Fr. *un livre* **qui décrit** *l'histoire de sa vie.*

- *a book* **that describes** *the story of his · life.*

- **To express the continuous tenses. (See The Continuous Tenses p.465).**

459

No Use of Present Participle (Gerund)

There are some situations in which English uses words with -ing ending that cannot be expressed by a gerund in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

• As a verbal noun

The infinitive is used, rather than the gerund in order to form a verbal noun. Study the following:

<div align="center">

Sp. Me gusta **nadar**;

Port. Eu gosto de **nadar**;

It. Mi piace **nuotare**;

Fr. J'aime **nager**.

- *I like **swimming***.

</div>

• As an adjective

In English, the present participle (the -*ing* form) is used to express an adjective-like function (e.g. *a smiling girl*). In the Romance languages, the present participle (gerund) cannot be used to convey it. Instead, there is a number of ways to reflect this. Observe the following:

1. By adding the appropriate ending in order to make an adjective from some verbs. Thus, adjectives are formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding the appropriate personal ending to the stem of a verb.

    Below is a table showing the endings that transform some verbs into adjectives in the Romance languages:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st conj.	-ante	-ante	-ante	-ant(e)
2nd conj.	-iente or -ente	-ente	-ente	
3rd conj.				

NOTE:

*In this case, the present participle is used in French (**See The Present Participle p. 454**). Also, if the French present participle is used as an adjective, it agrees with the noun it modifies.*

Sp. madre **sonriente;**

Port. mãe **sorridente;**

It. madre **sorridente;**

Fr. mère **souriante.**

*- **smiling mother.***

2. By using the following prepositional phrase:

Sp. **de**, Port. **de**, It. **di**, Fr. **de** (**d'**) + *a **noun** or **infinitive**.*

Sp. una clase **de equitación;**

Port. uma aula **de equitação;**

It. una lezione **di equitazione;**

Fr. une leçon **d'équitation.**

*- a **riding** lesson.*

- **After prepositions**

With prepositions, the infinitive must be used rather than the present participle (gerund) in the Romance languages. (**See Use of The Infinitive p.469**).

How to Avoid Using the Present Participle (Gerund)

In order to avoid using the gerund one should use the following words to start the sentence in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cuando	quando	quando	quand	*when*
mientras	enquanto	mentre	tandis que	*while*
pues (que), como	pois, como	poiché, siccome	puisque, comme	*since*
aunque, bien que	ainda que, se bem que, embora, mesmo que	sebbene, benché	même si, bien que	*although, even though*
no obstante	não obstante	nonostante	nonobstant	*notwithstanding*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
a pesar de	apesar de	malgrado	malgré	*in spite of*

NOTE:

The majority of these words are followed by the subjunctive in the Romance languages. (See The Subjunctive Mood p.387).

Sp. **Cometiendo** errores, yo aprendo - **Cuando cometo** errores, yo aprendo;

Port. **Cometendo** erros, eu aprendo - **Quando** eu **cometo** erros, eu aprendo;

It. **Commettendo** errori, io imparo. - **Quando faccio** degli errori, imparo;

Fr. **En faisant** des erreurs, j'apprends - **Quand** je **fais** des erreurs, j'apprends.

- *By **making** mistakes, I learn; (**When I make** mistakes, I learn).*

Did you know?

Belém is the capital and the largest city of the state of Pará in Brazil. It is the gateway to the River Amazon. Belém is known as the City of Mango Trees (Port. Cidade das Mangueiras) owing to the great number of those trees all over the city.

Sp. Hablaban, **cocinando**. - **Mientras cocinaban**, hablaban;

Port. Falavam, **cozinhando**. - **Enquanto eles cozinhavam**, eles falavam;

It. Parlavano, **cucinando**. - **Mentre cucinavano**, parlavano;

Fr. Ils parlaient, **en cuisinant**. - **Tandis qu'**ils

cuisinaient, ils parlaient.

- *While* cooking, they talked.

The Compound Present Participle (Gerund) in Portuguese and Italian

The compound present participle (gerund) is particular only to Portuguese and Italian and doesn't exist in Spanish or French.

Formation of the Compound Present Participle (Gerund) in Portuguese and Italian

The Portuguese and Italian compound present participle (gerund) is formed with the present participle of the verbs Port. *ter*; It. *avere* or *essere* plus the past participle of the action verb.

Below is the formula of the compound present participle in Portuguese and Italian:

Portuguese	Italian
tendo + Past Participle	avendo or essendo + Past Participle
(*tendo comido* - having eaten)	(*avendo mangiato* - having eaten) (*essendo stato* - having been)

Use of the Compound Present Participle in Portuguese and Italian

464

Like in English, in Portuguese and Italian the compound present participle is used to indicate contemporaneity of several actions where one action precedes another. Something also worth noting is that the compound present participle never follows a preposition. For example:

Port. **Tendo terminado** a carta, ela a levou para a estação de correios.

It. **Avendo terminato** la lettera, lei l'ha portata all'ufficio postale.

- **Having finished** the letter, she brought it to the post office.

The Continuous Tenses

Formation of Continuous Tenses

The progressive tenses show that the action of the verb is in the process of taking place in the Romance languages. In Spanish, Brazilian Portuguese and Italian, the continuous tenses are formed with the present participle (gerund) of the verb with an appropriate form of the verb Sp. **estar**; Port. **estar**; It. **stare**. In European Portuguese the following construction is preferred: **estar a + Infinitive**.

Whereas in French, there is only one combination used in order to express progressive tense, which is: the present tense of the verb **être + en train de + Infinitive**.

NOTE:

However, the French present simple along with the adverb **maintenant** *(now) is frequently used in order to express the continuous action.*

Sp. **Está trabajando**;

465

Did you know?

Rwanda is a landlocked state in Central and East Arica and one of the smallest countries in Africa. This country has a lot of lakes, the largest being Lake Kivu. It is one of the deepest lakes in the world with a depth of 480 meters.

Port. Ele *está trabalhando*;

It. *Sta lavorando*;

Fr. Il *est en train de travailler* (Il *travaille maintenant*).

- He *is working*.

The Romance languages have a different number of progressive tenses, except for French, which has only one progressive form (the present progressive). Nevertheless, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the continuous forms are most commonly used with the present indicative and the imperfect indicative, while the preterite, the present perfect, the past perfect, the pluperfect, the future, the present subjunctive, the imperfect subjunctive, and the conditional are rarely used.

Thus, regard the continuous constructions that demonstrate the present and imperfect indicative of the 1st person singular of the verb Sp. *trabajar*; Port. *trabalhar*; It. *lavorare*; Fr. *travailler* - to work.

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Present Contin uous	**estoy trabajando** (I am working)	**estou trabalhand o** (I am working)	**sto lavorando** (I am working)	**je suis en train de travailler** (I am working)
Imperf ect Contin uous	**estaba trabajando** (I was working at the moment)	**estava trabalhand o** (I was working at the moment)	**stavo lavorando** (I was working at the moment)	____

Use of Continuous Tenses

Like in English, in the Romance languages continuous tenses are normally used with action verbs in order to express that an action *is taking place.*

The Present Continuous

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the present continuous is primarily used:

- **for an action that is taking place at the present moment.** For example:

Sp. ¿Qué **estas haciendo?** - **Estoy comiendo;**

Braz. Port. O que você **está fazendo?** - Eu **estou comendo**

(Euro. Port. O que você **está a fazer?** - Eu **estou a comer**);

It. Che cosa **stai facendo?** - **Sto mangiando;**

Fr. Qu'est-ce que tu **fais maintenant?** - Je **suis en train de manger.**

*- What **are** you **doing?** - I **am eating.***

The Imperfect Continuous

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian this tense is used similarly as the present continuous, but referring to a past time.

NOTE:

In French, the present perfect or imperfect indicative is used in this case. Observe the following:

*Sp. Cuando llegué **estaba leyendo**;*
*Port. Quando cheguei ela **estava lendo**;*
*It. Quando sono arrivato **stava leggendo**;*
*Fr. Quand je suis arrivé elle **lisait**.*
*- When I arrived she **was reading**.*

The Infinitive

Overview

The Infinitive is the basic form of the verb in any language. In English, the infinitive is preceded by the preposition *to* (e.g. *to go, to speak, to do* etc.), while in the Romance languages, infinitives are separated into three conjugations according to their endings. In Spanish and Portuguese, infinitives have the following endings: *-AR*, *-ER*, and *-IR*; Italian infinitives are ended in *-ARE*, *-ERE*, and *-IRE* and French infinitive forms have the endings *-ER*, *-RE*, and *-IR*.

The infinitive forms show what an action is, but show nothing about who is doing the action or at what time the action is performed. In the Romance languages, in order to conjugate a verb, one needs to remove the infinitive ending and add the appropriate tense's ending to the stem of the verb.

Below is a table helping to find the stem from the infinitive of the regular verbs in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	1st conj. (-AR, -ARE, -ER)		**2nd conj.** (-ER, -ERE, -RE)		**3rd conj.** (-IR, -IRE)	
	Infinitive	*Stem*	*Infinitive*	*Stem*	*Infinitive*	*Stem*
Spanish	hablar	habl-	vender	vend-	partir	part-

468

Portugu ese	fal**ar**	fal-	vend**er**	vend-	part**ir**	part-
Italian	parl**are**	parl-	vend**ere**	vend-	part**ire**	part-
French	parl**er**	parl-	vend**re**	vend-	part**ir**	part-

Use of The Infinitive

The infinitive is generally used:

• As a noun

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, when a verb functions as a noun, the infinitive must be used, whereas in English the gerund (verb with *-ing* ending) is used in this case. In the Romance languages, the gerund is only used to express an action in progress. The infinitive can be used as the subject of a sentence or the object of another verb or preposition in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Study the following:

Did you know?

Barranquilla is a city in Colombia located near the Caribbean Sea. Barranquilla is the largest city in the region, with a population of over 1.2 million people. It became Colombian's main port and, due to its high level of modernity, earned the city the nickname "Colombia's Golden Gate" (Sp. La Puerta de Oro de Colombia).

Sp. *Viajar* es alegre y educativo;

Port. *Viajar* é alegre e educacional;

It. *Viaggiare* è allegro ed educativo;

Fr. *Voyager* est allègre et éducatif.

- *Travelling* is enjoyable and educational.

Sp. A ella Le *gusta nadar*;

Port. Ela **gosta de nadar**;

It. Le **piace nuotare**;

Fr. Elle **aime nager**.

- *She **likes swimming***.

NOTE: *In Spanish one can use the definite article **el** in front of an infinitive as the subject of a sentence in order to make the sentence more formal, for example:*

Sp. ***El Viajar*** *es alegre y educativo*

- **After conjugated verbs without a preposition**

If one verb follows another, the second verb takes the infinitive when the subject of the first verb is the same as that of the second in the Romance languages. It is common for the modal verbs (e.g. *can, should, must*), which are usually followed by an infinitive with no in-between preposition and also for verbs expressing feelings, necessity, and accomplishment in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Observe the following:

Sp. ***Puedo hablar*** con él;

Port. Eu ***posso falar*** com ele;

It. ***Posso parlare*** con lui;

Fr. Je ***peux parler*** avec lui.

- *I **can talk** to him*.

Below is the list of the most common verbs which are followed by an infinitive without preposition in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
deber	dever	dovere	devoir	*must, should*
poder	poder	potere	pouvoir	*to be able to, can*
saber	saber	sapere	savoir	*to know how to*
querer	querer	volere	vouloir	*to want to*
preferir	preferir	preferire	préférer	*to prefer to*
amar	amar	amare	aimer	*to love to*
desear	desejar	desiderare	désirer	*to desire to*
lograr	alcançar	raggiungere	attaindre	*to manage to*
lamentar	lamentar	piangere	pleurer	*to regret*
pensar	pensar	*pensare di	penser	*to plan to, to intend to*
esperar	esperar	*sperare di	espérer	*to hope to, to expect to*
afirmar	afirmar	affermare	affirmer	*to affirm*
parecer	aparecer	apparire	apparaître	*to seem*

NOTE:

*In Italian the verbs **pensare** and **sperare** are followed by the preposition **di**, which should be remembered.*

• **After conjugated verbs with a preposition:**

In the Romance languages certain verbs are followed by prepositions and there is no common principal in terms of which prepositions follow which verbs, and therefore, this has to be memorized on a case-by-case basis. Nevertheless, there are a few generalizations that may help learners:

1. **Verbs followed by the preposition *a* (*Spanish*, *Portuguese* and *Italian*) and *à* (*French*) + *an infinitive*.**

Verbs meaning *beginning* and verbs that express preparation or readiness to perform an action or verbs of movement towards someplace or goal are usually followed by *a* (*à*) plus an infinitive in the Romance languages.

Below is the list of the most frequent verbs followed by *a* (*à*) + *infinitive* in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ayudar a	ajudar a	aiutare a	aider à	*to help to*
aprender a	aprender a	apprendere a, imparare a	apprendre à	*to learn how to*
enseñar a	ensinar a	insegnare a	enseigner à	*to teach how to*
comenzar a, empezar a	começar a	cominciare a iniziare a	commencer à	*to begin to, to start to*
ponerse a	pôr-se a	mettersi a	se mettre à	*to start to, to set about*

472

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
invitar a	convidar a	invitare a	inviter à	*to invite to*
preparar se *para*	preparer -se a	preparar si a	se préparer à	*to prepare to*
dedicarse a	dedicar- se a	dedicarsi a	se consacrer à, se vouer à	*to dedicate oneself to*
decidirse a	decidir- se a	decidersi a	se décider à	*to decide to, to make up one's mind*
volver a	voltar a	tornare a	retourner à	*to do something again*
acostumb rarse a	acostum ar-se a	abituarsi a	s'habituer à	*to become accustome d to*
obligar a	obrigar a	obbligare a	obliger à	*to oblige*
*dudar	*hesitar	esitare a	hésiter à	*to hesitate*

NOTE:

In Spanish and Portuguese the verbs **dudar** *and* **hesitar** *are used without any prepositions.*

Sp. Ella **comenzó** (**empezó**) *a sonreír*;

Port. Ela **começou a sorrir**;

It. Ha **cominciato (*iniziato*) a sorridere**;

Fr. Elle **a commencé à sourire**.

- *She **started to smile***.

Sp. **Aprendo a hablar** una lengua extranjera;

Port. Eu **aprendo a falar** uma língua estrangeira;

It. **Imparo a parlare** una lingua straniera;

Fr. J'**apprends à parler** une langue étrangère.

- *I **learn how to speak** a foreign language*.

2. **Verbs followed by the preposition** *de* (*Spanish, Portuguese* and *French*) and *di* (*Italian*) + **an infinitive**.

In the Romance languages, the preposition Sp., Port., Fr. *de* and It. *di* is used after verbs that indicate movement away from, like refraining from, which corresponds to English "*from*" + *the gerund*, and also used after verbs meaning "*to stop*" and "*to finish*".

Below is the list of the most frequent verbs followed by *de* (*di*) + *infinitive* in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
acabar de	acabar de	____	venir de	*to have just done smth.*
acordarse de	lembrar- se de	ricordarsi di	se rappeler de	*to remember*

474

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
alegrarse de	alegrar-se de	rallegrarsi di	se réjouir de	*to be happy to*
arrepenti rse de	arrepend er-se de	pentirsi di	se repentir de, regretter de	*to regret, to repent of*
cansarse de	cansar-se de	stancarsi di	se lasser de, se fatiguer de	*to tire of, to grow tired of*
dejar de, parar de, cesar de	deixar de, parar de, cessar de	smettere di, cessare di	arrêter de, cesser de	*to stop doing smth.*
depender de	depender de	dipendere da	dépendre de	*to depend on*
jactarse de	vangloriar -se de	vantarsi di	se vanter de	*to boast of*
olvidarse de	esquecer de	dimentica re di	oublier de	*to forget*
quejarse de	queixar-se de	lamentars i di	se plaindre de	*to complain of*
terminar de	terminar de	finire di	finir de	*to finish (doing smth.*
tratar de	*tentar	tentare di, cercare di	tenter de, essayer de	*to try to*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
abstenerse de	abster-se de	astenersi da	se retenir de	to refrain from
disuadir de	dissuadir de	dissuadere da	dissuader de	to dissuade from
contempl ar de	contempl ar de	contempl are di	envisager de	to contempl ate doing smth.

NOTE:

In Portuguese, the verb **tentar** *is used without any prepositions.*

In Italian, the meaning "having just done something" is conveyed by the word **appena** *and the verb* **finire** *in the present perfect indicative (e.g.* **Ho appena finito la mia lettera.** *- I have just finished my letter.)*

Sp. Ella **trató de convencerlo**;

Port. Ela **tentou convencê-lo**;

It. **Ha cercato (tentato) di convincerlo**;

Fr. Elle **a essayé (tenté) de le convaincre**.

- She tried to convince him.

Sp. **Acuérdate de telefonarme** más tarde hoy!

Braz. Port. **Lembre-se** (Euro. Port. **Lembra-te**) **de** me **telefonar** mais tarde hoje!

It. *Ricordati di telefonarmi* piu tardi oggi!

Fr. *Rappele-toi de* me *téléphoner* plus tard aujourd'hui!

- *Remember to call me later today!*

Sp. *Acabo de llegar* en casa;

Port. *Acabei de chegar* em casa;

It. *Sono appena arrivato* a casa;

Fr. Je *viens d'arriver* à la maison.

- *I have just arrived home.*

NOTE:

*In Spanish **acabar** must be used in the present simple indicative in order to express that someone has just done something, while the Portuguese verb **acabar** is used in the preterite in this case.*

3. **Verbs followed by the preposition *por* (*Spanish and Portuguese*), *per* (*Italian*) and *par* (*French*) + *an infinitive*.**

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, these prepositions are found with verbs indicating *to begin* or *end by* or *opt to*.

Observe the list of the most frequent verbs followed by Sp., Port. *por*; It. *per*; Fr. *par* + *infinitive* in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
acabar por, terminar por	acabar por, terminar por	finire per	finir par	to end (by doing something)

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
optar por	**optar por**	**optare per**	***opter pour**	*to opt to*

NOTE:

*In French, the verb **opter** (to opt for) is used with the preposition **pour**.*

Sp. Él siempre **termina** (**acaba**) **por decir** eso;

Port. Ele sempre **termina** (**acaba**) **por dizer** isso;

It. Lui finisce sempre **per dire** questo;

Fr. Il finit toujours **par dire** cela.

- *He always **ends by saying** this.*

Sp. Al final **optó por aprender** francés;

Port. No final, ela **optou por aprender** francês;

It. Alla fine, **ha optato per imparare** francese;

Fr. En fin de compte, elle **a opté pour apprendre** français.

- *In the end she **opted to learn** French.*

4. **Verbs followed by the preposition *en* (*Spanish*) and *em* (*Portuguese*) + *an infinitive*.**

This matches the English *verb* plus *in* or *on* plus *gerund*. The list of verbs that are followed by the preposition sp. *en*, port. *em* are quite similar in Spanish and Portuguese, whereas, in French and Italian, there are no strict rules in terms of which preposition is used with which verb and so are best learned on their own in this case.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
insistir en	insistir em	insistere per	insister pour	*to insist on*
persistir en	persistir em	persistere in	persister à	*to persist*
pensar en	pensar em	pensare di	penser à	*to think about, to contemplate doing smth.*

Sp. Ella *insistió en venir* con ellos;

Port. Ela *insistiu em vir* com eles;

It. Ha *insistito per venire* con loro;

Fr. Elle *a insisté pour venir* avec eux.

- *She insisted on coming with them.*

5. **Verbs followed by the preposition *con* (*Spanish*) and *com* (*Portuguese*) and *de* (*French*) and *di* (*Italian*) + an infinitive.**

   Spanish and Portuguese have a few common verbs that are used with ***con*** and ***com*** plus an infinitive, while the same list of verbs in Italian and French are used with the prepositions ***de*** and ***di*** plus an infinitive. Observe the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
amenazar con	ameaçar com	minacciare di	menacer de	*to threaten with (to)*

479

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
contar con	contar com	contare di	compter de	*to rely on, to remember*
soñar con	*<u>sonhar em</u>	sognare di	rêver de	*to think about, to contemplate doing smth.*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese, the verb **sonhar** (to think about) is used with the preposition **em**.*

Sp. Él **sueña con vivir** en Brasil;

Port. Ele **sonha em viver** no Brasil;

It. Lui **sogna di vivere** in Brasile;

Fr. Il **rêve de vivre** au Brésil.

*- He **dreams of living** in Brazil.*

6. **Verbs followed by the preposition** *que* (*Spanish* and *Portuguese*) **and** *de* (*French*) **and** *di* (*Italian*) **+ an infinitive.**

Below are the verbs and verbal combinations that express necessity and are used with the preposition *que* in Spanish and Portuguese and *de* and *di* in French and Italian.

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
tener que	ter que	avere bisogno di	avoir besoin de	to have to
hay que	tem que	*bisogna	*il faut	must (used impersona lly)

NOTE:

In Italian and French the modal verb must which is used impersonally does not require any preposition at all.

Sp. **Tengo que partir** ahora;

Port. **Tenho que partir** agora;

It. **Ho bisogno di partire** ora;

Fr. J'**ai besoin de partir** maintenant.

- I have to leave now.

Other verbs that are used with prepositions in the Romance languages must be learned individually since they are followed by different prepositions, which makes it difficult to combine them.

° **After independent prepositions:**

In the Romance languages some prepositions are used independently, which means that they are not associated with a preceding verb.

Below are the most common independent prepositions after which the infinitive is used in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
antes de	antes de	prima di	avant de	*before*
para, con el fin de	para, a fim de	per, allo scopo di	pour, afin de	*in order to*
sin	sem	senza	sans	*without*

Sp. Él salió *sin mirar*me;

Port. Ele saiu *sem olhar* para mim;

It. Egli è uscito *senza guardar*mi;

Fr. Il est sorti *sans* me *regarder*.

- *He went out without looking at me.*

Sp. Lo dije *para recordar*le;

Port. Eu disse isso *para lembrá*-lo;

It. Ho detto che *per ricordar*gli;

Fr. Je l'ai dit *pour* lui *rappeler*.

- *I said it to remind him.*

- **After set phrases containing a preposition:**

There are also a few set phrases consisting of the verbs *to have* or *to be*, a noun or an adjective and a preposition after which

an infinitive is used in the Romance languages. This pattern corresponds to English *"to have/to be + adjective or noun + preposition +infinitive or gerund"*. The following is a formula of such set phrases in the Romance languages.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
tener (ser/ estar) + adjective/ noun + preposition + infinitive	ter (ser/estar) + adjective/ noun + preposition + infinitive	avere (essere/ stare) + adjective/ noun + preposition + infinitive	avoir (être) + adjective/ noun + preposition + infinitive

This occurs with a few common set phrases in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
tener tiempo para	**ter tempo para**	**avere il tempo di**	**avoir le temps de**	*to have time*
tener ganas de	**ter vontade de**	**avere voglia di**	**avoir envie de**	*to have an inclinatio n (to feel like)*
tener vergüenz a	**ter vergonha de**	**avere vergogna di**	**avoir honte de**	*to be ashamed*
tener miedo de	**ter medo**	**avere paura di**	**avoir peur de**	*to be afraid of*
tener prisa	**ter pressa**	**avere fretta di**	**avoir hate de**	*to be in a hurry*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
tener la oportuni dad de	ter a oportuni dade de	avere la possibilit à di	avoir la possibilit é de	*to have an opportuni ty to*
tener la suerte de / ser afortuna do	ter a sorte de / ser sortudo	avere la fortuna di / essere fortunati	avoir de la chance / être chanceux	*to be lucky*
ser digno de .	ser digno de	esser degno di	être digne de	*to be worthy of*
ser / estar contento	ser / estar contente	essere / stare contento di	être content de	*to be glad to*
ser / estar feliz	ser / estar feliz	essere / stare felice di	être heureux de	*to be happy to*

Sp. *Tengo la suerte de vivir aquí*;

Port. *Tenho a sorte de viver aqui*;

It. *Ho la fortuna di vivere qui*;

Fr. *J'ai de la chance de vivre ici.*

- *I am lucky to live here.*

Sp. *Tengo ganas de ir a la playa*;

Port. *Tenho vontade de ir à praia*;

It. *Ho voglia di andare in spiaggia*;

484

Fr. *J'ai envie d'aller à la plage.*

- I feel like going to the beach.

- **After expression with to be plus an adjective:**

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, if used impersonally, expressions with Sp., Port. *ser* and It. *essere* + *an adjective* are usually followed by an infinitive, with no preceding preposition, while in French the preposition *de* is placed before an infinitive in this case. Also, the pronoun *Il* must be put before *être* (*to be*) when conjugated in French (e.g. *il est*), which is equivalent to English "*It is*". Observe the formula:

Spanish, Portuguese and Italian	French
Sp., Port. *ser*/It. *essere* + *an adjective* + *infinitive*	*Il* + *être* + *adjective* + *de* + *infinitive*

Sp. *Es fácil cantar*;

Port. *É fácil cantar*;

It. *È facile cantare*;

Fr. *Il est facile de chanter.*

- It is easy to sing.

Sp. *Es difícil traducir* este texto;

Port. *É difícil traduzir* este texto;

It. *È difficile tradurre* questo testo;

Fr. *Il est difficile de traduire* ce texte.

- It is difficult to translate this text.

NOTE:

*Nevertheless, when this type of combination describes something particular or personal, **de** is used in Spanish and Portuguese and **di** in Italian before the infinitive. French always retains **de** before the infinitive in this sort of expressions. It is worth saying that it happens basically with such adjectives as <u>easy</u> and <u>difficult</u>. Study the following:*

Sp. ¿Esta canción? Es **fácil de** cantar;

Port. Esta música? É **fácil de** cantar;

It. Questa canzone? È **facile di** cantare;

Fr. Cette chanson? Il est **facile de** chanter.

- This song? It is easy to sing.

Sp. Este texto es **difícil de** traducir;

Port. Este texto é **difícil de** traduzir;

It. Questo testo è **difficile di** tradurre;

Fr. Ce texte est **difficile de** traduire.

- This text is difficult to translate.

• **As an indirect command:**

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the infinitive is used to give instruction in the affirmative in different situations. For example:

Sp. *¡Empujar!*

Port. *Empurre!*

It. *Spingere!*

Fr. *Pousser!*

486

- Push!

NOTE:

*In Italian, if the indirect command is in the negative, the past participle **vietato** (prohibited) normally precedes the infinitive:*

Sp. ¡No Correr!

*Port. **Não Correr!** (or **Não corra!**)*

*It. **Vietato Correre!***

*Fr. **Ne pas Courir!***

- Do not run!

Spanish *al* + Infinitive

In Spanish the combination **al** + **infinitive** is used to express *"when"*, which is equivalent to English *upon* + *-ing*. Observe the following:

Sp. **Al ver** lo que hizo, él se enfadó.

*- **Upon seeing (When** he saw) what she did, he got upset.*

Make in Causative Constructions in The Romance Languages

In the Romance languages the verb Sp. **hacer**, Port. **fazer**, It. **fare**, Fr. **faire** - *make* is used to express the causative, which indicates the idea of having someone do something or having something made or done, and which corresponds to English causative construction *"make someone do something or have something done or made"*.

NOTE:

Like English, in Spanish and Portuguese the object comes between the causative verb Sp. **hacer,** *Port.* **fazer** *and an infinitive. However, in Italian and French the verb It.* **fare,** *Fr.* **faire** *is followed by an infinitive and the object is normally put at the end of the phrase.*

Study the following:

Sp. **Hago <u>a</u> los niños cenar;**

. Port. **Eu faço as crianças jantarem;**

It. **Faccio cenare i bambini;**

Fr. **Je fais dîner les enfants.**

- *I make the children eat dinner.*

NOTE: *in Spanish the preposition* **a** *must be used before the cause.*

Did you know?

Goiânia is the capital and the biggest city of the Brazilian state Goiás. The city is known for having the largest green area per inhabitant in Brazil and the second-most in the world (after Edmonton, Canada). 30% of the city is planted in trees. The most famous parks are the Parque Zoológico, Parque Vaca Brava, Parque Ecológico and Parque Areião.

It should be mentioned that when the object is a noun, it is placed before the infinitive in Spanish and Portuguese and follows the infinitive in Italian and French. However, when the object is a pronoun, it must precede the verb Sp. **hacer,** Port. **fazer,** It. **fare,** Fr. **faire** in all the Romance languages, whereas in English it is placed after the verb make. For example:

Sp. *Hago a los niños cenar - Los hago cenar*;

Port. *Eu faço as crianças jantar - Eu as faço jantarem*;

It. *Faccio cenare i bambini - Li faccio cenare*;

Fr. *Je fais dîner les enfants - Je les fais dîner.*

- I make (have) the children eat dinner - I make (have) them eat dinner.

It must be remembered that in the affirmative imperative, the direct object noun must follow the infinitive, but nevertheless the direct object pronoun always precedes the infinitive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Sp. *Haz lavar el perro - Hazlo lavar*;

Port. *Faça lavar o cão - Faça o lavar (or Faça lavá-lo)*;

It. *Fa' lavare il cane - Fallo lavare*; -

Fr. *Fais laver le chien - Fais-le laver.*

- Have the dog washed - Have it washed.

When there are two objects in a causative sentence, one becomes the indirect object and the other will be the direct object. The indirect object is the person or thing being made to do something. The indirect object is introduced by the preposition *a* (in Italian and Spanish) or *à* (in French) alone or in its articulated form.

NOTE:

*In Spanish the preposition **a** precedes an animate object in the sentence. Portuguese doesn't require any prepositions at all.*

489

Remember that all pronoun objects precede Sp. *hacer*, Port. *fazer*, It. *fare*, Fr. *faire* except in the affirmative imperative in the Romance languages.

One object:

Sp. La madre hace *a la* hija leer;

Port. A mãe faz *a* filha ler;

It. La madre fa leggere *la* figlia;

Fr. La mère fait lire *la* fille.

- *The mother has (makes) the daughter read.*

Two objects:

Sp. La madre hace *a la* hija leer el texto;

Port. A mãe faz *a* filha ler o texto;

It. La madre fa leggere il testo *alla* figlia;

Fr. La mère fait lire le texte *à* la fille.

- *The mother has (makes) the daughter read the text.*

If either one or more of the objects is a pronoun, the object pronouns must precede the verb Sp. *hacer*, Port. *fazer*, It. *fare*, Fr. *faire* in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. If necessary, revise object pronouns. Study the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
La madre hace a su hija leer el texto.	A mãe faz sua filha ler o texto.	La madre fa leggere il testo alla sua figlia.	La mère fait lire le texte à sa fille.	The mother has her daughter read the text.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
La madre lo hace leer a su hija.	A mãe o faz ler sua filha.	La madre lo fa leggere alla sua figlia.	La mère le fait lire à sa fille.	The mother has her daughter read it.
La madre le hace leer el texto.	A mãe lhe faz ler o texto.	La madre le fa leggere il testo.	La mère lui fait lire le texte.	The mother has her read the text.
La madre se lo hace leer.	A mãe lha faz ler.	La madre glielo fa leggere.	La mère le lui fait lire.	The mother has her read it.

Note that in Italian, the indirect pronoun is *loro* follows the infinitive, for example:

It. La madre ha fatto leggere i testi agli bambini.

La madre li ha fatti leggere ai bambini.

La madre ha fatto leggere *loro* i testi.

La madre li ha fatti leggere a *loro*.

- *The mother had the children read the texts.*

The mother had the children read them.

The mother had them read the texts.

The mother had them read them.

In Italian and French, in order to avoid possible ambiguity with the indirect object, the person doing the action can be introduced by *da* (in *Italian*) instead of *a*, and *par* (in *French*) instead of *à*. For instance, the sentence:

It. *Lei fa pulire una macchina a John*;

Fr. *Elle fait nettoyer une voiture à John*

can mean 1) *She has John clean a car* or 2) *She has a car cleaned to John.* If the first meaning is intended, It. *da* and Fr. *par* can replace It. *a* and Fr. *à*. Observe the following:

It. *Lei fa pulire una macchina da John*;

Fr. *Elle fait nettoyer une voiture par John.*

- She has John clean a car.

A reflexive pronoun can also be used with the verb Sp. *hacer*, Port. *fazer*, It. *fare*, Fr. *faire* in causative constructions in the Romance languages.

Let and Verbs of Perception + the Infinitive in the Romance Languages

In the Romance languages, after the verb Sp. *dejar*, Port. *deixar*, It. *lasciare* and Fr. *laisser* - *let* and after the verbs of perception the infinitive is used. A few common verbs of perception are:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
oír	ouvir	udire (sentire)	entendre	to hear
ver	ver	vedere	voir	to see
escuchar	escutar	ascoltare	écouter	to listen
mirar	olhar	guardare	regarder	to look at
sentir	sentir	sentire	sentir	to feel

Unlike in English, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, the infinitive precedes the noun. The pronoun is placed

before the main verb. Generally, these verbs function similarly to the verb Sp. *hacer*, Port. *fazer*, It. *fare*, Fr. *faire* in causative constructions. Study the following:

Sp. Dejo a Paula terminar la lección -> Le dejo terminar la lección
-> Se la dejo terminar.

Port. Eu deixo Paula terminar a lição -> Eu lhe deixo terminar a
lição -> Eu lha deixo terminar.

It. Lascio Paula terminare la lezione -> Le lascio terminare la
lezione -> Gliela lascio terminare.

Fr. Je laisse Paula terminer la leçon -> Je lui laisse terminer la
leçon -> Je la lui laisse terminer or Je lui laisse la terminer.

*- I let Paula finish the lesson -> I let her finish the work -> I let
her finish it.*

Did you know?

Lucca is a city in Tuscany, Central Italy near the Tyrrhenian Sea. The city is famous for its well-preserved Renaissance walls encircling the historic city center.

Sp. Veo leer a Ana -> La veo leer.

Port. Eu vejo Ana ler -> Eu a vejo ler.

It. Vedo leggere Ana -> La vedo leggere.

Fr. Je vois lire Ana -> Je la vois lire.

- I see Ana reading -> I see her reading.

Sp. Oyó cantar a su esposa -> La oyó cantar.

Port. Ele ouviu a sua esposa cantar -> Ele a ouviu cantar.

It. Ha sentito cantare sua moglie -> L'ha sentita cantare.

Fr. Il a entendu chanter sa femme -> Il l'a entendue chanter.

- He heard his wife singing -> He heard her singing.

493

NOTE:

In Italian and French the past participle agrees with the preceding direct object when the object fulfills the action indicated by the infinitive. That is to say, in the expression It. <u>la moglie che lui ha sentita cantare</u> and Fr. <u>la femme qu'il a entendue chanter</u>, the wife did the singing and, thus, the past participle agrees. But nevertheless, if the expression were It. **Ha sentito cantare la canzone** => **L'ha sentita cantare;** *Fr.* **Il a entendu chanter la chanson** => **il l'a entendu chanter** *- He heard the song sung => He heard it sung, the past participle would not agree as it. canzone, Fr. chanson is the object of It. cantare and fr. chanter.*

The Compound Infinitive

In the Romance languages, the compound infinitive is formed with the auxiliaries Sp. **haber**, Port. **ter**, It. **essere/ avere** and Fr. **être/avoir** plus the past participle of the acting verb, which is the equivalent of *having + the past participle* in English. Remember that the past participle which is used with the auxiliary verb to be (It. **essere**, Fr. **être**) always agrees in gender and number with the subject in Italian and French.

Below is the table showing an example of the compound infinitive in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French
haber hablado	*ter falado*	*avere parlato essere venuto(a)(i)(e)*	*avoir parlé être venu(e) (s)(es)*

NOTE:

*In Italian it is quite common to drop the final -e of the auxiliary verb (It. **avere, essere**) in the compound infinitive, for example: **aver parlato, esser venuto**.*

Use of the Compound Infinitive

The compound infinitive is usually used after the prepositions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
después de	**depois de**	**dopo**	**après**	*after*
sin	**sem**	**senza**	**sans**	*without*

Did you know?

Chad is a landlocked nation in Central Africa. It is the 5th biggest country in Africa in terms of area. The country's official languages are Arabic and French. The main religions of Chad are Islam (over 50%) and Christianity (around 5%). Its capital N'Djamena is the largest city.

Sp. **Después de haber terminado** el trabajo, fue al bar;

Port. **Depois de ter terminado** o trabalho, ele foi ao bar;

It. **Dopo aver terminato** il lavoro, è andato al bar;

Fr. **Après avoir terminé** le travail, il est allé au bar.

- *After having finished his work, he went to the bar.*

Sp. Ella regresó de Brasil **sin haber estado** en Río de Janeiro;

495

Port. Ela voltou do Brasil *sem ter estado* no Rio de Janeiro;

It. Lei è tornata dal Brasile *senza essere stata* a Rio de Janeiro;

Fr. Elle est revenue du Brésil *sans avoir été* à Rio de Janeiro.

- *She returned from Brazil **without having been** to Rio de Janeiro.*

Portuguese Personal Infinitive

Overview

Portuguese is the only Romance languages that uses personal infinitives. Generally speaking personal infinitive is used when the form of the verb which has no person or number and known as the infinitive, takes a subject in Portuguese.

In order to form the personal infinitive, one should take the infinitive and add appropriate endings. The following is the table displaying the forms of the personal infinitive in Portuguese:

Forms of the Personal Infinitive

	falar	**vender**	**partir**
eu	falar	vender	partir
tu	falar**es**	vender**es**	partir**es**
ele, ela, você	falar	vender	partir
nós	falar**mos**	vender**mos**	partir**mos**
vós	falar**des**	vender**des**	partir**des**
les, elas, vocês	falar**em**	vender**em**	partir**em**

496

NOTE:
The 1st and 3rd persons don't add any endings to the verbs.

Use of Portuguese Personal Infinitive

In Portuguese personal infinitive is usually used:

- **After expressions where the subject is undefined:**

É necessário	It's necessary for smb. to do smth.
É bom	It's good for smb. to do smth.
É importante	It's important for smb. to do smth.
É difícil	It's difficult for smb. to do smth.
É possível	It's possible for smb. to do smth.
É provável	It's probable for smb. to do smth.
É impossível	It's impossible for smb. to do smth.
É incrível	It's unbelievable for smb. to do smth.
Não é mau	It's not bad for smb. to do smth.

For example:

Port. *É necessário eu ir* para casa agora.

- *It's necessary that I go home now.*

Port. *É importante irmos* ao hospital agora.

- *It's important for us to go to the hospital now.*

Port. *É incrível eles falarem* português.

- *It's unbelievable for them to speak Portuguese.*

NOTE:

*With these expressions one shouldn't use **que**, since it implies the use of the subjunctive and not the Portuguese personal infinitive. Observe the following:*

Port. *É necessário **que** eu **vá** para casa agora.*

- *It's necessary that I go home now.*

Port. *É importante **que** nós **vamos** ao hospital agora.*

- *It's important for us to go to the hospital now.*

Port. *É incrível **que** eles **falem** português.*

- *It's unbelievable for them to speak Portuguese.*

In fact, the Portuguese personal infinitive is used to avoid the use of the subjunctive in many cases.

• **After prepositions such as:**

Ao	at/by/on
Sem	without
Para	in order to
Por	because/for the cause of
Até	until
No caso de	in case
Depois de	after
Antes de	before
Apesar de	inspite of/despite

Euro. Port. **Sem estudiares** todos os dias não podes falar um idioma muito bem.

Braz. Port. **Sem estudar** todos os dias não pode falar um idioma muito bem.

- *Without studying every day you cannot speak a language very well.*

Port. Isto é para **lermos** esta noite.

- *This is for us to read tonight.*

It should be mentioned that in colloquial Portuguese, the personal infinitive often replaces the subjunctive in the following cases:

sem que + Subjunctive	sem + Personal Infinitive
Eu cheguei **sem que** ela **visse.** *- I came without being seen by her.*	Eu cheguei **sem** ela **ver.** *- I came without being seen by her.*
para que + Subjunctive	**para + Personal Infinitive**
Eu comprei este livro **para que leiamos.** *- I bought this book for us to read.*	Eu comprei este livro **para lermos.** *- I bought this book for us to read.*

- **To make polite requests and commands:**

This can be regarded as an alternative to the imperative mood, which is more direct, for example:

Port. N**ão *gritem, por favor*.**

- No screaming, please.

Reflexive Verbs

Overview

In the Romance languages, reflexive verbs are always used with an object pronoun which refers to the same person or things as the verb's subject. In other words, the action of reflexive verbs is executed and received by the subject. In English, the object pronoun of reflexive verbs has such suffixes as *-self* or *-selves* (e.g. *I wash myself, they wash themselves*).

Formation of Reflexive Verbs

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, reflexive verbs are formed by using the appropriate reflexive pronouns (**See Reflexive Pronouns p.130**), which can change according to the subject of the verb. In the infinitive form, the reflexive pronouns is put after the verb in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, while in French it is placed before the verb (e.g. Sp. *lavarse*; Port. *lavar-se*; It. *lavarsi*; Fr. *se laver*).

NOTE:

In Spanish the reflexive pronoun is attached to the verb, whereas in Portuguese, the reflexive pronoun is linked to a verb by a hyphen. In Italian the -e of the infinitive ending is dropped before attaching a reflexive pronoun to it.

When conjugated, reflexive pronouns are placed before the verb in Spanish, Italian and French.

NOTE:

However, in European Portuguese the reflexive pronoun is normally placed after the verb and linked to it with a hyphen except in negative and interrogative sentences, and also after prepositions, relative clauses or conjunctions. On the other hand, like in Spanish, Italian and French, in spoken Brazilian Portuguese, the reflexive pronoun is always placed before the conjugated verb.

It must be remembered that in contrast with English, reflexive pronouns cannot be omitted in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Observe the following forms of the present tense of Sp. *lavarse*, Port. *lavar-se*, It. *lavarsi*, Fr. *se laver - to wash*:

501

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
yo **me lavo**	eu **lavo-me** (Braz. Port. **me lavo**)	io **mi lavo**	je, j' **me lave**	*I wash myself*
tú/vos **te lavas/ lavás**	tu **lavas-te**	tu **ti lavi**	tu **te laves**	*you wash yourself*
él/ella/ usted **se lava**	êle/ela/você **lava-se** (Braz. Port. **se lava**)	lui/lei/Lei **si lava**	il,elle,on **se lave**	*he/she/it wash himself/ herself/ itself*
nosotros(as) **nos lavamos**	nós **lavamo-nos** (Braz. Port. **nos lavamos**)	noi **ci laviamo**	nous **nous lavons**	*we wash ourselves*
vosotros(as) **os laváis**	vós **lavais-vos**	voi **vi lavate**	vous **vous lavez**	*you wash yourselves*
ellos/ellas/ ustedes **se lavan**	eles/elas/ **vocês lavam-se** (Braz. Port. **se lavam**)	loro/Loro **si lavano**	ils/elles **se lavent**	*they wash themselves*

NOTE:

In European Portuguese, the verb loses its final **-s** *in the 2nd person plural (****lavamo-nos****). In French* **me** *becomes* **m'**, *te becomes* **t'** *and* **se** *becomes* **s'** *before a vowel or a mute* h *(e.g. je* **m'amuse**; *tu* **t'habille**; *il* **s'arrête**.).*

502

Reflexive Verbs with a Reflexive Meaning

Below is a list of the most common reflexive verbs of the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
levantarse	levantar-se	alzarsi	se lever	*to get up*
enojarse/ enfadarse	*ficar com raiva*	arrabbiarsi	se fâcher	*to get angry*
llamarse	chamar-se	chiamarsi	s'appeler	*to be called*
acostarse	deitar-se	coricarsi	se coucher	*to go to bed*
taparse	cobrir-se	coprirsi	se couvrir	*to cover oneself*
divertirse	divertir-se	divertirsi	se divertir/ s'amuser	*to have fun*
herirse	ferir-se	ferirsi	se blesser	*to wound oneself*
fiarse de/ confiarse de	*confiar em*	fidarsi di	se fier à	*to trust*
enamorarse	apaixonar-se	innamorarsi di	*tomber amoureux de*	*to fall in love with*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
quejarse	queixar-se	lamentarsi di	se plaindre	*to complain about*
lavarse	lavar-se	lavarsi	se laver	*to wash oneself*
ponerse	*pôr*	mettersi	se mettre	*to put on (clothing)*
arrepentirse de.	arrepender-se de	pentirsi di	se repentir de	*to repent of*
prepararse para	preparar-se para	prepararsi per	se préparer pour	*to get ready*
limpiarse	limpar-se	pulirsi	se nettoyer	*to clean oneself*
afeitarse	barbear-se	radersi	se raser	*to shave*
acordarse de	lembrar-se de	ricordarsi di	se rappeler/ se souvenir de	*to remember*
sentarse	sentar-se	sedersi	s'asseoir	*to sit down*
sentirse	sentir-se	sentirsi	se sentir/ se porter	*to feel*
desvestirse	despir-se	spogliarsi	se déshabiller	*to undress*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
casarse con	casar-se com	sposarsi con	se marier avec	*to get married*
despertarse	*acordar*	svegliarsi	se réveiller	*to wake up*
vestirse	vestir-se	vestirsi	s'habiller	*to get dressed*
volverse	tornar-se	voltarsi	se tourner	*to turn*
cuidar de/ salir de	*cuidar de/ sair de*	sbrogliarsi/ cavarsi (togliersi) d'impiccio	se débrouiller / se tirer (d'affaire)	*to manage, to handle a situation*
preguntarse	perguntar-se	chiedersi	se demander	*to wonder*
apresurarse	apressar-se	affrettarsi	se dépêcher/ se presser	*to hurry*
interesarse por	interessar-se por	interessarsi a	s'intéresser à	*to be interested in*
burlarse de/ mofarse de	*gozar de*	farsi beffe di	se moquer de	*to make fun of*
ocuparse de	ocupar-se de	occuparsi di	s'occuper de	*to be busy with, to take care of*
pasarse	*acontecer*	*accadere*	se passer	*to happen*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
peinarse	pentear-se	pettinarsi	se peigner	*to comb one's hair*
reposar/ descansar	*descansar*	riposarsi	se reposer	*to rest*
encontrarse	achar-se	trovarsi	se trouver	*to be located*
aburrirse	chatear-se	annoiarsi	s'ennuyer	*to get bored*
pasearse	*passear*	*passeggiare*	se promener	*to take a walk*
dormirse	*adormecer*	addormentarsi	s'endormir	*to fall asleep*
bañarse	banhar-se	bagnarsi	se baigner	*to bathe*
cepillarse	*escovar*	pulirsi	se brosser	*to brush oneself*
distraerse	distrair-se	distrarsi	se distraire	*to distract oneself*
ducharse	*tomar banho*	docciarsi	se doucher	*to shower*
irse	*ir embora*	andarsene	s'en aller	*to leave*
maquillarse	maquiar-se	truccarsi	se maquiller	*to put on makeup*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
callarse	calar-se	azzittirsi	se taire	*to be quiet*

The verbs in *italics* are not reflexive.

Sp. *Me acuesto* más temprano hoy;

Port. *Deito-me* mais cedo hoje;

It. *Mi corico* più presto oggi;

Fr. *Je me couche* plus tôt aujourd'hui.

- I go to bed earlier today.

Did you know?

The Cathedral of La Plata, in the city of La Plata, Argentina, is the largest church in Argentina and the 58th tallest church in the world. This Neo-Gothic construction is situated in the geographical center of the city in front of the central square, Plaza Moreno, and City Hall.

Sp. Esta mujer *se queja* todo el tiempo;

Port. Esta mulher *se queixa* o tempo todo (todo o tempo).

It. Questa donna *si lamenta* tutto il tempo;

Fr. Cette femme *se plaint* tout le temps.

- This woman complains all the time.

NOTE:

In Portuguese, in the indicative future or conditional, the reflexive pronoun is usually put between the stem and the ending of the verb and each part is separated by a hyphen. Observe the following:

Portuguese			
Future	*Future Perfect*	*Conditional*	*Conditional Perfect*
Deitar-me-ei	**Ter-me-ei deitado**	**Deitar-me-ia**	**Ter-me-ia deitado**
(I will go to bed) etc.	*(I will have gone to bed)* etc.	*(I would go to bed)* etc.	*(I would have gone to bed)* etc.

Italian and French Compound Tenses with Reflexive Verbs

It must be memorized that all reflexive verbs are used with the appropriate conjugated verb **essere** (in *Italian*) and **être** (in *French*) - *to be* when forming compound tenses. Also, the past participle of reflexive verbs agrees in gender and number with the subject in Italian and French.

It. *Si è alzata* alle 6 di ieri;

Fr. *Elle s'est levée* à 6 heures hier.

- She got up at 6 a.m. yesterday.

It. I miei genitori *si sono sposati* vent'anni fa;

Fr. Mes parents *se sont mariés* il y a vingt ans.

- My parents got married twenty years ago.

Reflexive Verbs with Parts of the Body

In the Romance languages, if a part of the body is used with reflexive verbs, one should utilize the definite article rather than the possessive adjective. Study the following:

Sp. Mary se lava *la* cara;

Port. Mary *lava* *o* rosto;

It. Mary si lava *la* faccia;

Fr. Mary se lave *le* visage.

- *Mary washes her face.*

Did you know?

Campinas is a city in southeast Brazil, in São Paulo State. The most beautiful tourism spots in the city are: Portugal Park that contains a wide range of recreational activities, a planetarium, and electric tramway from the 20th century; and Castle Tower, a water tower, that offers a wide panorama view of the city.

Sp. María se lava *las* manos;

Port. Mary *lava* *as* mãos;

It. Mary si lava *le* mani;

Fr. Mary se lave *les* mains.

- *Mary washes her hands.*

NOTE:
Unlike in Spanish, Italian and French, In Portuguese, the reflexive verbs are not used in this case.

Reciprocal Reflexive Verbs

Reciprocal reflexive verbs refer to persons that are acting upon one another. This corresponds to English *"each other"* or

"*one another*". Below is a partial list of the most frequent reflexive verbs with a reciprocal meaning in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
abrazarse	abraçar-se	abbracciarsi	s'embrasser	to embrace each other (one another)
ayudarse	ajudar-se	aiutarsi	s'aider	to help each other (one another)
amarse	amar-se	amarsi	s'aimer	to love each other (one another)
admirarse	admirar-se	ammirarsi	s'admirer	to admire each other (one another)
besarse	beijar-se	baciarsi	s'embrasser	to kiss each other (one another)
conocerse	conhecer-se	conoscersi	se connaître	to know each other (one another)
encontrarse	achar-se	incontrarsi	se rencontrer	to meet each other
enamorarse	apaixonar-se	innamorarsi	*tomber amoureux*	to fall in love (with each other)

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
gustarse	gostar-se	piacersi	se plaire	*to like each other (one another)*
reconocerse	reconhecer -se	riconoscersi	se reconnaître	*to recognize each other (one another)*
respetarse	respeitar-se	rispettarsi	se respecter	*to respect each other (one another)*
verse de nuevo	rever-se	rivedersi	se revoir	*to see each other again (one another)*
saludarse	saudar-se	salutarsi	se saluer	*to greet each other (one another)*
escribirse	escrever-se	scriversi	s'écrire	*to write to each other (one another)*
casarse	casar-se	sposarsi	se marier	*to get married*
verse	ver-se	vedersi	se voir	*to see each other (one another)*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
visitarse	visitar-se	visitarsi	se visiter	*to visit each other (one another)*
quererse	amar-se	volersi bene	s'aimer bien	*to like/love each other (one another)*
consolarse	consolar-se	consolarsi	se consoler	*to comfort each other (one another)*

Did you know?

Bari is a port and university city on the Adriatic Sea, in southern Italy. It is known for its narrow streets, the 11th century Basilica of Saint Nicholas and the Cathedral of San Sabino. The Murat quartier has 19th-century architecture, a promenade on the sea, and major shopping areas.

Sp. Ellos no **se ven** muy frecuentemente;

Port. Eles não **se vêem** muito frequentemente;

It. Non **si vedono** molto frequentemente;

Fr. Ils ne **se voient** pas très , fréquemment.

- *They do not **see each other** very often.*

Sp. Los maestros **se saludan** en la universidad cada mañana;

Port. Os professores **se saudam** na universidade todas as manhãs;

It. Gli insegnanti **si salutano** all'università ogni mattina;

512

Fr. Les enseignants *se saluent* à l'université tous les matins..

*- Teachers **greet each other** in the university every morning.*

Since the reflexive and the reciprocal forms are similar in the Romance languages, confusion may occur in some cases. For instance the phrase:

Sp. Ellos *se aman*;

Port. Eles *amam-se* (Br. Port. *se amam*);

It. Loro *si amano*;

Fr. Ils *s'aiment.*

could mean *"They love themselves"* or *"They love each other"*. In order to avoid ambiguity, the following phrases may be supplemented to reflexive verbs:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el uno al otro (*sing.*); **(los) unos a (los) otros** (*pl.*)	**um ao outro** (*sing. m.*); **uma a outra** (*sing. f.*); **uns aos outros** (*pl.*)	**l'un l'altro**	**l'un l'autre**	*each other/ one another*
mutuam ente	**mutuame nte**	**reciproca mente (a vicenda)**	**réciproque ment**	*mutually*

Sp. *Nos amamos el uno al otro*;

Port. *Nós amamos um ao outro*;

It. *Ci amiamo l'un l'altro*;

Fr. *Nous nous aimons l'un l'autre.*

- *We love each other.*

Sp. Los oponentes *se respetan mutuamente*;

Port. Os opositores *se respeitam mutuamente*;

It. Gli avversari *si rispettano reciprocamente*;

Fr. Les opposants *se respectent mutuellement.*

- *Opponents respect each other.*

Reflexive Verbs Versus Non-Reflexive Verbs

In the Romance languages, verbs can function both reflexively and non-reflexively. Remember if the action is performed and received by the same subject, the verb is reflexive. However, when the action is executed on another person or object, the verb is not reflexive. Study the following sentences:

Reflexive	*Non-reflexive*
Sp. Tom **se lava**; Port. Tom **lava-se** (Br. **se lava**); It. Tom **si lava**; Fr. Tom **se lave**. - *Tom washes himself.*	Sp. Tom **lava el perro**; Port. Tom **lava o cão**; It. Tom **lava il cane**; Fr. Tom **lave le chien**. - *Tom washes the dog.*
Sp. Sarah **se acuesta**; Port. Sarah **deita-se** (Br. **se deita**); It. Sarah **si corica**; Fr. Sarah **se couche**. - *Sarah goes to bed.*	Sp. Sarah **acuesta los niños**; Port. Sarah **deita as crianças**; It. Sarah **corica i bambini**; Fr. Sarah **couche les enfants**. - *Sarah puts the children to bed.*

It is noticeable that the non-reflexive verbs are transitive, i.e. they take a direct object. Observe the difference in meaning between the following reflexive and non-reflexive verbs in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	Reflexive	*Non-reflexive*
Spanish	ayudarse	ayudar
Portuguese	ajudar-se	ajudar
Italian	aiutarsi	aiutare
French	s'aider	aider
English	*to help each other*	*to help (someone)*
Spanish	levantarse	levantar
Portuguese	levantar-se	levantar
Italian	alzarsi	alzare
French	se lever	lever
English	*to get up*	*to raise, to lift*
Spanish	llamarse	llamar
Portuguese	chamar-se	chamar
Italian	chiamarsi	chiamare
French	s'appeler	appeler
English	*to be called*	*to call (someone)*

Spanish	prepararse	preparar
Portuguese	preparar-se	preparar
Italian	prepararsi	preparare
French	se préparer	préparer
English	*to get ready*	*to prepare (someone or something)*
Spanish	acordarse de	acordar
Portuguese	lembrar-se de	lembrar
Italian	ricordarsi di	ricordare
French	se rappeler de	rappeler
English	*to remember*	*to remind (someone or something)*
Spanish	vestirse	vestir
Portuguese	vestir-se	vestir
Italian	vestirsi	vestire
French	s'habiller	habiller
English	*to get dressed*	*to dress (someone), to wear (something)*

Reflexive Verbs in the Infinitive in the Romance languages

In Spanish and Italian, the reflexive pronoun either follows the reflexive verb, attaching to it, or precedes the first conjugated

516

verb in the sentence. In Portuguese the reflexive pronoun can be placed either after the reflexive verb separated by a hyphen from it or before the reflexive verb. However, in spoken Brazilian Portuguese, it is common to place the reflexive pronoun between the verbs. In French, the reflexive pronoun invariably precedes the reflexive verb in the infinitive. Remember that the pronoun always agrees with the subject in all the Romance languages.

Did you know?

Burkina Faso is a francophone, land-locked country in West Africa. The two words "Burkina" and "Faso" come from different languages spoken in the country. "Burkina" comes from Mossi and means "honest". "Faso" comes from the Dyula language and means "fatherland".

Sp. Necesitas **apresurar*te*** or ***Te*** necesitas **apresurar**;

Port. Você precisa **_se_ apressar** or Você precisa **apressar-_se_**;

It. ***Ti*** devi **affrettare** or **Devi affrettar*ti***

Fr. Tu as besoin de ***te* dépêcher.**

- *You need to hurry up.*

Sp. Voy a **vestir*me*** or ***Me*** voy a **vestir**;

Port. Vou **_me_ vestir** or Vou **vestir-_me_**;

It. Sto per **vestir*mi*** or ***Mi*** sto per **vestire**;

Fr. Je vais ***m'habiller*.**

- *I am going to get dressed.*

Reflexive *se* (Spanish, Portuguese and French) and *si* (Italian) as an Indefinite Subject

The reflexive pronoun se in Spanish, Portuguese and French and si in Italian can be used as an impersonal or indefinite subject, which is equivalent to English *people, they, one* or *we*. In the Romance languages the verb is invariably 3rd person singular **(See also Alternatives to Passive Voice in the Romance Languages p.534).**

NOTE:

In French, the impersonal pronoun **on** *must be used in this case.*

> Sp. ¿*Se puede* fumar aquí?
>
> Port. *Pode-se* fumar aqui?
>
> It. *Si può* fumare qui?
>
> Fr. *Peut-on* fumer ici?
>
> *- Can we smoke here?*

Frequent Reflexive Verb of *Becoming*

The following verb meaning "*to become*" must be memorized since it is very common and can be useful for the learners to apply. This verb implies intentional effort made by the subject.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hacerse	**ficar**	**farsi**	**se faire**	*to become*

NOTE:

Unlike in Spanish, Italian and French, in Portuguese the verb **ficar** *- to become is not reflexive.*

518

Sp. Él **se hizo** exitoso;

Port. Ele **ficou** bem sucedido;

It. Lui **si è fatto** conoscere;

Fr. Il **s'est fait** connaître.

- *He* **became** *successful.*

Affirmative Imperative of Reflexive verbs in the Romance Languages

In the affirmative imperative, in Spanish and Italian, the reflexive pronoun is attached to the end of the verb to form one word, while in Portuguese and French, the reflexive pronoun is joined to the verb by a hyphen.

NOTE:

*In Spanish, it is necessary to put an accent on the verb to show the stress and if **os** is used with the **vosotros** form, the imperative loses the **d** (e.g. **sentaos** - sit down). In Italian, the reflexive pronoun is separated from the verb in **loro** form. In French, te changes to **toi** in the affirmative imperative.*

Sp. ¡**Siéntate** aquí!

Port. **Senta-se** aqui! (Euro. port. **Senta-te** aqui!)

It. **Siediti** qui!

Fr. **Assieds-toi** ici!

- *Sit down here!*

Did you know?

Cusco, a city in southeastern Peruvian Andes, was the capital of the Inca Empire from the 13th until the 16th century. The city is considered as the Historical capital of Peru. It hosts over 2 million visitors a year.

Sp. ¡**Levánte*se*!**

Port. **Levante-*se*!**

It. **Alzate*vi*!**

Fr. **Levez-*vous*!**

- Get up! (polite form)

Negative Imperative of Reflexive Verbs in the Romance Languages

In the negative imperative, the reflexive pronoun always precedes the verb in Spanish, Portuguese and French.

NOTE:
*In Italian, the reflexive pronoun can be either joined to the verb or be separated and put before the verb. it is also notable that with formal **Lei**, the pronoun is always placed before the verb.*

Sp. ¡**No *te* quejas!**

Port. **Não *se* queixa!** (Euro. port. **Não *te* queixas!**)

It. Non **lamentar*ti*!** or Non ***ti* lamentare!**

Fr. **Ne *te* plains pas!**

- Do not complain!

NOTE:
*In French, the reflexive pronoun **te** does not*

alter in the negative imperative.

The Passive Voice

Overview

Generally, passive constructions are formed when the objects of active constructions become the subjects of the passive verbs. The following is the example of a passive construction in English:

Active voice	Passive voice
My friend wrote the book.	**The book was written by my friend.**

The passive voice in the Romance languages is not very different from English but it is used less frequently in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French than in English. Moreover, passive constructions are often replaced by alternatives in the Romance languages.

Formation of the Passive Voice

The passive voice is formed by using the conjugated forms of the verbs Sp. **ser/estar**, Port. **ser**, It. **essere** and Fr. **être** - *to be* plus the past participle of the verb. However, unlike in English, in the Romance languages the past participle agrees in gender and in number with the subject of the passive phrase. The person or the agent performing the action is normally introduced by the preposition **por** (in *Spanish* and *Portuguese*), **da** (in *Italian*) and **par** (in *French*), which corresponds to English *by*.

NOTE:

*In Portuguese and Italian the preposition Port. **por** and It. **da** contract with the*

*definite articles (**See Articles p.66**):*

Portuguese	Italian
o, a, os, as + por = pelo, pela, pelos, pelas	*il, lo, la, l' + da = dal, dallo, dalla, dall'*

Below is the table that shows the formation of the passive voice in the Romance languages:

Spanish	*ser/estar*		*por*	Spanish
Portugu ese	*ser*	*+ Past Participle +*	*por*	Portugu ese
Italian	*essere*		*da*	Italian
French	*être*		*par*	French

Active voice	*Passive voice*
Sp. **Mi padre compró la casa.** Port. **Meu pai comprou a casa.** It. **Mio padre ha comprato la casa.** Fr. **Mon père a acheté la maison.** *- My father bought the house.*	Sp. **La casa fue comprada por mi padre.** Port. **A casa foi comprada pelo meu pai.** It. **La casa è stata comprata da mio padre.** Fr. **La maison a été achetée par mon père.** *- The house was bought by my father.*

Like in English, in the Romance languages the passive voice can be used in all tenses, which means that all tenses in the active voice can be replaced by an equivalent with the verb in the passive voice.

Below is the illustration of all forms of the passive voice in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. The 1st person singular

of the regular verb Sp. **amar**; Port. **amar**; It. **amare**; Fr. **aimer** - *to love* was taken as an example.

	Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French
	Indicative mood			
	Present tenses			
Present tense	yo soy amado(a)	eu sou amado(a)	io sono amato(a)	je suis aimé(e)
Present Perfect	yo he sido amado(a)	eu tenho sido amado(a)	io sono stato amato(a)	j'ai été aimé(e)
	Past tenses			
Preterite	yo fui amado(a)	eu fora amado(a)	io fui amato(a)	je fus aimé(e)
Imperfect	yo era amado(a)	eu era amado(a)	io ero amato(a)	j'étais aimé(e)
Past Perfect	yo hube sido amado(a)s	eu tinha sido amado(a)	io fui stato amato(a)	j'eus été aimé(e)
Pluperfect	yo había sido amado(a)	eu fora sido amado(a)	io ero stato amato(a)	j'avais été aimé(e)

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	Future tenses			
Future	yo seré amado(a)	eu serei amado(a)	io sarò amato(a)	je serai aimé(e)
Future Perfect	yo habré sido amado(a)	eu terei sido amado(a)	io sarò stato amato(a)	____
	Conditionals			
Conditional	yo sería amado(a)	eu seria amado(a)	io sarei amato(a)	je serais aimé(e)
Conditional Perfect	yo habría sido amado(a)	eu teria sido amado(a)	io sarei stato amato(a)	j'aurais été aimé(e)
	Subjunctive mood			
	Present tenses			
Present tense	que yo sea amado(a)	que eu seja amado(a)	che io sia amato(a)	que je sois aimé(e)

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Present Perfect	que yo haya sido amado(a)	que eu tenha sido amado(a)	che io sia stato amato(a)	que j'aie été aimé(e)
Past tenses				
Past (Imperfect) tense	que yo fuera amado(a)	eu fosse amado(a)	che io fossi amato(a)	que je fusse aimé(e)
Past Perfect	1st option que yo hubier a sido amado (a) / 2nd option que yo hubies e sido amado (a)	eu tivesse sido amado(a)	che io fossi stato amato(a)	que j'eusse été aimé(e)
Future tenses				
Future tense	que yo fuere amado(a)	que eu for amado(a)	____	____
Future Perfect	que yo hubiere sido amado(a)	que eu tiver sido amado(a)	____	____
Imperative mood				

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	sé amado(a) (tu)	sê amado(a) (tu)	sii amato(a) (tu)	sois aimé(e) (tu)
	sed amado(a) (usted)	sede amado(a) (você)	sia amato(a) (Lei)	soyez aimé(e)s (es) (vous)
	seamos amados(as) (nosotros)	sejamos amados(as) (nós)	siamo amati(e) (noi)	soyons aimé(e)s (nous)
	sed amados(as) (vosotros)	sede amados(as) (vós)	siate amati(e) (voi)	soyez aimé(e)s (es) (vous)
	sed amados(as) (ustedes)	sede amados(as) (vocês)	siano amati(e) (Loro)	soyez aimé(e)s (es) (vous)
Infinitive				
	ser amado(a)	ser amado(a)	essere amato(a)	être aimé(e)
Compound infinitive				
	haber sido amado(a)	ter sido amado(a)	essere stato amato(a)	avoir été aimé(e)
Present Participle (Gerund)				

	Spanish	Portugue se	Italian		French
	siendo amado(a)	sendo amado(a)	(gerun d) essend o amato (a)	(part. pres) essere amato (a)	étant aimé(e)
Compound Present Participle					
	———	tendo sido amado(a)	———	·	———
Past Participle (Gerund)					
	amado(a)s	amado(a)s	essend o stato amato (a)i	stato amato (a)i	aimé(e)s ; ayant été aimé(e)s

Here are examples of all the forms of the passive voice used in sentences in the Romance languages. Even though some of the examples below may seem odd to a native speaker, they are given just in order to illustrate the usage of the passive voice:

Present simple:

Sp. La carta *es enviada* por su esposa.

Port. A carta *é enviada* pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera *è inviata* da sua moglie.

Fr. *La lettre **est envoyée** par sa femme.*

*- The letter **is sent** by his wife.*

Did you know?

Beira is the 3rd largest city in Mozambique. The city has the regionally important port of Beira, which serves as a gateway for the central interior part of the country, as well as the land-locked nations of Zambia, Zimbabwe and Malawi. Beira was historically founded by the Portuguese in the 19th century.

Present Perfect:

Sp. Últimamente, la carta **ha sido enviada** por su esposa.

Port. Ultimamente, A carta **tem sido enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. Ultimamente, la lettera **è stata inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. Récemment, la lettre **a été envoyée** par sa femme.

*- Lately, the letter **has been sent** by his wife.*

Preterite:

Sp. La carta *fue enviada* por su esposa.

Port. A carta *foi enviada* pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera *fu inviata* da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre *fut envoyée* par sa femme.

*- The letter **was sent** by his wife.*

Imperfect:

Sp. Antiguamente, las cartas *eran enviadas* por su esposa.

Port. Antigamente, as cartas *eram enviada* pela sua esposa.

It. Anticamente, le lettere *erano inviate* da sua moglie.

Fr. Anciennement, les lettres *étaient envoyées* par sa femme.

- *In the past, the letters **used to be sent** by his wife.*

Past Perfect:

Sp. Muchas cartas *hubieron sido enviadas* por su esposa.

Port. Muitas cartas *tinham sido enviadas* pela sua esposa.

It. Molte lettere *furono state inviate* da sua moglie.

Fr. Beaucoup de lettres *eurent été envoyées* par sa femme.

- *Many letters **had been sent** by his wife.*

Pluperfect:

Sp. La carta *había sido enviada* por su esposa.

Port. A carta *fora sido enviada* pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera *era stata inviata* da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre *avait été envoyée* par sa femme.

- *The letter **had been sent** by his wife.*

Future:

Sp. La carta *será enviada* por su esposa.

Port. A carta *será enviada* pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera **sarà inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre **sera envoyée** par sa femme.

- *The letter **will be sent** by his wife.*

Future Perfect:

Sp. Mañana a las nueve, la carta **habrá sido enviada** por su esposa.

Port. Amanhã às nove horas, a carta **terá sido enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. Domani alle nove, la lettera **sarà stata inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. Demain à neuf heures, la lettre **aura été envoyée** par sa femme.

- *Tomorrow at nine o'clock, the letter **will have been sent** by his wife.*

Conditional:

Sp. La carta **sería enviada** por su esposa.

Port. A carta **seria enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera **sarebbe inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre **serait envoyée** par sa femme.

- *The letter **would be sent** by his wife.*

Conditional Perfect:

Sp. La carta **habría sido enviada** por su esposa.

Port. A carta **teria sido enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera **sarebbe stata inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre **aurait été envoyée** par sa femme.

- *The letter **would have been sent** by his wife.*

Present Subjunctive:

Sp. **Es urgente que** la carta **sea enviada** por su esposa.

Port. **É urgente que** a carta **seja enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. **È urgente che** la lettera **sia inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. **Il est urgent que** la lettre **soit envoyée** par sa femme.

- ***It is urgent that** the letter **be sent** by his wife.*

Present Perfect Subjunctive:

Sp. **Estoy feliz de que** la carta **haya sido enviada** por su esposa.

Port. **Estou feliz que** a carta **tenha sido enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. **Sono felice che** la lettera **sia stata inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. **Je suis heureux que** la lettre **ait été envoyée** par sa femme.

- ***I am happy that** the letter **has been sent** by his wife.*

Past (Imperfect) Subjunctive:

Sp. **Era urgente que** la carta **fuera enviada** por su esposa.

531

Port. *Era urgente que* a carta *fosse enviada* pela sua esposa.

It. *Era urgente che* la lettera *fosse inviata* da sua moglie.

Fr. *Il était urgent que* la lettre *fût envoyée* par sa femme.

- *It was urgent for* the letter *to be sent* by his wife.

Past Perfect Subjunctive:

Sp. *Yo esperaba que* la carta *hubiera/hubiese sido* enviada por su esposa.

Port. *Eu esperava que* a carta *tivesse sido enviada* pela sua esposa.

It. *Io speravo che* la lettera *fosse stata inviata* da sua moglie.

Fr. *J'espérais que* la lettre *eût été envoyée* par sa femme.

- *I hoped that* the letter *had been sent* by his wife.

Future Subjunctive:

Sp. Si la carta *fuere enviada* por su esposa, él la recibirá.

Port. Se a carta *for enviada* pela sua esposa, ele a receberá.

- If the letter *is sent* by his wife, he will receive it.

Future Perfect Subjunctive:

Sp. Si la carta *hubiere sido enviada* por su esposa cuando llegue, vamos al teatro.

Port. Se a carta *tiver sido enviada* pela sua esposa quando eu chegar, vamos ao teatro.

*- If the letter **has been sent** by my wife by the time I come, we will go to the theatre.*

Spanish Passive Voice with *Ser* and *Estar*

One should be able to distinguish between the use of ***estar*** and ***ser*** with the past participle in order to understand the passive voice in Spanish.

Estar with past participle

Estar used with past participle expresses a state or a condition or consequence of something that has occurred. Observe the following:

Sp. Cuando entré la ventana ***estaba abierta***.

- When I entered the window was open.

Ser with past participle

Ser used with past participle concentrates on an action and usually refers to something which is being done in Spanish. In fact, it forms the real passive construction, which corresponds to English *is* or *was done*. This particular construction is used when the phrase reports the agent, by whom something is done, for example:

Sp. Cuando entré en la ventana *fue abierta por mi esposa*.

*- When I entered the window **was open by my wife**.*

French Passive Voice with *de*

In French ***de*** is normally used with verbs that indicate condition or emotion, for example:

Did you know?

Ferrara, a city in northern Italy, is known for its palaces erected by the powerful Renaissance clan, the Este family. The Este Castle (It. Castello Estense), located in the center of the town, is one of the iconic landmarks of Ferrara.

Fr. La mère est aimé *de* ses enfants.

- *The mother is loved **by** her children.*

La rue est couverte *de* neige.

- *The street is covered **with** snow.*

Alternatives to Passive Voice in the Romance Languages

It is noticeable that the passive voice is not frequently used in the Romance language and it can be sometimes overused by English speakers. Usually there is a number of equivalent constructions which are more commonly utilized instead in everyday speech in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

- **To convert a passive construction into an active voice.**

If the agent is expressed, the passive voice in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French should be avoided, especially in informal speech, by converting a passive construction into an active one. Observe the following:

	Passive		*Active*
Spanish	Esta canción fue escrita por un cantante popular.	>	Un popular cantante escribió esta canción.
Portugu ese	Esta canção foi escrita por um cantor popular.	>	Um popular cantor escreveu esta canção.

Italian	Questa canzone è stata scritta da un cantante popolare.	>	Un cantante popolare ha scritto questa canzone.
French	Cette chanson a été écrite par un chanteur populaire.	>	Un chanteur populaire a écrit cette chanson.
	- This song was written by a popular singer.	>	*- A popular singer wrote this song.*

- **Using an indefinite 3rd person plural active verb** (*in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian*) **or indefinite pronoun *on*** (*in French*).

     When the agent is not given, it may be possible to replace the passive voice by using an indefinite 3rd person plural in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian or *on* in French meaning *"they"*, *"people"* and an active verb.

*NOTE: in French, when **on** is used, the verb is conjugated in the 3rd person singular.*

Sp. ***Me sorprendieron***;

Port. ***Eles me surpreenderam***;

It. ***Mi hanno sorpreso***;

Fr. ***On m'a surprise.***

- I was surprised.

- **Using the reflexive.**

     Constructions with the reflexive pronoun *se* (*in Spanish, Portuguese and French*) and *si* (*in Italian*) with the 3rd person singular or plural form of the verb are rather common in the

535

Romance languages. However, there are a few points to be remembered.

A. These constructions are predominantly used when the subject (the agent) by whom the action is fulfilled is not a person or unimportant. In this case the verb agrees with the subject in number:

> ### Did you know?
>
> *Senegal is a country in West Africa. The name "Senegal" comes from the Wolof language "Sunuu Gaal", that means "Our Pirogue". It resulted from a misunderstanding between Portuguese sailors and Wolof fishermen in the 15th century.*

Sp. ***El español se habla*** en
este país;

Port. ***O espanhol se fala***
neste país;

It. ***Lo spagnolo si parla*** in
questo paese;

Fr. ***L'espagnol se parle***
dans ce pays.

*- Spanish is spoken in this
country.*

Sp. ***Los libros se venden*** en esta tienda;

Port. ***Os livros se vendem*** nesta loja;

It. ***I libri si vendono*** in questo negozio;

Fr. ***Les livres se vendent*** dans ce magasin.

- The book are sold in this shop.

B. When an indirect object is involved, Spanish and Portuguese use *a reflexive construction*, while French utilizes **on**. Unlike in French, in Spanish and Portuguese, the verbs are used in the 3rd person and agrees with its subject in this case. Study the following:

Sp. ***Se*** le dieron a Ana los pasajes;

Port. *Se* deram a Ana os bilhetes de avião;

Fr. *On* a donné les billets d'avion à Ana.

- *Ana was given the flight tickets.*

NOTE:

In Spanish, if the subject of the sentence is a person, the verb is still used with the reflexive pronoun **se** *but in the 3rd person singular only and the personal* **a** *must be used before this object. For instance:*

Sp. *Se* **vio a mi hermano** *en la calle.*
- *My brother was seen in the street.*

Sp. *Se* **vio a mis amigos** *en la calle*
- *My friends were seen in the street.*

Without the personal **a**, *the first sentence would designate: my brother sees himself in the street, and the second would be incorrect entirely.*

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Numbers

Overview

In the Romance languages, numerals can be in four forms, i.e. **cardinals** (e.g. *one, two, three, four,* etc.), **ordinals** (e.g. *first, second, third, fourth,* etc.), **fractions** (e.g. *half, one third,* etc.) and **collectives** (e.g. *a couple, a dozen*).

Cardinal Numbers

The Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French cardinal numbers are as follows:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
0	cero	zero	zero	zéro
1	uno/una	um/uma	uno/una	un/une
2	dos	dois/duas	due	deux
3	tres	três	tre	trois
4	cuatro	quatro	quattro	quatre
5	cinco	cinco	cinque	cinq

	Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French
6	seis	seis	sei	six
7	siete	sete	sette	sept
8	ocho	oito	otto	huit
9	nueve	nove	nove	neuf
10	diez	dez	dieci	dix
11	once	onze	undici	onze
12	doce	doze	dodici	douze
13	trece	treze	tredici	treize
14	catorce	catorze	quattordici	quatorze
15	quince	quinze	quindici	quinze
16	dieciséis	dezesseis	sedici	seize
17	diecisiete	dezessete	diciassette	dix-sept
18	dieciocho	dezoito	diciotto	dix-huit
19	diecinueve	dezenove	diciannove	dix-neuf

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
20	veinte	vinte	venti	vingt
21	veintiuno	vinte e um	ventuno	vingt et un
22	veintidós	vinte e dois/duas	ventidue	vingt-deux
23	veintitrés	vinte e três	ventitré	vingt-trois
24	veinticuatro	vinte e quatro	ventiquattro	vingt-quatre
25	veinticinco	vinte e cinco	venticinque	vingt-cinq
26	veintiséis	vinte e seis	ventisei	vingt-six
27	veintisiete	vinte e sete	ventisette	vingt-sept
28	veintiocho	vinte e oito	ventotto	vingt-huit
29	veintinueve	vinte e nove	ventinove	vingt-neuf
30	treinta	trinta	trenta	trente
31	treinta y uno	trinta e um/a	trentuno	trente et un
32	treinta y dos	trinta e dois/duas	trentadue	trente-deux
33	treinta y tres	trinta e três	trentatré	trente-trois

	Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French
40	cuarenta	quarenta	quaranta	quarante
50	cincuenta	cinquenta	cinquanta	cinquante
60	sesenta	sessenta	sessanta	soixante
70	setenta	setenta	settanta	soixante-dix
80	ochenta	oitenta	ottanta	quatre-vingts
90	noventa	noventa	novanta	quatre-vingt-dix
100	cien(to)	cem	cento	cent
101	ciento uno	cento e um	cento uno (centouno, centuno)	cent un
102	ciento dos	cento e dois	cento due (centodue)	cent deux
103	ciento tres	cento e três	cento tre (centotré)	cent trois
200	doscientos	duzentos	duecento	deux cents
201	doscientos uno	duzentos e um	duecento uno (duecento uno, duecentuno)	deux cent un

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
202	doscientos dos	duzentos e dois	duecento due (duecento due)	deux cent deux
300	trescientos	trezentos	trecento	trois cents
400	cuatrocientos	quatrocentos	quattrocento	quatre cents
500	quinientos	quinhentos	cinquecento	cinq cents
600	seiscientos	seiscentos	seicento	six cents
700	setecientos	setecentos	settecento	sept cents
800	ochocientos	oitocentos	ottocento	huit cents
900	novecientos	novecentos	novecento	neuf cents
1000	mil	mil	mille	mille
1001	mil uno	mil e um	mille uno	mille un
1100	mil cien	mil e cem	mille cento	mille cent
1101	mil ciento uno	mil cento e um	mille cento uno	mille cent un
1200	mil doscientos	mil e duzentos	mille duecento	mille deux cents

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
2 000	dos mil	dois mil	due mila (duemila)	deux mille
10 000	diez mil	dez mil	dieci mila (diecimila)	dix mille
20 000	veinte mil	vinte mil	venti mila (ventimila)	vingt mille
100 000	cien mil	cem mil	cento mila (centomila)	cent mille
200 000	doscientos mil	duzentos mil	duecento mila (duecento mila)	deux cent mille
1 000 000	un millón	um milhão	un milione	un million
2 000 000	dos millones	dois milhões	due milioni	deux millions
10 000 000	diez millones	dez milhões	dieci milioni	dix millions
100 000 000	cien millones	cem milhões	cento milioni	cent millions
1 000 000 000	mil millones	um bilhão	un miliardo	un milliard
2 000 000 000	dos mil millones	dois bilhões	due miliardi	deux milliards
1 000 000 000 000	un billón	um trilhão	un trilione	un billion
2 000 000 000 000	dos billones	dois trilhões	due trilioni	deux billions

In the Romance languages, Sp. **uno**; Port. **um**; It. **uno**; Fr. **un** agree in gender with a noun. Portuguese **dois** - *two* also has a feminine form, which is **duas**. Observe the following:

Sp. **un** libro; Port. **um** livro (**dois** livros); It. **un** libro; Fr. **un** livre. *- one book.*	Sp. **una** casa; Port. **uma** casa (**duas** casas); It. **una** casa; Fr. **une** maison. *- one house.*

NOTE:

*Spanish and Italian **uno** is predominantly used while counting. It becomes **un** before a masculine noun and **una** in front of a feminine noun. Also, in Spanish, feminine form **una** is not usually shortened before feminine nouns, except when it is used before a noun that begins with a stressed a- or **ha-** (e.g. treinta y **un** águilas - thirty one eagles).*

However, the feminine form of Sp. **una**; Port. **uma**; It. **una**; Fr. **una** is not widely used before Sp. **mil**; Port. **mil**; It. **mille**; Fr. **mille**. It also should be mentioned that Sp. **un**; It. **un**; Port. **um** and Fr. **un** are not usually used before Sp. **ciento** and **mil**; Port. **cem** and **mil**; It. **cento** and **mille** and Fr. **cent** and **mille** in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Did you know?

Punta Arenas is a city in Chile's southernmost Patagonia region. It is the largest city located south of the 46th parallel south. It has a population of about 128 thousand inhabitants. Punta Arenas is a base for Antarctic expeditions.

Study the following:

Sp. **cien** / **mil** libros;

Port. **cem** / **mil** livros;

It. **cento** / **mille** libri;

Fr. **cent** / **mille** livres.

- a hundred / a thousand books.

In the Romance languages Sp. *un millón, un billon*; Port. *um milhão, um bilhão, um trilhão*; It. *un milione* (*due milioni*), *un miliardo* (*due milliardi*), *un trilione* (*due trilioni*); Fr. *un million, un milliard, un billion* take the preposition *de* (in Spanish, Portuguese and French) and *di* (in Italian) before a noun. Below is a table demonstrating this rule:

Spanish	un millón, un billon		
Portuguese	um milhão, um bilhão, um trilhão	+ **de** (Spanish, Portuguese and French) + **di** (Italian)	+ **noun**
Italian	un milione, un miliardo, un trilione		
French	un million, un milliard, un billion		

Sp. *un millón de* euros

Port. *um milhão de* euros

It. *un milione di* euro

Fr. *un million d'*euros

- a million euros

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French use dots to separate thousands while English uses a comma, and a comma is used to mark the decimal in the Romance languages whereas English utilizes a point. Observe the following:

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French	English
1.250.300 2,50	1,250,300 2.50

545

Peculiarities of Spelling Rules of Cardinal Numbers
in the Romance Languages

Despite a certain number of common rules, each Romance language has its own set of peculiar spelling rules of cardinal numbers, which ought to be regarded individually.

Spanish

Remember that Spanish **cien** changes to **ciento** in numbers above 100 and agrees with the gender of the noun (**cientos**, **cientas**). **Cien** does not change before numbers less than a hundred.

Cien libros *- a hundred books*	**Ciento dos** libros *- one hundred and two books* **Doscientas** páginas *- two hundred pages*

Spanish numbers 16-29 use the form **dieci** or **veinti** and another number combined into one word. The final **-e** in **veinte** - *twenty* is changed to an **-i** when counting.

16	**dieciséis**	24	**veinticuatro**
17	**diecisiete**	25	**veinticinco**
18	**dieciocho**	26	**veintiséis**
19	**diecinueve**	27	**veintisiete**
21	**veintiuno**	28	**veintiocho**
22	**veintidós**	29	**veintinueve**
23	**veintitrés**		

546

Note that numbers 21, 22, 23 and 24 have a tilde in order to conserve the word stress. Whereas numbers 31-99 are not combined into one and use *y* between numbers, for example:

31	**treinta y uno**	65	**sesenta y cinco**
32	**treinta y dos**	76	**setenta y seis**
43	**cuarenta y tres**	87	**ochenta y siete**
54	**cincuante y cuatro**	98	**noventa y ocho**

Portuguese

Like in Spanish, in Portuguese **cem** changes to **cento** in numbers above 100 and also agrees with the gender of the noun (**centos, centas**). **Cem** does not change before numbers less than 101.

Cem livros - a hundred books	**Cento e dois** livros - one hundred and two books **Duzentas** páginas - two hundred pages

However, unlike Spanish, Portuguese numbers 16-19 are combined into one, while 21-99 use **e** - *and* between numbers. Study the following:

16	**dezesseis**	34	**trinta e quatro**
17	**dezessete**	45	**quarenta e cinco**
18	**dezoito**	56	**cinquenta e seis**
19	**dezenove**	67	**sessenta e sete**
21	**vinte e um**	78	**setenta e oito**
22	**vinte e dois**	89	**oitenta e nove**

| 23 | **vinte e três** | 91 | **noventa e um** |

NOTE:

*There is no **e** between the thousand and the hundred if there are other numbers after the hundred in Portuguese (e.g. 1,300 - **mil e trezentos**; 1335 - **mil trezentos e trinta e cinco**).*

*Um **bilhão** is one thousand million in Brazilian Portuguese, but in European Portuguese it means one million million. The same is for **trilhão**, which is one thousand billion in Brazilian Portuguese, but one million billion in European Portuguese.*

Italian

It is notable that Italian numbers 11-99 are combined into one word. Also, the final vowel of **venti, trenta, quaranta, cinquanta, sessanta, settanta, ottanta** and **novanta** is dropped while the numbers **uno** and **otto** are added. When **tre** is added to **venti, trenta, quaranta, cinquanta**, etc. the final -e of **tre** is accented (e.g. **ventitré, trentatré, quarantatré, cinquantatré**, etc.). Remember that the final vowel of **ventuno, trentuno, quarantuno, cinquantuno, sessantuno, settantuno, ottantuno** and **novantuno** is dropped before nouns (e.g. **ventun libri**, etc.).

Unlike in Spanish and Portuguese, Italian **cento** is invariable. The numbers that designate tens and units - one, two, etc. are usually added but not attached. However, some people attach them. The compounds of **cento** are attached (e.g. **duecento, trecento, quattrocento**, etc.).

French

It must be noted that in numbers 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71 the **et** is used and there is no hyphen. Observe the following:

21	vingt et un	51	cinquante et un
31	trente et un	61	soixante et un
41	quarante et un	71	soixante et onze

French **et** is not used in 81,91,101 and a hyphen is used in 81 and 91. Study the following:

81	quatre-vingt-un	101	cent un
91	quatre-vingt-onze		

If **vingt** and **cent** are multiplied, they become plural (e.g. *quatre vingts, deux cents*). However, if **vingt** and **cent** are followed by another number, they remain singular (e.g. *vingt-huit, cent cinq*).

In French **mille** never becomes plural (e.g. *quatre mille, trois mille soixante*).

Phrases of Approximation Used with Cardinal Numbers

Following are phrases of approximation which are used with cardinal numbers in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
aproxima damente	aproxima damente	approssim ativamente	approxima tivement	*approximate ly*
alrededor de	em torno de ao redor de	all'incirca	autour de	*about, around*

549

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
más o menos	mais ou menos	più o meno	plus ou moins	*more or less*
cerca de	perto de	circa	à peu près	*near, close to*
sobre	sobre	su	environ	*about, around*
cosa de	coisa de	qualcosa di	chose de	*about*
cosa así	coisa assim	qualcosa così	quelque chose comme ça	*thereabouts*
como	como	come	comme	*some*

Sp. Está situado a **aproximadamente** 15 (quince) kilómetros de la playa;

Port. Está situado a **aproximadamente** 15 (quinze) km da praia;

It. È situate a **approssimativamente** 15 (quindici) chilometri dalla spiaggia;

Fr. Il est situé à **approximativement** 15 (quinze) kilomètres de la plage.

- *It is situated at **approximately** 15 kilometres from the beach.*

Sp. Doscientos kilómetros o **cosa así**;

Port. Duzentos quilômetros ou **coisa assim**;

It. Duecento chilometri o **qualcosa così**;

Fr. Deux cents kilomètres ou *quelque chose comme ça.*

- *Two hundred kilometres or **thereabouts**.*

Did you know?

Maceió is the capital city of the coastal state of Alagoas, Brazil. Its nickname is "The Paradise of Waters". The city is home to countless beaches, lakes, natural pools and reefs. Ponta Verde beach is popular for its palm-lined promenade, kiosks and water sports.

Sp. *Más o menos* veinte euros;

Port. *Mais ou menos* vinte euros;

It. *Più o meno* venti euro;

Fr. *Plus ou moins* vingt euros.

- *More or less twenty euros.*

Sp. Tiene *alrededor de* cincuenta años;

Port. Ele tem *em torno de* cinquenta anos;

It. Ha *all'incirca* cinquant'anni;

Fr. Il a *autour de* cinquante ans.

- *He is **about** fifty years old.*

Use of Cardinal Numbers

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, cardinal numbers are generally used:

• **To count:**

Sp. *uno, dos, tres...*

Port. *um, dois, três...*

It. *uno, due, tre...*

Fr. *un, deux, trois...*

- one, two, three...

• **To indicate dates (See Dates p.571):**

In contrast with English, cardinal numbers are used in the Romance languages for days of the month except for the 1st when it is necessary to use the ordinal number: Sp. *el primero*; Port. *o primeiro*; It. *il primo*; Fr. *le premier*. For example:

Sp. *El primero* de mayo;

Port. *O primeiro* de maio;

It. *Il primo* di maggio;

Fr. *Le premier* mai.

- The first of May.

NOTE:

A complete date in Spanish consists of the masculine definite article: Sp. el + a cardinal number + de + month + de + year whereas in Portuguese the definite article is not used while forming the date. In Italian and French, however, it is composed of the masculine definite article It. il, Fr. le + a cardinal number + month + year.

Below is a table demonstrating the formation of a full date in the Romance languages:

Spanish	el + a cardinal number + de + month + de + year
Portugu ese	a cardinal number + de + month + de + year
Italian	il + a cardinal number + month + year

French	**le** + *a cardinal number* + *month* + *year*

Study the following example:

Sp. Hoy es *el 10 de marzo de 2016*;

Port. Hoje é *10 de março de 2016*;

It. Oggi è *il 10 marzo 2016*;

Fr. Aujourd'hui c'est *le 10 Mars 2016*.

- Today is the first of May.

- **To tell the time of day (See Time p.576):**

    In Spanish and Portuguese and Italian, hours are usually expressed using a form of **ser** (in Spanish and Portuguese) and **essere** (in Italian) + *the feminine definite article* Sp. **la** or **las**; Port. **a** or **as**; It. **la**, **l'** or **le** (in order to agree with the number of unmentioned **hora** or **horas** (Spanish and Portuguese), **ora** or **ore** (Italian) - *hour or hours*) + *a cardinal number*. In Portuguese, the word **hora(-s)** should be added after a cardinal number. In French, hours are normally expressed using the pronoun **il** + **a** form of the verb **être** + *a cardinal number* + *the word* **heure(-s)** - **hour(-s)**.

NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the appropriate form of the verb **ser** and **essere** must be selected, i.e. the 3rd person singular for "one o'clock" and plural for other hours except in French, where only the 3rd person singular of the verb **être** is used when indicating the time of day.*

    The table below shows the idea of how to tell the time of day in the Romance languages:

Spanish	ser (es/son) + la/las + *a cardinal number*
Portugue se	ser (é/são) + a/as + *a cardinal number* + **hora(-s)**
Italian	essere (è/sono) + la,l'/le + *a cardinal number*
French	il + être (est) + *a cardinal number* + **heure(-s)**

Observe the following:

Sp. ¿Que hora es? - *Es la una* (*Son las tres*);

Port. Que horas são? - *É uma hora* (*São três horas*);

It. Che ora è? (Che ore sono?) - *È l'una* (*Sono le tre*); ·

Fr. Quelle heure est-il? - *Il est une heure* (*Il est trois heures*).

- *What time is it? It is one o'clock (It is three o'clock)*

In the Romance languages, minutes past the hour are usually added by the use of Sp. *y*, Port. *e*, It. *e*, Fr. *et* + *cardinal number*. However, French *et* can be dropped. Minute(-s) is not normally used.

Sp. Son las seis *y* diez;

Port. São seis horas *e* dez;

It. Sono le sei *e* dieci;

Fr. Il est six heures dix.

- *It's six ten (It's ten past six).*

• **To indicate age:**

In the Romance languages, one must conjugate the verb Sp. **tener**, Port. **ter**, It. **avere**, Fr. **avoir** - *have* to the subject in

554

order to indicate the age of a person (literally, the number of years he/she has). For example:

Sp. *Tengo* veinticinco años;

Port. Eu *tenho* vinte e cinco anos;

It. *Ho* venticinque anni;

Fr. *J'ai* vingt cinq ans.

- *I am twenty five years old.*

Sp. Mi hermano *tiene* treinta años;

Port. Meu irmão *tem* trinta anos;

It. Mio fratello *ha* trent'anni;

Fr. Mon frère *a* trente ans.

- *My brother is thirty years old.*

Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers are numbers that indicate the order of nouns and just like cardinal numbers, ordinal numbers are also adjectives. However, unlike cardinal numbers, ordinal numbers must agree both in number and in gender with the noun they modify in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Also, ordinal numbers usually precede nouns in the Romance languages. The Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French ordinal numbers are as follows:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st	primero, primera, primeros, primeras	primeiro, primeira, primeiros, primeiras	primo, prima, primi, prime	premier, première, premiers, premières
2nd	segundo(-a)	segundo(-a)	secondo (-a)	deuxième
3rd	tercero(-a)	terceiro(-a)	terzo(-a)	troisième
4th	cuarto(-a)	quarto(-a)	quarto(-a)	quatrième
5th	quinto(-a)	quinto(-a)	quinto(-a)	cinquième
6th	sexto(-a)	sexto(-a)	sesto(-a)	sixième
7th	séptimo(-a)	sétimo(-a)	settimo (-a)	septième
8th	octavo(-a)	oitavo(-a)	ottavo(-a)	huitième
9th	noveno(-a)	nono(-a)	nono(-a)	neuvième
10th	décimo(-a)	décimo(-a)	decimo (-a)	dixième

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
11th	undécimo (-a)	décimo(-a) primeiro (-a)	undicesimo(-a)/ undecimo	onzième
12th	duodécimo (-a)	décimo(-a) segundo(-a)	dodicesimo(-a)/ duodecimo	douzième
13th	decimotercero(-a)	décimo(-a) terceiro(-a)	tredicesimo(-a)/ decimoterzo	treizième
14th	decimocuarto(-a)	décimo(-a) quarto(-a)	quattordicesimo(-a)/ decimoquarto	quatorzième
15th	decimoquinto(-a)	décimo(-a) quinto(-a)	quindicesimo(-a)/ decimoquinto	quinzième
16th	decimosexto(-a)	décimo(-a) sexto(-a)	sedicesimo(-a)/ decimosesto	seizième
17th	decimoséptimo(-a)	décimo(-a) sétimo(-a)	diciassettesimo(-a)/ decimosettimo	dix-septième
18th	decimoctavo(-a)	décimo(-a) oitavo(-a)	diciottesimo(-a)/ decimottavo	dix-huitième

557

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
19th	decimonoveno(-a)	décimo(-a) nono(-a)	diciannovesimo(-a)/ decimonono	dix-neuvième
20th	vigésimo(-a)	vigésimo (-a)	ventesimo (-a)/ vigesimo	vingtième
21st	vigésimo primero(-a)	vigésimo (-a) primeiro (-a)	ventunesimo (-a)/ ventesimo primo	vingt et unième
22nd	vigésimo segundo(-a)	vigésimo(-a) segundo (-a)	ventiduesimo(-a)	vingt-deuxième
23rd	vigésimo tercero(-a)	vigésimo (-a) terceiro(-a)	ventitreesimo(-a)	vingt-troisième
24th	vigésimo cuarto(-a)	vigésimo (-a) quarto(-a)	ventiquattresimo(-a)	vingt-quatrième
25th	vigésimo quinto(-a)	vigésimo (-a) quinto (-a)	venticinquesimo (-a)	vingt-cinquième
26th	vigésimo sexto(-a)	vigésimo (-a) sexto(-a)	ventiseiesimo(-a)	vingt-sixième
27th	vigésimo séptimo(-a)	vigésimo (-a) sétimo(-a)	ventisettesimo(-a)	vingt-septième
28th	vigésimo octavo(-a)	vigésimo (-a) oitavo (-a)	ventottesimo (-a)	vingt-huitième

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
29th	vigésimo noveno(-a)	vigésimo (-a) nono(-a)	ventinove simo(-a)	vingt-neuvième
30th	trigésimo (-a)	trigésimo (-a)	trentesim o(-a)	trentième
31st	trigésimo primero(-a)	trigésimo (-a) primeiro (-a)	trentunesi mo(-a)	trente et unième
32nd	trigésimo segundo(-a)	trigésimo (-a) segundo(-a)	trentadue simo(-a)	trente-deuxième
33rd	trigésimo tercero(-a)	trigésimo (-a) terceiro(-a)	trentatree simo(-a)	trente-troisième
40th	cuadragési mo(-a)	quadragési mo(-a)	quarantes imo(-a)	quarantiè me
50th	quincuagési mo(-a)	quincuagés imo(-a)	cinquante simo(-a)	cinquanti ème
60th	sexagésimo (-a)	sexagésimo (-a)	sessantesi mo(-a)	soixantiè me
70th	septuagésim o(-a)	septuagési mo(-a)	settantesi mo(-a)	soixante-dixième
80th	octogésimo (-a)	octogésimo (-a)	ottantesi mo(-a)	quatre-vingtième

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
90th	nonagésimo (-a)	nonagésimo(-a)	novantesimo(-a)	quatre-vingt-dixième
100th	centésimo (-a)	centésimo (-a)	centesimo (-a)	centième
101st	centésimo primero(-a)	centésimo (-a) primeiro (-a)	centounesimo(-a)	cent-unième
102nd	centésimo segundo(-a)	centésimo (-a) segundo(-a)	centoduesimo(-a)	cent-deuxième
103rd	centésimo tercero(-a)	centésimo (-a) terceiro(-a)	centotreesimo(-a)	cent-troisième
200th	ducentésimo(-a)	ducentésimo(-a)	duecentesimo(-a)	deux-centième
201st	ducentésimo primero (-a)	ducentésimo(-a) primeiro (-a)	duecento unesimo (-a)	deux cent unième
202nd	ducentésimo segundo (-a)	ducentésimo(-a) segundo(-a)	duecento duesimo (-a)	deux cent deuxième
300th	tricentésimo(-a)	tricentésimo(-a)	trecentesimo(-a)	trois-centième
400th	cuadringentésimo(-a)	quadrigentésimo(-a)	quattrocentesimo (-a)	quatre-centième

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
500th	quingentési mo(-a)	quingentési mo(-a)	cinquecen tesimo(-a)	cinq- centième
600th	sexcentésim o(-a)	seiscentési mo(-a)	seicentesi mo(-a)	six- centième
700th	septingenté simo(-a)	septigentés imo(-a)	settecente simo(-a)	sept- centième
800th	octingentési mo(-a)	octigentési mo(-a)	ottocentes imo(-a)	huit- centième
900th	noningentés imo(-a)	nongentési mo(-a)	novecente simo(-a)	neuf- centième
1000th	milésimo (-a)	milésimo (-a)	millesimo (-a)	millième
2 000	dos milésimo (-a)	dois milésimo (-a)	duemilles imo (-a)	deux millième
10 000	diez milésimo (-a)	dez milésimo (-a)	diecimille simo(-a)	dix millième
100 000	cien milésimo (-a)	cem milésimo (-a)	centomill esimo	cent millième
1 000 000	millonésim o(-a)	milionésim o(-a)	milionesi mo(-a)	millioniè me

Did you know?

Djibouti is a French-and Arabic-speaking country, located in the Horn of Africa. It is home to one of the saltiest bodies of water in the world, the Lake Assal, in the Danakil Desert in Central Djibouti.

Sp. Es *la segunda* casa que compró;

Port. É *a segunda* casa que ela comprou;

It. È *la seconda* casa che ha comprato;

Fr. C'est *la deuxième* maison qu'elle a acheté.

- *It is **the second** house that she has bought.*

Sp. *Los primeros* días de trabajo;

Port. *Os primeiros* dias de trabalho;

It. *I primi* giorni di lavoro;

Fr. *Les premiers* jours de travail.

- ***The first** days of work.*

NOTE:

*In Spanish, **primero** and **tercero** must drop the **-o** before masculine singular nouns. For instance:*

*El **primer** día - the first day;*
*Está en el **tercer** piso - it is on the third floor.*

In Italian, in order to form ordinal numbers, the suffix -**esimo** is added to the cardinal numbers by dropping the final vowel of the cardinal number except for numbers ending in -**tré**.

562

Those cardinal numbers that end in *-tré* must drop their accent - *tre* when *-esimo* is added (e.g. *trentatreesimo*).

In French, when the cardinal number ends in a mute *e*, the *e* must be dropped before adding the suffix *-ième* to form the ordinal number (e.g. mill*e* - mill*ième*). Also, the French **second/ seconde** may replace **deuxième**. In some fixed expression, **tiers** and **tierce** are used in place of **troisième** (e.g. *le tiers-monde* - *the third world*; **une tierce personne** - *a third party*).

In the Romance languages, ordinals are usually used up to the 10th , since the 11th and higher are rather uncommon and leaves a strange impression when used in casual speech. Furthermore, for bigger numbers, it is far more common to utilize the ordinal numbers in speech. Observe the following:

Sp. Vivo en el cuarto (número) **setenta** (not septuagésimo);

Port. Eu moro no quarto (número) **setenta** (not septuagésimo);

It. Io vivo nella stanza (numero) **settanta** (not settantesimo);

Fr. Je vis dans la chambre (numéro) **soixante-dix** (not soixante-dixième).

*- I live in the room (number) **seventy**.*

It is noticeable that if cardinal and ordinal numbers are used together, the cardinal number must precede the ordinal in Spanish, Portuguese and French.

NOTE:
However, in Italian, the ordinals precede the cardinals in this case. For example:

Sp. los **dos primeros** días;
Port. os **dois primeiros** dias;
It. i **primi due** giorni;
Fr. les **deux premiers** jours.
- the first two days.

Adverbial Ordinals in the Romance Languages

Most common adverbial forms and combinations of ordinals are as follows in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
primera mente	primeiram ente	primo	première ment	*firstly*
en primer lugar	em primeiro lugar	in primo luogo	en premier lieu	*in the first place*

Fractions

Generally, fractions are used to express a portion or part of a whole. To form fractions, the cardinals and the ordinals are used together in the Romance languages. However, there are also special forms, which must be remembered.

	Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French
1/2 (a half)	un medio (una media)/ la mitad	um meio (uma meia)/ a metade	un mezzo (una mezza)/ la metà	un demi (une demie)/ la moitié
1/3	un tercio (una tercia)	um terço (uma terça)	un terzo (una terza)	un tiers (une tierce)
1/4	un cuarto (una cuarta)	um quarto (uma quarta)	un quarto (una quarta)	un quart (une quarte)

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1/5	un quinto (una quinta)	um quinto (uma quinta)	un quinto (una quinta)	un cinquième (une cinquième)
1/6	un sexto (una sexta)	um sexto (uma sexta)	un sesto (una sesta)	un sixième (une sixième)
1/7	un séptimo (una séptima)	um sétimo (uma sétima)	un settimo (una settima)	un septième (une septième)
1/8	un octavo (una octava)	um oitavo (uma oitava)	un ottavo (una ottava)	un huitième (une huitième)
1/9	un noveno (una novena)	um nono (uma nona)	un nono (una nona)	un neuvième (une neuvième)
1/10	un décimo (una décima)	um décimo (uma décima)	un decimo (una decima)	un dixième (une dixième)
2/3	dos tercios (dos tercias)	dois terços (duas terças)	due terzi (due terze)	deux tiers (deux tierces)
3/4	tres cuartos (tres cuartas)	três quartos (três quartas)	tre quarti (tre quarte)	trois quarts (trois quartes)

Did you know?

Valencia is the 3rd largest city in Spain (after Madrid and Barcelona). It lies on Spain's southeastern coast. It is known for its City of Arts and Sciences, with ultra-modern structures, including family attractions, a planetarium, an oceanarium and a botanical collection of plant species native to Valencia.

Sp. Me gustaría **medio** kilo de tomates;

Port. Eu gostaria de **meio** quilo de tomates;

It. Vorrei **mezzo** chilo di pomodori;

Fr. Je voudrais **un demi**-kilo de tomates.

*- I would like **half** a kilo of tomatoes.*

NOTE:

*Sp. **la midad**; Port. **a metade**; It. **la metà**; Fr. **la moitié** are primarily used in non-arithmetical context. Look at the example:*

*Sp. Bebieron **la mitad** de la botella;*

*Port. Eles beberam **a metade** da garrafa;*

*It. Hanno bevuto **la metà** della bottiglia;*

*Fr. Ils ont bu **la moitié** de la bouteille.*

*- They drank **half** the bottle.*

In Spanish, from 1/11 onwards fractions are formed by adding **-avo** in Spanish to cardinal numbers. Note that if the number ends in **-a**, only **-vo** must be added whereas in Portuguese **avos** is used with cardinal numbers but not attached to them. In Italian and French ordinal numbers are used in this case. Observe the following:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1/12	un doceavo	um doze avos	un dodicesimo	un douzième
1/13	un treceavo	um treze avos	un tredicesimo	un treizième
1/14	un catorceavo	um catorze avos	un quattordicesimo	un quatorziè me
1/15	un quinceavo	um quinze avos	un quindicesimo	un quinzième
1/60	un sesentavo	um sessenta avos	un sessantesimo	un soixantiè me

Arithmetical Operations

It must be remembered that in Spanish and Portuguese the verb **ser** - *to be* is used meaning *equals* whereas in Italian and French the verb It. *fare*; Fr. *faire* - *to make/do* in this case. The following are the basic arithmetical calculations in the Romance languages:

	Spanish	Portugues e	Italian	French
Addition	*Adición*	*Adição*	*Addizione*	*Addition*
5 + 4 = 9	5 y/ **más** 4 **son** 9	5 e/ **mais** 4 **são** 9	5 **più** 4 **fa** 9	5 **et** 4 **font** 9
Subtract ion	*Sustracción*	*Subtração*	*Sottrazione*	*Soustraction*

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
6 - 2 = 4	6 **menos** 2 **son** 4	6 **menos** 2 **são** 4	6 **meno** 2 **fa** 4	6 **moins** 2 **font** 4
Multiplication	*Multiplicación*	*Multiplicação*	*Moltiplicazione*	*Multiplication*
5 x 10 = 50	5 **multiplicado por** 10 **son** 50	5 **multiplicado por** 10 **são** 50	5 **per** 10 **fa** 50	5 **fois** 10 **font** 50
Division	*División*	*Divisão*	*Divisione*	*Division*
20 ÷ 2 = 10	20 **dividido por** 2 **son** 10	20 **dividido por** 2 **são** 10	20 **diviso** 2 **fa** 10	20 **divisé par** 2 **fait** 10

Collective Numbers

Collective numbers are considered to be nouns and are used to express an approximate quantity of something or specify groups in the Romance languages. It is noticeable that in order to form collective numbers, the following suffixes are added to most cardinal numbers in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
-ena	*-ena*	*-ina*	*-aine*

Below are some of the collective numbers:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
2	un par	um par	una coppia	une paire
10	una decena	uma dezena	una diecina	une dizaine
12	una docena	uma dúzia	una dozzina	une douzaine
15	una quincena	uma quinzena	una quindicina	une quinzaine
20	una veintena	uma vintena	una ventina	une vingtaine
40	una cuarentena	uma quarentena	una quarantina	une quarantaine
100	una centena	uma centena	un centinaio	une centaine
1 000	un millar	um mil	un migliaio	un millier
1 000 000	un millón	um milhão	un milione	un millon

NOTE:

*Such collective nouns as **a pair**, **a thousand** and **a million** are exceptions and no suffixes are added to them.*

*Sp. **cuarentena**, Port. **quarentena**, It. **quarantine** and Fr. **quarantaine** also means **quarantine**.*

When collective numbers are used before a noun, the preposition *de* (in Spanish, Portuguese and French) and *di* (in Italian) is used. Observe the following:

Sp. Ella compró *una docena de huevos*;

Port. Ela comprou *uma dúzia de ovos*;

It. Lei ha comprato *una dozzina di uova*;

Fr. Elle a acheté *une douzaine d'œufs*.

- *She bought a dozen of eggs*.

Multiple Numerals

The Romance languages do not have the English equivalent ending *-fold* (e.g. tenfold). Therefore, the combination of *cardinal number* + *times* can be used as an alternative:

Spanish	Portuguese	Portuguese	French
cardinal number + **veces**	cardinal number + **vezes**	cardinal number + **volte**	cardinal number + **fois**

Sp. La población de España es *4 veces* más grande que la de Portugal;

Port. A população da Espanha é *4 vezes* maior que a de Portugal;

It. La popolazione della Spagna è *4 volte* più grande di quella del Portogallo;

Fr. La population de l'Espagne est *4 fois* plus grand que du Portugal.

- *The population of Spain is 4 times bigger than of Portugal.*

570

Dates

Days

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
lunes	segunda-feira	lunedì	lundi	*Monday*
martes	terça-feira	martedì	mardi	*Tuesday*
miércoles	quarta-feira	mercoledì	mercredi	*Wednesday*
jueves	quinta-feira	giovedì	jeudi	*Thursday*
viernes	sexta-feira	venerdì	vendredi	*Friday*
sábado	sábado	sabato	samedi	*Saturday*
domingo	domingo	domenica	dimanche	*Sunday*

NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the days of the week are used with the definite article in order to express "on a certain day", but in Portuguese the preposition **em** must be placed in front of the definite article. However, in French no articles are used in this case. Once the article is used before the day of the week, it means an action happens every week (e.g. **mardi** - on Tuesday; **le mardi** - on Tuesdays).*

Sp. Lo veo **el** viernes;

Port. Eu o vejo **na** sexta-feira;

571

It. Lo vedo *il* venerdì;

Fr. Je le vois vendredi (le vendredi - on Fridays).

- I see him on Friday.

Months

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
enero	janeiro	gennaio	janvier	*January*
febrero	fevereiro	febbraio	février	*February*
marzo	março	marzo	mars	*March*
abril	abril	aprile	avril	*April*
mayo	maio	maggio	mai	*May*
junio	junho	giugno	juin	*June*
julio	julho	luglio	juillet	*July*
agosto	agosto	agosto	août	*August*
septiembre	setembro	settembre	septembre	*September*
octubre	outubro	ottobre	octobre	*October*
noviembre	novembro	novembre	novembre	*November*
diciembre	dezembro	dicembre	décembre	*December*

In order to say *"in a particular month"*, the prepositions Sp. *en*, Port. *em*, It. *in*, Fr. *en* are used in the Romance languages. Note that in Italian and French, it is also possible to use such combinations as Fr. *au mois de* + *a month*; It. *nel mese di* + *a month*. For example:

Did you know?

João Pessoa is the capital of the state of Paraíba in eastern Brazil. It is known as "the city where the sun rises first", as it is the easternmost city in the Americas. The city is also considered "the 2nd greenest in the world (second only to Paris, France).

Sp. Voy a Argentina **en** febrero;

Port. Eu vou para a Argentina **em** fevereiro;

It. Vado in Argentina **in** febbraio (**nel mese di** febbraio);

Fr. Je vais en Argentine **en** février (**au mois de** février).

- I am going to Argentina in February.

Remember that the days of the week and the months of the year are not capitalized in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

In the Romance languages dates are usually written as follows:

Sp. ¿Qué día es hoy? - **Hoy es domingo, el 5 de junio**;

Port. Que dia é hoje? - **Hoje é domingo, 5 de junho**;

It. Che giorno è oggi? - **Oggi è domenica, 5 giugno**;

Fr. Quel jour sommes-nous aujourd'hui? - **Aujourd'hui est le dimanche, 5 juin.**

- What day is it today? - Today is Sunday, June 5.

NOTE:
*It must be remembered that a complete date in Spanish is formed by placing a day of the week + the masculine definite article: Sp. **el** + a cardinal number + **de** + month + **de** + year. Unlike in Spanish, in Portuguese the definite article is not used while forming the date. In Italian a*

*complete date is composed of a day of the
week + a cardinal number + month + year.
In French, the definite article must be put
before a day of the week while forming the
date.*

Below is a table showing the formation of complete dates in the Romance languages:

Spanish	*day + **el** + a cardinal number + **de** + month + **de** + year*
Portuguese	*day + a cardinal number + **de** + month + **de** + year*
Italian	*day + a cardinal number + month + year*
French	***le** + day + a cardinal number + month + year*

Observe the following:

Sp. Hoy es *jueves, **el 10 de marzo de 2016**;*

Port. Hoje é ***quinta-feira, 10 de março de 2016**;*

It. Oggi è ***giovedì, 10 marzo 2016**;*

Fr. Aujourd'hui c'est ***le jeudi, 10 Mars 2016**.*

- Today is Thursday, March 10, 2016.

Ways to Ask the Date in the Romance Languages

In order to ask what day it is today one can use the following phrases in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¿Cuál es la fecha de hoy?	Qual é a data de hoje?	Qual è la data di oggi?	Quelle est la date d'aujourd'hui?	*What date is it today?*
¿Qué día es hoy?	Que dia é hoje?	Che giorno è oggi?	Quel jour est-ce aujourd'hui?	*What day is it today?*
¿A cómo estamos?		Che giorno siamo oggi?	Quel jour somme-nous aujourd'hui?	*What day is it today?*
¿A cuántos estamos hoy?		Quanto ne abbiamo oggi?		*What day is it today?*

Seasons

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el verano	o verão	l'estate	l'été	*summer*
el otoño	o outono	l'autunno	l'automne	*fall*
el invierno	o inverno	l'inverno	l'hiver	*winter*
la primavera	a primavera	la primavera	le printemps	*spring*

Observe the prepositions used with the seasons in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en verano	**no** verão	**in** estate	**en** été	*in summer*
en otoño	**no** outono	**in** autunno	**en** automne	*in fall*
en invierno	**no** inverno	**in** inverno	**en** hiver	*in winter*
en la primavera	**na** primavera	**in** primavera	**au** printemps	*in spring*

NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the word spring is feminine while in French all the seasons are masculine. Note that Spanish and Portuguese **primavera** is used with the preposition **en** (Spanish), **em** (Portuguese) and the feminine definite article. Whereas French **pringtemps** is used with the preposition **au** instead of **en**.*

Time

The phrase for *What time is it?* is expressed as follows in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¿Qué hora es?	Que horas são?	Che ora è?/ Che ore sono?	Quelle heure est-il?	*What time is it?*

In Spanish and Portuguese and Italian, hours are usually expressed using a form of **ser** (in Spanish and Portuguese) and **essere** (in Italian) + the feminine definite article Sp. *la* or *las*; Port. *a* or *as*; It. *la*, *l'* or *le* (in order to agree with the number of unmentioned *hora* or *horas* (Spanish and Portuguese), *ora* or *ore* (Italian) - hour or hours) + a cardinal number. In Portuguese the word **hora(-s)** - *hour(-s)* and **minutos** - *minutes* are optional.

In French, *hours* are normally expressed using the pronoun *il* + a form of the verb *être* + a cardinal number + the word **heure(-s)** - *hour(-s)*.

Remember that in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the appropriate form of the verb **ser** and **essere** must be selected, i.e. the 3rd person singular for *"one o'clock"* and plural for other hours except in French where only the 3rd person singular of the verb *être* is used when indicating the time of day.

The table below shows the idea of how to tell the time of day in the Romance languages:

Spanish	ser (es/son) + la/las + *a cardinal number*
Portuguese	ser (é/são) + a/as + *a cardinal number* + (hora(-s))
Italian	essere (è/sono) + la,l'/le + *a cardinal number*
French	il + être (est) + *a cardinal number* + heure(-s)

Observe the following:

Sp. ¿Que hora es? - *Es la una (Son las tres)*;

Port. Que horas são? - *É uma (hora) (São três horas)*;

It. Che ora è? (Che ore sono?) - *È l'una (Sono le tre)*;

Fr. Quelle heure est-il? - *Il est une heure (Il est trois heures)*.

- *What time is it? It is one o'clock (It is three o'clock)*

It is worth mentioning that in Spain, Portugal, Brazil, Italy and France, as well as other countries where Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are spoken, the 24-hour time is used widely. Study the entire 24-hour system:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
1	Es la una	É uma (hora)	È l'una	Il est une heure	*It's 1 A.M.*
2	Son las dos	São duas (horas)	Sono le due	Il est deux heures	*It's 2 A.M*
3	Son las tres	São três (horas)	Sono le tre	Il est trois heures	*It's 3 A.M.*
4	Son las cuatro	São quatro (horas)	Sono le quattro	Il est quatre heures	*It's 4 A.M.*
5	Son las cinco	São cinco (horas)	Sono cinque	Il est cinq heures	*It's 5 A.M.*
6	Son las seis	São seis (horas)	Sono le sei	Il est six heures	*It's 6 A.M.*

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
7	Son las siete	São sete (horas)	Sono le sette	Il est sept heures	*It's 7 A.M.*
8	Son las ocho	São oito (horas)	Sono le otto	Il est huit heurs	*It's 8 A.M.*
9	Son las nueve	São nove (horas)	Sono le nove	Il est neuf heures	*It's 9 A.M.*
10	Son las diez	São dez (horas)	Sono le dieci	Il est dix heures	*It's 10 A.M.*
11	Son las once	São onze (horas)	Sono le undici	Il est onze heures	*It's 11 A.M.*
12	Son las doce	São doze (horas)	Sono le dodici	Il est douze heures	*It's 12 A.M.*
13	Son las trece	São treze (horas)	Sono le tredici	Il est treize heures	*It's 1 P.M.*
14	Son las catorce	São catorze (horas)	Sono le quattordici	Il est quatorze heures	*It's 2 P.M.*
15	Son las quince	São quinze (horas)	Sono le quindici	Il est quinze heures	*It's 3 P.M.*
16	Son las dieciséis	São dezasseis (horas)	Sono le sedici	Il est seize heures	*It's 4 P.M.*

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
17	Son las diecisiete	São dezassete (horas)	Sono le diciassette	Il est dix-sept heures	It's 5 P.M.
18	Son las dieciocho	São dezoito (horas)	Sono le diciotto	Il est dix-huit heures	It's 6 P.M.
19	Son las diecinueve	São dezanove (horas)	Sono le diciannove	Il est dix-neuf heures	It's 7 P.M.
20	Son las veinte	São vinte (horas)	Sono le venti	Il est vingt heures	It's 8 P.M.
21	Son las veintiuno	São vinte e um (horas)	Sono le ventuno	Il est vingt et une heures	It's 9 P.M.
22	Son las veintidós	São vinte e duas (horas)	Sono le ventidue	Il est vingt-deux heures	It's 10 P.M.
23	Son las veintitrés	São vinte e três	Sono le ventitré	Il est vingt-trois heures	It's 11 P.M.
24	Son las veinticuatro	São vinte e quatro	Sono le ventiquattro	Il est vingt-quatre heures	It's 12 P.M.

In the Romance languages, minutes are usually added to the hours by the use of Sp. *y*, Port. *e*, It. *e*, Fr. *et* + cardinal number. However, French *et* can be dropped. Minute(-s) is not normally used.

Sp. Son las seis *y* diez (minutos);

Port. São seis (horas) *e* dez (minutos);

It. Sono le sei *e* dieci (minuti);

Fr. Il est six heures dix (minutes).

- It's six ten (It's ten past six).

The half hour or 15 minutes can be expressed in two ways in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Study the following:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
cuarto or **quince**	**quarto** or **quinze**	**quarto** or **quindici**	**quart** or **quinze**	*quarter or fifteen*
media or **treinta**	**meia** or **trinta**	**mezza** **(mezzo)** or **trenta**	**demie** or **trente**	*half or thirty*

NOTE:

*In Brazilian Portuguese, **quinze** - fifteen is used rather than **quarto** - a quarter. In Italian, the masculine indefinite article is used before **quarto**.*

Sp. Son las tres y ***cuarto*** (Son las tres y ***quince***);

Port. São três (horas) e ***quinze***;

It. Sono le tre e ***un quarto*** (Sono le tre e ***quindici***);

Fr. Il est trois heures et ***quart*** (Il est trois heures ***quinze***).

- It's 3:15

Did you know?

Ravenna is a city in Northern Italy. It is known for its late Roman and Byzantine architecture. It was the capital of the Western Roman Empire from 402 until 476 - the collapse of the empire. Afterwards, the city was the center of Byzantine (East Roman) power in Italy from 584 to 751.

Sp. Son las cinco y *media* (Son las tres y *treinta*);

Port. São cinco (horas) e *meia* (São cinco (horas) e *trinta*;

It. Sono le cinque e *mezza* (*mezzo*) (Sono le cinque e *trenta*);

Fr. Il est trois heures et *demie* (Il est trois heures *trente*).

- It's 5:30

Normally, after the half hour, the minutes must be subtracted from the next hour by utilizing the words Sp. *menos*; Port. *para as* (or *pras*); It. *meno*; Fr. *moins* - *minus*. Observe the following:

Sp. Son las cuatro *menos* cuarto;

Port. São quinze *para as (pras)* quatro;

It. Sono le quattro *meno* un quarto;

Fr. Il est quatre heures *moins* quart.

- It's quarter to four.

Sp. Son las ocho *menos* veinte;

Port. São vinte *para as (pras)* oito;

It. Sono le otto *meno* venti;

Fr. Il est huit heures *moins* vingt.

- It's twenty to eight.

In order to express A.M. or P.M., the following expressions are used in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
de la mañana	da manhã	di mattina	du matin	*in the morning (A.M.)*
de la tarde	da tarde	del pomeriggio	de l'après-midi	*in the afternoon (from 12 P.M. to 5 P.M.)*
de la noche	da noite	di sera	du soir	*in the evening (5 P.M. till late P.M.)*

Sp. Es la una *de la mañana*;

Port. É uma (hora) *da manhã*;

It. È l'una *di mattina*;

Fr. Il est une heure *du matin*.

- It's one in the morning.

Sp. Son las dos *de la tarde*;

Port. São duas (horas) *da tarde*;

It. Sono le due *del pomeriggio*;

Fr. Il est deux heures *de l'après-midi*.

- It's two in the afternoon.

Sp. Son las ocho *de la noche*;

Port. São oito (horas) *da noite*;

It. Sono le otto *di sera*;

Fr. Il est huit heures *du soir*.

- *It's eight in the evening.*

In order to ask the question: *At what time?* one should say the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¿A qué hora?	A que horas?	A che ora?	À quelle heure?	*At what time?*

While answering such question, it is necessary to utilize the preposition *a* (in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian) and *à* (in French) - *at* before the specified time or such words as:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a mediodía	ao meio-dia	a mezzogiorno	à midi	*at noon*
a (la) medianoche	à meia-noite	a mezzanotte	à minuit	*at midnight*

Sp. ¿A qué hora llega el tren? - El tren llega *a mediodía*;

Port. A que horas chega o trem? - O trem chega *ao meio-dia*;

It. A che ora arriva il treno? - Il treno arriva *a mezzogiorno*;

Fr. A quelle heure arrive le train? - Le train arrive *à midi*.

*- At what time does the train arrive? - The train arrives **at noon**.*

NOTE:

*It is noticeable that the preposition **a** must be articulated with an appropriate feminine definite article while expressing the particular time in Portuguese and Italian. In Spanish, this preposition does not articulate with the feminine definite article. In French, there is no article used at all when expressing time.*

Portuguese	Italian
a + as =**à/às**	a + le = **all'/alle**

Sp. ¿A qué hora llega el tren? - El tren llega **a la una** (**a las** dos);

Port. A que horas chega o trem? - O trem chega **à uma** (**às** duas);

It. A che ora arriva il treno? - Il treno arriva **all'**una (**alle** due);

Fr. A quelle heure arrive le train? - Le train arrive **à une heure** (**à** deux heures).

- At what time does the train arrive? - The train arrives at one (at two) o'clock.

Did you know?

French is the official language of the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC). It is accepted as the lingua franca to facilitate communication among the different ethnic groups. As many as 250 ethnic groups have been identified.

The expression *sharp* would be Sp. **en punto**; Port. **em ponto**; It. **in punto**; Fr. **précises** (or **juste**). Study the following:

Sp. Me levanto a las siete **en punto**;

Port. Eu levanto às sete **em ponto**;

It. Mi alzo alle sette **in punto**;

Fr. Je me lève à sept heures **précises** (**juste**).

- *I get up at seven A.M. sharp.*

In order to express the time when an event starts and ends, one must use the following structure in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
desde las (horas) **hasta las** (horas) *or* **de** (horas) **a** (horas)	**das** (horas) **até às** (horas)	**dalle** (ore) **alle (all')** (ore)	**de** (heures) **à** (heures)	*from (hour) to (hour)*

Sp. La lección será **desde las** nueve **hasta las** doce (horas);

(or La lección será **de** nueve **a** doce);

Port. A lição será **das** nove **até às** doze (horas);

It. La lezione sarà **dalle** nove **alle** dodici (ore);

Fr. La leçon sera **de** neuf **à** douze (heures).

- *The lesson will be **from** nine **to** twelve.*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Overview

Like the English prepositions *"with"*, *"of"*, *"to"*, *"from"*, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French prepositions are used to express many types of connections or relationships between two words or different parts of the sentence by means of connecting them together. They normally demonstrate direction, location, time, purpose, means, cause and so on. Prepositions can be simple (consisting of only one word), and compound (consisting of several words). For example:

Simple preposition	Compound preposition
Sp. La casa **de** mi padre; Port. A casa **do** meu pai; It. La casa **di** mio padre; Fr. La maison **de** mon père. - *The house of my father.*	Sp. **Cerca de** mi casa; Port. **Perto da** minha casa; It. **Vicino a** casa mia; Fr. **Près de** ma maison. - *Near my house.*

It is notable that Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French simple and compound prepositions must be followed by a noun or noun group, a pronoun or an infinitive, in contrast to English which utilizes the gerund (with *-ing* ending). Study the following:

Sp. Yo juego *con mi hijo*. > Yo juego *con él*.

Port. Eu jogo *com meu filho*. > Eu jogo *com ele*.

It. Io gioco *con mio figlio*. > Io gioco *con lui*.

Fr. Je joue *avec mon fils*. > Je joue *avec lui*.

- *I play with my son.* > *I play with him.*

Did you know?

Málaga is a city on southern Spain's Costa del Sol (Coast of the Sun) of the Mediterranean. The internationally known painter and sculptor Pablo Picasso and the actor Antonio Banderas were born in Málaga.

Sp. **Antes de** dormir, leo un libro.

Port. **Antes de dormir**, eu leio um livro.

It. **Prima di dormire**, leggo un libro.

Fr. **Avant de dormir**, je lis un livre.

- *Before sleeping I read a book.*

In the Romance languages, the prepositions, especially the most common ones, have several meanings in English, and the right translation usually depends on the context in the phrase. Therefore, the correct uses of different prepositions must be memorized and learned through practice since there are no strict rules. It is advised to learn each combination individually by means of using a dictionary to find more examples of the uses of prepositions.

Simple Prepositions

Below is a list of the most frequent simple prepositions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a	a	a	à	to, at, in

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
de	de	di	de	*of, from*
en	em	in	en, dans	*in, by, into*
——	——	da	chez	*to, at the house of, at someone's place*
para	para	per	pour	*for, in order to*
por	por	da	par	*by*
con	com	con	avec	*with*
sin	sem	senza	sans	*without*
contra	contra	contro	contre	*against*
entre	entre	tra	entre	*between, among*
sobre	sobre	su	sur	*about, on, upon, above, over*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
frente a	perante/ em frente a	davanti a	devant	*before, in the presence of*
bajo (debajo de)	sob (debaixo de)	sotto	sous	*under*
desde	desde	da	depuis	*since, from*
durante	durante	durante	pendant (durant)	*during*
hasta	até	fino a	jusqu'à	*until, toward*
hacia	para	verso	vers	*towards*
excepto, salvo	exceto, salvo	eccetto, salvo	excepté, sauf	*except*
según, confor me a	segundo, conforme	secondo, conforme, (conforme mente a)	selon, conformé ment à, d'après	*according to*

Uses of Simple Prepositions

Preposition a (Sp. Port. It.), à (Fr.)

The preposition Sp., Port., It. *a* and Fr. *à* is very common and usually occurs in a wide spectrum of contexts and is used:

- **to express motion or direction *in*, *at* or *to* some place:**

Sp. Ellos van *al* cine mañana;

Port. Eles vão *ao* cinema amanhã;

It. Loro vanno *al* cinema domani;

Fr. Ils vont *au* cinéma demain.

- *They go **to** the cinema tomorrow.*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese, the preposition **para** can also be used to indicate movement towards, but **a** expresses a short stay while **para** means a rather long or even permanent stay. Study the following:*

A	Para
Ele vai *a* Lisboa em viagem de turismo *- He is going to Lisbon in tourist trip (and he is coming back soon).*	Ele vai *para* Lisboa *- He is going to Lisbon (and he does not know when he is coming back).*

- **to connect one verb to an infinitive (See also Use of the Infinitive p.469):**

In this case this preposition is not translated directly. For example:

Sp. Ella empieza *a* cantar;

Port. Ela começa *a* cantar;

It. Lei comincia *a* cantare;

Fr. Elle commence *à* chanter.

- *She starts to sing.*

Below is a list of the most frequently used verbs which require the use of the preposition Sp., Port., It. *a* and Fr. *à* before adding an infinitive.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ayudar a	ajudar a	aiutare a	aider à	*to help to*
aprender a	aprender a	apprendere a, imparare a	apprendre à	*to learn how to*
enseñar a	ensinar a	insegnare a	enseigner à	*to teach how to*
comenzar a, empezar a	começar a	cominciare a iniziare a	commencer à	*to begin to, to start to*
ponerse a	pôr-se a	mettersi a	se mettre à	*to start to, to set about*
invitar a	convidar a	invitare a	inviter à	*to invite to*
prepararse a	preparar-se *para*	prepararsi a	se préparer à	*to prepare to*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
dedicarse a	dedicar-se a	dedicarsi a	se consacrer à, se vouer à	*to dedicate oneself to*
decidirse a	decidir-se a	decidersi a	se décider à	*to decide to, to make up one's mind*
volver a	voltar a	tornare a	retourner à	*to do something again*
acostumbra rse a	acostumar -se a	abituarsi a	s'habituer à	*to become accustome d to*
obligar a	obrigar a	obbligare a	obliger à	*to oblige*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese, the verb **preparar-se** is used with the preposition **para**.*

- **to imply manner or how something is performed (*with, by, on*):**

Sp. Voy *a* pie;

Port. Vou *a* pé;

It. Vado *a* piedi;

Fr. Je vais *à* pied.

- *I go **on** foot.*

593

Here are some of the most common phrases expressing manner, which are used along with the preposition *a* (*à*) in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
a ciegas	a cegas	alla cieca	à l'aveuglet te	*blindly*
a caballo	a cavalo	a cavallo	à cheval	*on horseback*
a lápiz	a lápis	a matita	au crayon	*in pencil*
a mano	a mão	a mano	à la main	*by hand*
a pie	a pé	a piedi	à pied	*on foot*
a su manera	a sua maneira	alla sua maniera	à sa manière	*in one's own way*
but: **en** alta/baja voz	but: **em** voz alta/ baixa	but: **ad** alta/a bassa voce	à voix haute/ basse	*loudly/in a low voice*

Sp. Hablan *en alta voz*;

Port. Eles falam *em voz alta*;

It. Parlano *ad alta voce*;

Fr. Ils parlent *à voix haute.*

- *They speak loudly.*

NOTE:

*However, French **de** must be used while expressing the noun modified by the indefinite article in adverbial clauses of manner (e.g. Ils parlent **d'une** voix inquiétante - They speak in an anxious voice; Elle chante **d'une** manière parfaite - She sings perfectly). And if the noun is not modified by an indefinite article, the preposition **avec** is always used (e.g. Ils parlent **avec anxiété** - They speak anxiously).*

Remember that means of mechanical transportation are normally expressed by the preposition Sp. **en**; Port. **de**; It. **in**; Fr. **en** in the Romance languages. For instance:

Sp. Voy **en** coche hoy;

Port. Eu vou **de** carro hoje;

It. Vado **in** macchina oggi;

Fr. Je vais **en** voiture aujourd'hui.

*- I go **by** car today.*

NOTE: *However, there are some means of travel which require the preposition **à** in French:*

French	English
à cheval	on horseback
à moto	by motorcycle

595

The preposition Sp., Port., It. *a* and Fr. *à* is also used to indicate a manner that is specifically a style:

<div align="center">

Sp. Jardín *a* la francesa;

Port. jardim *à* francesa;

It. Giardino *alla* francese;

Fr. Jardin *à* la française.

- French-style garden.

</div>

* **to introduce phrases which state location:**

Here are some common expression which are used with the preposition *a* (*à*) when indicating location in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
al aire libre	ao ar livre	all'aria aperta	à l'extérieur; en plein air	*in the open air*
a la derecha	à direita	a destra	à droite	*on the right ,*
a la izquierda	à esquerda	a sinistra	à gauche	*on the left*
al sol	ao sol	al sole	au soleil	*in the sun*
a lo lejos	ao longe	<u>da</u> lontano	au loin	*in the distance*

NOTE:

*Unlike in Spanish, Portuguese and French, in Italian the expression <u>in the distance</u> is used with the preposition **da**.*

- **to link such repeated words as:**

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
cara a cara, frente a frente	cara a cara, frente a frente	faccia a faccia, petto a petto	face à face	*face to face*
uno a uno	um a um	uno a uno	un à un	*one by one*
poco a poco	pouco a pouco	a poco a poco	peu à peu	*little by little*

- **to express time and age (*at*):**

Sp. Llegué <u>*a las nueve*</u> ayer;

Port. Cheguei <u>*às*</u> *nove horas* ontem;

It. Sono venuto <u>*alle*</u> *nove* ieri;

Fr. Je suis venu <u>*à*</u> *neuf heures* hier.

- *I came <u>at</u> nine o'clock yesterday.*

Sp. <u>*A los catorce años*</u> se convirtió en una bailarina;

Port. <u>*Aos*</u> *quatorze anos*, ela se tornou uma bailarina;

It. <u>*A quattordici anni*</u> è diventata una ballerina;

Fr. *À quatorze ans*, elle est devenue une ballerine.

- At age fourteen she became a ballerina.

It is also used in such phrases of time as:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a principio (s) de	no princípio de	in/al/sul principio di	au début de	*at the beginning of*
a mediados de, a mitad de	no meado de, no meio de	a metà di, nel mezzo di	au milieu de	*in the middle of*
a finales de	no final de	alla fine di	à la fin de	*at the end of*
a la llegada de	a chegada de	all'arrivo di	à l'arrivée de	*upon the arrival of*

NOTE:

The following irregularities must be remembered. In Portuguese the majority of the phrases from the list are used with the preposition **no** *rather than* **a**. *Italian phrase* **nel mezzo di** *has the preposition* **nel**. *The Italian phrase* **in/al/sul principio di** *can be used with any of the mentioned above prepositions.*

However, the preposition *a* (Sp., Port., It.) and *à* (Fr.) has several specific cases of usage in Spanish, Italian and French, which will be considered below:

The Spanish personal preposition *a*

In Spanish, the preposition *a* must be used to introduce a known person as the direct object of the verb, for example:

Ella no conoce *a* Ana.

- *She does not know Ana.*

When the person is not known, the preposition a can be dropped:

No necesito conductor.

- *I don't need a driver.*

Italian *a* and French *à* prepositions

There is a number of peculiarities of the Italian preposition *a* and French *à* in terms of usage, which are:

- Apart from expressing direction to a place, Italian and French preposition *a* (It.) and *à* (Fr.) can also be used to indicate location when used with names of places. It is advisable to learn Italian and French prepositions of places in context. Study the following:

It. Studiamo *all'*università;

Fr. Nous étudions *à* l'université.

*- We study **at** the university.*

It. Mia figlia è **a** scuola;

Fr. Ma fille est **à** l'école.

*- My daughter is **in** school.*

In Spanish and Portuguese the prepositions **en** (Sp.) and **em** (Port.) are used in order to indicate location **(See Preposition en** (Sp.), **em** (Port.), **in** (It.), **en, dans** (Fr.) **p. 549)**:

Sp. Estudiamos **en** la universidad;

Port. Nós estudamos **na** universidade.

*- We study **at** the university.*

Sp. Mi hija está **en** la escuela;

Port. Minha filha está **na** escola.

*- My daughter is **in** school.*

‣ The preposition **a** (It.) and **à** (Fr.) is also used before the names of cities and towns in Italian and French. Study the following:

It. Vado **a** Madrid;

Fr. Je vais **à** Madrid.

*- I go **to** Madrid.*

However, before the names of regions, countries, continents, or islands in Italian and French the prepositions **in**

(It.) and *en*, *dans* (Fr.) must be used (**See Preposition *en* (Sp.),** *em* (Port.), *in* (It.), *en*, *dans* (Fr.) **p.630**). For instance:

It. Vado *in* Francia;

Fr. Je vais *en* France.

- *I go to France.*

It. Vanno *in* Sicilia;

Fr. Ils vont *en* Sicile.

- *They go to Sicily.*

However, there are some islands that are used with the preposition *à* in French and must be memorized:

French	
à la Réunion	à Chypre
à la Martinique	à Madagascar
au Groenland	à Cuba

In French the preposition *en* is normally used before names of feminine countries or continents (most of the names of countries that end in a mute *e* are feminine, except *le Mexique* - *Mexico*); while the preposition *au* is used before masculine countries. Furthermore, the French preposition *aux* (*au* + *les*) and Italian *negli* (*in* + *gli*) are used before Fr. *États-Unis*; It. *Stati Uniti* - *The United States*. Study the following:

En

Fr. Elle va **en** France (Allemagne, Espagne, Italie, Europe, Afrique etc.).   - *She goes to France (Germany, Spain, Italy, Europe, Africa etc.)*

Au
Fr. Elle va **au** Mexique (Canada, Danemark, Portugal etc.).   - *She goes to Mexico (Canada, Denmark, Portugal etc.).*

Aux/ Negli
Fr. Elle va **aux** États-Unis;   It. Lei va **negli** Stati Uniti.   - *She goes to the United States.*

NOTE:

*It is remarkable that in Spanish and Portuguese the prepositions **a** (Sp.) and **a**, **para** (Port.) are used in all these cases mentioned above. Observe the following:*

Sp. Voy **a** Francia (Alemania, España, Italia, Europa, África etc.);

Port. Vou **a/para** a França (Alemanha, Espanha, Itália, Europa, África etc.).

- *I go to France (Germany, Spain, Italy, Europe, Africa etc.).*

Sp. Ellos van **a** Sicilia;

Port. Eles vão **a/para** a Sicília.

- *They go to Sicily.*

Sp. Ella va **a** México (Canadá, Dinamarca, Portugal etc);

Port. Ela vai **para** o México (Canadá, Dinamarca, Portugal etc.).

*- She goes to Mexico (Canada, Denmark,
Portugal etc.).*

Sp. Ella va **a** los Estados Unidos;
Port. Ela vai **para** os Estados Unidos.
- She goes to the United States.

- The French preposition **à** can be used to mean *with*. Don't forget that **à** must be contracted with the definite article. For example:

Fr. du thé **au** lait.

*- tea **with** milk.*

Fr. l'homme **aux** yeux blue.

*- the man **with** blue eyes.*

NOTE:

*In this case, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the prepositions **de/con** (Sp.), **de/com** (Port.) and **con** (It.) are used in order to express <u>with</u>. Look at the same examples:*

*Sp. té **con** leche;*
*Port. chá **com** leite;*
*It. tè **con** latte.*
- tea <u>with</u> milk.

*Sp. el hombre **de/con** ojos azules;*
*Port. o homem **de/com** olhos azuis;*
*It. l'uomo **con gli** occhi azzurri.*

- the man with blue eyes.

- In French the preposition *à* can also introduce an infinitive and express the function of the preceding noun or the use of an object in the phrase or result or tendency. It corresponds to the English *for* and the infinitive is the equivalent of the gerund (-*ing*). Observe the following:

Fr. une salle *à* manger.

- a room for dining (a dining room).

Fr. une machine *à* écrire.

- a machine for writing (a typewriter).

Fr. une voiture *à* vendre.

- a car for sale.

NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the prepositions **de** or **en** (Sp.), **de, em** or **a** (Port.) and **da** (It.) are used in order to express for:*

Sp. *una casa **de** comidas;*

Port. *uma sala **de** jantar;*

It. *una sala **da** pranzo.*

- a room for dining (a dining room).

Sp. *una máquina **de** escribir;*

Port. *uma máquina **de** escrever;*

It. *una macchina **da** scrivere.*

- a machine for writing (a typewriter).

> *Sp. un coche en venta;*
> *Port. um carro à venda;*
> *It. una macchina da vendere.*
> *- a car for sale.*

The best way to know which preposition to use in Spanish and Portuguese is to learn such expressions by heart.

- French **à** also expresses an infinitive which denotes some sort of action. The preposition **à** is used after an adjective in this case:

> Fr. C'est facile **à** comprendre.
>
> *- It's easy to understand.*

> Fr. C'est difficile **à** prononcer.
>
> *- It's difficult to pronounce.*

NOTE:
*In Spanish and Portuguese, the prepositions **de** is used in this case. In Italian, the preposition **da** must be used in order to introduce an infinitive that conveys the action. For instance:*

> *Sp. Es fácil de entender;*
> *Port. É fácil de entender;*
> *It. È facile da capire.*
> *- It's easy to understand.*

> *Sp. Es difícil de hablar;*

*Port. É difícil **de** falar;*

*It. È difficile **da** parlare.*

- It's difficult to speak.

Preposition ***de*** *(Sp. Port. Fr.)*, ***di*** *(It.)*

This preposition is also rather frequent and has a lot of meanings. It can be used:

- **to express possession or ownership (*of*)**:

    The preposition ***de*** (Sp. Port. Fr.), ***di*** (It.) usually corresponds to the English apostrophe s ('*s*) or the preposition *of*:

    Sp. París es la capital ***de*** Francia;

    Port. Paris é a capital ***da*** França;

    It. Parigi è la capitale ***della*** Francia;

    Fr. Paris est la capitale ***de*** la France.

    *- Paris is the capital **of** France.*

    Sp. Es el coche ***de*** su padre;

    Port. É o carro ***de*** seu pai;

    It. È la macchina ***di*** suo padre;

    Fr. C'est la voiture ***de*** son père.

    - It is his father's car.

- **to indicate a place of origin and departure (*from*)**:

    This preposition is usually equivalent to the English *from*:

Sp. ¿De donde eres? - Yo soy *de* Ecuador;

Port. De onde você é? - Eu sou *do* Equador;

It. Di dove sei? - Sono *dell'*Ecuador (but Da dove vieni? - Vengo *dall'*Ecuador);

Fr. D'où es-tu? - Je suis *de* l'Equateur.

- *Where are you from? - I am from Ecuador.*

Sp. Diana llegó *de* Chile;

Port. Diana chegou *do* Chile;

It. Diana è arrivata *dal* Cile;

Fr. Diana est arrivé *du* Chili.

- *Diana arrived from Chile.*

• **with geographical names (*of*):**

Sp. La isla *de* Groenlandia;

Port. A ilha *da* Groenlândia;

It. L'isola *della* Groenlandia;

Fr. L'île *du* Groenland.

- *The island of Greenland.*

Sp. La ciudad *de* Londres;

Port. A cidade *de* Londres;

It. La città *di* Londra;

Fr. La ville *de* Londres.

- The city of London.

- **to imply cause (*from*, *with*, *of*, *in*):**

> Sp. Estamos cansados *de* jugar al fútbol;
>
> Port. Estamos cansados *de* jogar futebol;
>
> It. Siamo stanchi *di* giocare a calcio;
>
> Fr. Nous sommes fatigués *de* jouer au football.
>
> *- We are tired of playing soccer.*

> Sp. Estoy loco *de* amor;
>
> Port. Estou louco *de* amor;
>
> It. Sono pazzo *d'*amore;
>
> Fr. Je suis fou *d'*amour.
>
> *- I am crazy in love.*

- **to qualify or describe a noun which is used before another noun (*of*):**

> Sp. Una taza *de* té;
>
> Port. Uma xícara *de* chá;
>
> It. Una tazza *di* tè;
>
> Fr. Une tasse *de* thé.
>
> *- A cup of tea.*

> Sp. El jugo *de* manzana;

Port. O sumo *de* maçã;

It. Il succo *di* mela;

Fr. Le jus *de* pomme.

- Apple juice.

- **to compare things (*than*) (See Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs p.58):**

It can also corresponds to English *of* or *in*, specifically in superlative phrases:

Sp. Ella es la más bella *del* grupo;

Port. Ela é a mais bela *do* grupo;

It. Lei è la più bella *del* gruppo;

Fr. Elle est la plus belle *du* groupe.

- She is the most beautiful of the group.

- **to express the material from which something is made:**

Sp. una casa *de* madera;

Port. uma casa *de* madeira;

It. una casa *di/in* legno;

Fr. une maison *de/en* bois.

- A wooden house.

NOTE:

Italian preposition di and in; and French de and en are interchangeable and either preposition can be used to express the

*material from which something is made.
However, It. **di** and Fr. **de** are normally
used to point out the sort of object a person
is talking about, while It. **in** and Fr. **en**
underline the material from which
something is made.*

Observe the following:

It. calzature **di** pelle;	It. calzature **in** pelle;
Fr. chaussures **de** cuir.	Fr. chaussures **en** cuir.
- leather shoes.	*- shoes made of leather.*

- **to connect one verb to an infinitive or an object (See also Use of the Infinitive p.469).**

The preposition *de* (Sp. Port. Fr.), *di* (It.) is not translated.
Study the following:

Sp. Terminó *de* leer el libro;

Port. Ele terminou *de* ler o livro;

It. Ha finito *di* leggere il libro;

Fr. Il a fini *de* lire le livre.

- He finished reading the book.

Below is a list of the most common verbs which take the preposition *de* (Sp. Port. Fr.), *di* (It.) before an infinitive.

Since Spanish is closer to Portuguese, and as Italian shares more similarities with French in this particular point, it is reasonable to introduce them in pairs:

Spanish and Portuguese verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	English
abstenerse de	abster-se de	to abstain from
aburrirse de	aborrecer com	to be bored by/with
acabar de	acabar de	to have just done smth.
acordarse de	acordar-se de, lembrar-se de	to remember
admirarse de	admirar-se de	to admire
advertir de	advertir de	to warn
acusar de	acusar de	to accuse of
alegrarse de	alegrar-se de	to be happy, pleased to
alejarse de	alongar-se de	to get away from
apartarse de	apartar-se de	to keep away from
aprovecharse de	aproveitar-se de	to take advantage of
arrepentirse de	arrepender-se de	to regret
asustarse de	recear-se de	to be afraid of
avergonzarse de	envergonhar-se de	to be ashamed of

Spanish	Portuguese	English
cansarse de	cansar-se de	*to tire, get tired of*
convencer de	convencer de	*to convince*
convencerse de	convencer-se de	*to become convinced*
cuidar de	cuidar de	*to take care*
dejar de	deixar de	*to stop, to fail to*
desistir de	desistir de	*to give up, go back on one's word*
disuadir de	dissuadir de	*to dissuade from*
encargarse de	encarregar-se	*to take charge of*
guardarse de	guardar-se de	*to take care, be careful not to*
hartarse de	fartar-se de	*to be fed up with*
jactarse de, presumir de, vanagloriarse de	jactar-se de, presumir de, vangloriar-se de	*to boast of,*
lamentarse de, quejarse de	lamentar-se, queixar-se de	*to complain about*
ocuparse de	ocupar-se	*to be busy with*
olvidarse de	esquecer-se de	*to forget to*

Spanish	Portuguese	English
parar de, terminar de, cesar de	parar de, terminar de, cessar de	to stop
preocuparse de	preocupar-se de	to be concerned about
tener ganas de	ter vontade de	to feel like doing something
tener intención de	ter intenção de	to intend
tratar de	<u>tentar</u>	to try to
tratarse de	tratar-se de	to be about, be a question of
vengarse de	vingar-se de	to avenge oneself for, take vengeance for

NOTE:

*In Portuguese, the verb **aborrecer** is used with the preposition **com**. The verb **tentar** is used without prepositions.*

Italian and French verbs

Italian	French	English
accettare di	accepter de	to accept
accontentarsi di	se contenter de	to content oneself with

Italian	French	English
accorgersi di	s'apercevoir de	to become aware of
accusare di	accuser de	to accuse of
ammettere di	admettre de	to admit
arrischiarsi di	risquer de	to risk
arrossire di	rougir de	to blush
astenersi di	s'abstenir de	to abstain from
augurare di	souhaiter de	to wish
avere bisogno di	avoir besoin de	to need
avere paura di, temere di	avoir peur de, craindre de	to be afraid of, to fear
avere voglia di	avoir envie de	to feel like doing something
avere l'intenzione di,	avoir l'intention de	to intend to do something
avere ragione di	avoir raison de	to be right to do smth.
aver torto di	avoir tort de	to be wrong to do smth.
avvertire di	avertir de	to warn
cercare di provare a	essayer de, tâcher de	to try
cessare di	cesser de	to cease

Italian	French	English
chiedere di	demander de	to ask
comandare di	commander de	to order
consigliare di	conseiller de	to advise
consolarsi di	se consoler de	to take comfort
convincere di	convaincre de	to convince
credere di	croire de	to believe, count oneself
decidere di	décider de	to decide
detestare	détester de	to hate, to detest
dimenticare di	oublier de	to forget
dire di	dire de	to say, to tell
dispensare di	dispenser de	to release from
domandare di	demander de	to ask
dubitare di	douter de	to doubt
evitare di	éviter de	to avoid
fingere di, far finta di	feindre de, faire semblant de	to pretend
finire di	finir de	to finish
giurare di	jurer de	to swear

Italian	French	English
godere di, fruire di	jouir de, profiter de	*to enjoy, take an advantage of*
impedire di	empêcher de	*to prevent*
indignarsi per	s'indigner de	*to be indignant*
infischiarsi di	se foutre de, (s'en foutre de)	*to not give a hoot about*
lagnarsi di, lamentarsi di	se plaindre de	*to complain*
mancare di	manquer de	*to lack*
meravigliarsi di, stupirsi di	s'émerveiller de, s'étonner de	*to be surprised*
meritare di	mériter de	*to deserve*
minacciare di	menacer de	*to threaten someone to do smth.*
occuparsi di	s'occuper de	*to busy oneself with*
offrire di	offrir de	*to offer*
ordinare di	ordonner de	*to order*
pensare di	**penser à**	*to plan*
pentirsi di	se repentir de	*to regret*
permettere di	permettre de	*to permit*
persuadere di	persuader de	*to persuade*

Italian	French	English
pregare di	prier de, supplier de	to beg
privare di	priver de	to deprive
proibire di	prohiber	to prohibit
promettere di	promettre de	to promise
progettare di, aver in vista di	projeter de, envisager de	to plan on doing smth
proporre di	proposer de	to propose
proporsi di	se proposer de	to intend to, be about to
raccomandare di	recommander de	to recommend
rendersi conto di	se rendre compte de	to realize
ricordare di, ricordarsi di	se souvenir de, se rappeler de	to remember
rifiutare di	refuser de	to refuse
rimproverare di	reprocher de	to reproach for
rincrescere di	regretter de	to regret
ringraziare di	remercier de	to thank
ripetere di	répéter de	to repeat
risolvere di	résoudre de	to resolve

Italian	French	English
<u>sbagliare a</u>	se tromper	*to make a mistake*
<u>sbrigarsi a</u>	se dépêcher de, se hater de	*to hurry*
scommettere di	parier de	*to bet*
scusarsi di	s'excuser de	*to apologize*
sforzarsi di	s'efforcer de	*to try hard to do*
smettere di	arrêter de	*to stop*
sognare di	rêver de	*to dream of*
sperare di	espérer de	*to hope*
stancarsi di	se fatiguer de	*to get tired of*
sospettare di	soupçonner de	*to suspect*
suggerire di	suggérer de	*to suggest*
supplicare di	supplier de	*to beseech, to beg,*
tentare di	tenter de	*to attempt*
terminare di	terminer de	*to end, to stop*
vantarsi di	se vanter de	*to flaunt, to brag about*
vergognarsi di	se gêner	*to be ashamed of*
vietare di, interdire dal,	défendre de, interdire de	*to forbid*

Italian	French	English
———	**venir de**	*to have just done smth.*

NOTE:

Unlike French, Italian doesn't have the verb meaning to have just done, instead the following expression is used: **aver/essere appena fatto** *(e.g.* **Sono appena arrivato** *- I have just arrived).*

Italian verbs **provare, sbagliare** *and* **sbrigarsi** *are used with the preposition* **a.** *The verb* **indignarsi** *is used with* **per.** *The verb* **detestare** *is used without prepositions.*

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition *de* (Sp. Port. Fr.), *di* (It.) before an object (noun or pronoun).

Spanish and Portuguese verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	English
abusar de	**abusar de**	*to abuse, overindulge in*
acordarse de	**acordar-se de, lembrar-se de**	*to remember*
adueñarse de	**apanhar de**	*to seize, take possession of*
advertir de	**advertir de**	*to warn*
alejarse de	**alongar-se de**	*to go away from*

Spanish	Portuguese	English
apartarse de	apartar-se de	*to keep away from*
apiadarse de, compadecerse de	apiedar-se de, compadecer-se de	*to feel sorry for*
apoderarse de	apoderar-se de	*to take possession of*
aprovecharse de	aproveitar-se de	*to take advantage of*
asustarse de	recear-se de	*to be afraid of*
avisar de	avisar de	*to inform, let know*
bajar de	baixar de	*to get out of, get off*
burlarse de, mofarse de	burlar de, zombar de, caçoar de	*to make fun of, mock at*
cambiar de	<u>mudar</u>	*to change*
cansarse de	cansar-se de	*to tire of, get tired of*
carecer de	carecer de	*to lack*
constar de	constar de	*to consist of*
cubrir de	cobrir de	*to cover with*
cuidar de	cuidar de	*to take care of*
depender de	depender de	*to depend on*

Spanish	Portuguese	English
despedirse de	despedir-se de	*to say good-bye*
despojarse de	despojar-se de	*to take off (clothes)*
desposeer de	desapropriar de	*to dispossess*
despreocuparse de	despreocupar-se com	*to neglect*
desconfiar de	desconfiar de	*to discredit, suspect*
desdecirse de	desdizer-se de	*to deny one's words or promise*
desistir de	desistir de	*to give up*
desligarse de	desligar-se de	*to dispense, acquit*
dimitir de	demitir de	*to dismiss*
disculparse de	desculpar-se de	*to apologize for*
disfrutar de	desfrutar de	*to enjoy*
disponer de	dispor de	*to dispose*
dudar de	duvidar de	*to doubt*
enamorarse de	apaixonar-se por	*to fall in love with*
encogerse de	encolher-se	*to shrug (shoulders)*
enterarse de	inteirar-se de	*to find out about*

Spanish	Portuguese	English
escapar de	escapar de	*to escape from*
estar loco de	estar louco de	*to be crazy with (joy)*
fiarse de	confiar em	*to trust*
forrar de	forrar de **encobrir**	*to line/cover with*
fugarse de	fugir de	*to flee from*
gozar de	gozar de **aproveitar**	*to enjoy*
gritar de (dolor)	gritar de (dor)	*to scream in (pain)*
hablar de	falar de	*speak about*
helarse de	congelar-se de	*to feel cold, to freeze*
informar de	informar de	*to inform about*
jactarse de, presumir de, vanagloriarse de	presumir de, vangloriar-se de	*to boast of*
llenar de	encher de	*to fill with*
morir de	morrer de	*to die from (laughter)*
mudar de	mudar de	*to change (clothes)*
mudarse de casa	mudar-se de casa	*to move (house)*

Spanish	Portuguese	English
ocuparse de	ocupar-se	to be busy with
oír hablar de	ouvir falar de	to hear about
olvidarse de	esquecer-se de	to forget
perder de vista	perder de vista	to lose sight of
pintar de	pintar de	to paint (color)
ponerse de acuerdo	pôr-se de acordo	to come to an agreement
preocuparse de	preocupar-se de	to be concerned about
lamentarse de, quejarse de	lamentar-se, queixar-se de	to complain about
reírse de	rir de	to laugh at
retractarse de	retratar-se de	to retract (take back) one's words
saber de	saber de	to know about
saber de memoria	saber de cor	to memorize, know by heart
salir de	sair de	to leave (from)
saltar de	saltar de	to jump for (happiness)
servir de	servir de	to serve as
servirse de	servir-se de	to use

Spanish	Portuguese	English
sorprenderse de	surpreender-se de	*be surprised, amazed at*
tratarse de	tratar-se de	*to be about, deal with*
vengarse de	vingar-se de	*to revenge oneself for, take vengeance for*
vestir de	vestir de	*to dress in*

NOTE:

In Portuguese, the verb **despreocupar-se** *is used with the preposition* **com***. The verb* **apaixonar-se** *is used with* **por***.* **Confiar** *is used with* **em***. The verbs* **mudar** *and* **aproveitar** *are used without prepositions.*

Italian and French verbs

Italian	French	English
accorgersi di	s'apercevoir de	*to notice*
approssimarsi	s'approcher de	*to get closer to*
avere bisogno di	avoir besoin de	*to need*
avere paura di	avoir peur de	*to be afraid of*
avere voglia di	avoir envie de	*to want someone or something badly*
dimenticarsi di, dimenticare di	oublier de	*to forget*

Italian	French	English
dipendere da	dépendre de	*to depend on*
dubitare di	douter de	*to doubt*
ereditare di	hériter de	*to inherit*
fare a meno di	se passer de	*to do without*
farsi beffe di	se moquer de	*to make fun of*
fidarsi di	<u>se fier à</u>	*·to trust*
godere di, fruire di	jouir de, profiter de	*to enjoy, take an advantage of*
indignarsi di	s'indigner de	*to be indignant*
innamorarsi di	tomber amoureux de	*to fall in love*
lamentarsi di	se plaindre de	*to complain*
mancare di	manquer de	*to lack*
meravigliarsi di, stupirsi di	s'émerveiller de, s'étonner de	*to be surprised*
nutrirsi di	se nourrir de	*to feed on*
occuparsi di	s'occuper de	*to take care of*
partire di	partir de	*to leave*
ricordarsi di	se souvenir de, se rappeler de	*to remember*

Italian	French	English
ridere di	**rire de**	*to laugh at*
riguardarsi da	**se méfier de**	*to beware of*
servirsi di	**se servir de**	*to make use of*
soffrire di	**souffrir de**	*to suffer from*
trattare di	**traiter de**	*to deal with, treat*

- **with time and dates (See Time and Dates p.538):**

NOTE:

In the Romance languages the preposition de (Sp. Port. Fr.), di (It.) can also be used in several time expressions.

Observe the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
de mañana, por la mañana	**de manhã, pela manhã**	**di/la mattina**	**le matin, dans la matinée**	*in the morning*
de día, por el día	**de dia,**	**di giorno**	**de jour, dans la journée**	*in the daytime*
de tarde, por la tarde	**de tarde**	**di sera**	**le soir, dans la soirée**	*in the evening*

626

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
de noche, por la noche	à noite	di notte	la nuit	at night
de madrugada	de madrugada	di buon'ora	de bonne heure	early
en verano	no verão	d'estate, in estate	en été	in the summer
en invierno	no inverno	d'inverno, in inverno	en hiver	in the winter
en primavera	na primavera	di/in primavera	au printemps	in the spring
en otoño	no outono	d'autunno	en automne	in the fall

NOTE:

*With some phrases, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French different prepositions are used, especially with seasons. In Italian the preposition **in** is interchangeable with **di** in phrases designating seasons. Some French time expressions require the definite article and some Spanish and Portuguese phrases require a preposition used along with the definite article before a noun. All the irregularities must be learned by heart.*

Sp. ***De mañana*** (***Por la mañana***) mi marido lee a menudo el periódico;

Port. **De manhã** (**Pela manhã**) meu marido lê frequentemente o jornal;

It. **Di mattina** (**La mattina**) mio marito legge spesso il giornale;

Fr. **Le matin** (**Dans la matinee**) mon mari lit souvent le journal.

- My husband often reads the newspaper **in the morning**.

- **in the expressions with indefinite pronouns:**

The preposition **de** (Sp. Port. Fr.), **di** (It.) is normally used before an adjectives and after the following indefinite pronouns:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
algo	algo	qualcosa	quelque chose	*something*
nada	nada	niente, nulla	rien	*nothing*

NOTE:

In Spanish and Portuguese the indefinite pronoun **algo** *does not require the preposition* **de** *before an adjective.*

Sp. Tengo algo nuevo;

Port. Eu tenho algo novo;

It. Ho qualcosa **di** nuovo;

Fr. J'ai quelque chose **de** nouveau.

- I have something new.

Sp. No hay nada *de* especial;

Port. Não há nada *de* especial;

It. Non c'è niente *di* speciale;

Fr. Il n'y a rien *de* spécial.

- There is nothing special.

- **to construct adverbial phrases and idioms:**

The most common adverbial phrases and idioms used with the preposition *de* (Sp. Port. Fr.), *di* (It.) in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
de vez en cuando	de vez em quando	di quando in quando	de temps en temps	*from time to time*
de golpe, de repente	de repente	di colpo, d'un tratto	d'un coup	*suddenly*
de buena gana, de buen grado	de boa vontade, de bom grado	di buona voglia, di buona volontà, di buon grado	de bonne grâce	*willingly*
de mala gana	de má vontade, de mau grado	di mala voglia, di mala volontà	de mauvaise grâce	*reluctantly*
de nuevo	de novo	di nuovo	de nouveau	*again*

Sp. Lo hizo *de buena gana*;

Port. Ele fez isso *de boa vontade*;

It. Lo ha fatto *di buona voglia*;

Fr. Il l'a fait *de bonne grâce*.

- *He did it **willingly**.*

Preposition *en (Sp.)*, *em (Port.)*, *in (It.)*, *en*, *dans (Fr.)*

This common preposition has a range of meanings and usually means in, by, into or about, which depends on the context. It is used:

- **to denote location (*in*, *at*, *on*)**:

    This preposition usually means inside of or at a place.

    Sp. Las llaves están *en* la bolsa;

    Port. As chaves estão *na* bolsa;

    It. Le chiavi sono *nella* borsa;

    Fr. Les clés sont *dans* le sac.

    - *The keys are **in** my bag.*

French Prepositions *en/dans*

There are two French prepositions *en* and *dans*, which are used to indicate location. The difference between them is that

dans is normally used with an article, while *en* is never used with an article. For instance:

French
Je suis **dans la voiture.** *- I am in the car.*	Je suis **en classe.** *- I am in class.*

The preposition ***dans*** denotes place more precisely then en and designates *inside*.

French	
dans la ville. *- in the city, inside the city.*	**en ville.** *- in city, to city.*
dans la classe d'espagnol. *- in Spanish class.*	**en classe.** *- in class.*

Moreover, in French the preposition **en** is normally used before names of feminine countries or continents (most of the names of countries that end in a mute e are feminine, except *le Mexique - Mexico*);

Fr. Il va *en* Espagne.

- He goes to Spain.

The French preposition ***dans*** must be used with names of continents which are qualified by another phrase:

Fr. Il va ***dans*** le Nord de l'Amérique.

*- He goes **to North of America**.*

Nevertheless, the preposition **en** may be used before names of continents in spoken languages:

Fr. Il va **en** Amérique du Nord.

- *He goes **to** North America.*

Remember that if the name of a country is used with a complement, the form **dans le** (**l'**, **la**, **les**) must be used rather than **en**.

Fr. Vous allez **dans le Nord de l'Espagne**.

- *You go **to the North of Spain**.*

It should be mentioned that before names of islands the preposition can differ in French. Thus, below is the list of some common islands which require the preposition **en**:

French
en Islande - *in Iceland*	**en Haïti** - *in Haiti*
en Sardaigne - *in Sardinia*	**en Nouvelle-Guinée** - *in New Guinea*

It is quite interesting that **en** is usually used before names of American states and Canadian provinces, when those names end in **e** or **ie** in French (including *Ontario* and *Saskatchewan*). Observe some of the examples:

French	
en Floride - *in Florida*	**en Ontario** - *in Ontario*
en Californie - *in California*	**en Nouvelle-Écosse** *in Nova Scotia*

In all other cases, the forms *dans le, dans le territoire de, dans la province de* or *dans l'État de* are normally used, for example:

French	
dans le territoire du Nunavut - *in the territory of Nunavut*	**dans la province du Québec** - *in the province of Quebec*

NOTE:

But au Nouveau-Mexique - New Mexico, au Nouveau-Brunswick - New Brunswick,

à Terre-Neuve - Newfoundland.

• **with means of mechanical transportation (*by*)**

Sp. *en*; Port. *de*; It. *in*; Fr. *en* (sometimes *par*) are used with means of mechanical transportation in order to express how someone is moving around in the Romance languages. These prepositions are equivalent to *by* in English. For instance:

Sp. Voy *en* carro hoy;

Port. Eu vou *de* carro hoje;

It. Vado *in* macchina oggi;

Fr. Je vais *en* voiture aujourd'hui.

633

*- I go **by** car today.*

There are some of the most common phrases which describe means of transportation and which require the preposition Sp. **en**; Port. **de**; It. **in**; Fr. **en**:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en auto/ coche/ carro	de automóvel/ carro	in automobi le/ macchina	en auto/ voiture	*by car*
en autobús	de autocarro (*port.*); ônibus (*bras.*)	in autobus	en autobus	*by bus*
en taxi	de táxi	in taxi	en taxi	*by taxi*
en avión	de avião	in aereo	en avion	*by plane/ air*
en metro	de metro	in metro	en métro	*by the undergr ound*
en barco	de barco	in nave	en bateau	*by boat*
en tren	de comboio (*port.*); trem (*bras.*)	in treno	en train and **par le train** (when arriving)	*by train*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese, the preposition **em** is used when modes of transportation are specified, which is equivalent to English <u>on</u> or <u>in</u>, for example:*

Port. **no** carro do meu amigo
- in my friend's car

Port. **no** autocarro (Braz. Port. ônibus) número 5
- in the number 5 bus

Port. **no** comboio (Braz. trem) da 1 hora
- on the 1 o'clock train

NOTE:

*In French **par** must be used with the definite article in comparison with **en**, which doesn't require it.*

In order to to express how a person enters or leaves transport, the following verbs can be used in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
subirse en montar en	subir em; montar em	montare in/a/su	monter en/dans (le,la)	*to get on*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
bajar de; descender de	descer de; sair de	scendere da	descendre de	*to get off; to descend from*
embarcarse en	embarcar em	imbarcarsi in	embarquer dans	*to embark*
desembarca rse de	desembarc ar de	sbarcare da	débarquer de	*to disembark from*

NOTE:

*The Spanish and Portuguese **montar** is likely to be used in the phrase: Sp. **montar a caballo**; Port. **montar a cavalo** - to mount a horse.*

*And Spanish **descender** and Portuguese **descer** are used in the meaning: Sp. **descender de una montaña**; Port. **descer de uma montanha** - to climb down (descend) a mountain.*

Sp. **subirse en** (**embarcarse en**) un carro (un tren, un autobus, un barco etc.);

Port. **subir em** (**embarcar em**) um carro (um trem, um ônibus, um barco etc.);

It. **montare in** (**imbarcarsi in**) una macchina (un treno, un autobus, una nave etc.);

Fr. **monter en/dans** (**embarquer dans**) (une) voiture (un train, un autobus, un bateau etc.);

- to get on (to embark) a car (a train, a bus, a ship etc.).

Sp. *bajar de* (*desembarcarse de*) un coche (un tren, un autobus, un barco etc.);

Port. *sair de* (*desembarcar de*) um carro (um trem, um ônibus, um barco etc.);

It. *scendere da* (*sbarcare da*) una macchina (un treno, un autobus, una nave etc.);

Fr. *descendre d'* (*débarquer d'*) une voiture (un train, un autobus, un bateau etc.);

- *to get off a car (a train, a bus, a ship etc.).*

➤ **to indicate time (in):**

Sp. **en**; Port. **de**; It. **in**; Fr. **en** are used to indicate the time after which a thing is done or completed. It corresponds to English *in*. Observe the following:

Sp. Lo hará *en* dos horas;

Port. Ele o fará *em* duas horas;

It. Lo farà *in* due ore;

Fr. Il le fera *en* deux heures.

- *He will do it in two hours.*

To mean *within* regarding the time during which an action can be done is expressed by using the following prepositions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dentro de	dentro de	fra	dans (+ article)	*withing*

637

Sp. Puedo hacerlo **dentro de** una hora;

Port. Eu posso fazê-lo **dentro de** uma hora;

It. Posso farlo *fra* un'ora;

Fr. Je peux le faire **dans** l'heure.

- *I can do it **within** an hour.*

Sp. **en**; Port. **em**; It. **in**; Fr. **en** are also used to indicate when something is going to happen:

Sp. Voy a la Argentina **en** el verano;

Port. Eu vou para a Argentina **no** verão;

It. Vado in Argentina **in** estate;

Fr. Je vais en Argentine **en** été.

- *I go to Argentina **in** the summer.*

➤ in certain expressions:

Sp. **en**; Port. **de**; It. **in**; Fr. **en** are used in the following idioms and expressions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en broma	*but*: <u>por/de</u> brincadeira; <u>por</u> graça;	*but*: <u>per</u> scherzo;	en plaisantant; en riant; en badinant	*as a joke*
en casa	em casa	in casa	*but*: <u>à la</u> maison; <u>chez</u> soi	*at home*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en caso de	em caso de	in caso di	en cas de	*in the event of; in case*
en efecto	em efeito	in effetti; infatti	en effet	*in fact; in effect*
en realidad	na realidade	in realtà	en réalité	*in reality*
en lugar de; en vez de	em lugar de; em vez de	in luogo di; invece di	*but:* <u>au</u> lieu de; <u>à la</u> place	*instead of*
en breve; en resumen;	em resumo;	in breve; in succinto	en bref; en résumé en abrégé	*in short*
en conclusión	em conclusão	in conclusione	en conclusion	*in conclusion*
en suma	em suma	insomma	en somme	*in sum*
en pocas (breves) palabras	em poucas (breves) palavras;	in poche parole	en quelques mots; en peu de mots	*in a few words*
en total	no total	in totale	*but:* au total	*in total*

Verbs with Spanish *en* and Portuguese *em*

The prepositions Sp. *en* and Port. *em* are used with particular verbs in Spanish and Portuguese. Below is the list of the most common verbs that require Sp. *en* and Port. *em* *before* an infinitive:

Spanish	Portuguese	English
terminar en	acabar em	*to end up in*
creer en	acreditar em	*to believe in*
confiar en	confiar em	*to trust to*
consentir en	concordar em	*to consent to*
consistir en	consistir em	*to consist of*
convenir en	convir em	*to agree to*
dudar en	duvidar em hesitar em	*to hesitate to*
empeñarse en	empenhar-se em	*to insist on, be determined to*
hacer bien en	fazer bem em	*to be right to*
hacer mal en	fazer mal em	*to do wrong to*
insistir en	insistir em	*to insist on*
interesarse en	interessar-se em	*to be interested in*
molestarse en	incomodar-se em	*to bother about*
pensar en	pensar em	*to think about*
persistir en	persistir em	*to persist in*

Spanish	Portuguese	English
tardar en	tardar em	to take a long time to
vacilar en	vacilar em	to hesitate over

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition Sp. *en* and Port. *em before an object (noun or pronoun)*.

Spanish	Portuguese	English
apoyarse en	apoiar-se em	to lean on/against
confiar en	confiar em	to trust, rely on
consistir en	consistir em	to consist of
convertirse en	tornar-se em	to become, to turn into
entrar en	entrar em	to enter (into)
esperar en	esperar em	to wait in/at
fijarse en	fixar-se em	to notice, to draw attention
meterse en	meter-se em envolver-se em	to get involved in
pensar en	pensar em	to think about
reparar en	reparar em	to notice
vender en	vender em	to sell for
volver en	voltar em	to return in
volver en sí	voltar _a_ si	to be oneself again

NOTE:

In Portuguese, the phrase to be oneself again *is used with the preposition* **a** *(voltar a si).*

Verbs with Italian in and French en

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition It. *in* and Fr. *en before an object (noun or pronoun).*

Italian	French	English
agire in	agir en	to act like/as
avere fiducia *di*	avoir confiance en	to to trust
irrompere in	casser en (morceaux)	to break into (pieces)
cambiarsi in	se changer en	to change into
convertire in	convertir en	to convert into
tagliare in	couper en	to cut in
credere in	croire en	to believe in
degenerare in	dégénérer en	to degenerate into
mascherarsi da	se déguiser en	to disguise oneself as
scrivere in	écrire en	to write in (Chinese)
erigersi *a*	s'ériger en	to set oneself up as

Italian	French	English
misurare in	mesurer en	to measure in (meters)
andare in collera	se mettre en colère	to get angry
mettersi in cammino	se mettre en route	to set out
partire in	partir en	to leave for
tingere in	peindre en	to paint in
ridurre in	réduire en	to reduce to
tradurre in	traduire en	to translate into (Spanish)
trasformare qualcosa in	transformer quelque chose en	to transform smth. into
vendersi in	se vendre en	to be sold in (bottles)
viaggiare in	voyager en	to travel by (taxi)

NOTE:

In Italian, the verbs **avere fiducia** and **erigersi** are used with the preposition **di** and **a**.

Verbs with French *dans*

The following is a list of French verbs which take the preposition Fr. **dans** before an object (*noun* or *pronoun*).

French	English
apprendre qqch dans (un livre)	*to learn smth. from (a book)*
avoir dans l'esprit/l' idée que	*to have a feeling that*
avoir dans l' idée/la tête que	*to have in mind*
boire qqch dans (une tasse)	*to drink smth out of (a cup)*
chercher dans (un carton)	*to look in (a box)*
copier qqch dans (un livre)	*to copy smth from (a book)*
courir dans	*to run through*
coûter dans (les 10 dollars)	*to cost about (10 dollars)*
entrer dans (une salle)	*to to enter (a room)*
errer dans (une ville)	*to wander around/through (a town)*
fouiller dans	*to look through*
lire dans (un journal)	*to read in (a paper)*
manger dans (une assiette)	*to eat off (a plate)*
mettre son espoir dans	*to pin one's hopes on*
partir dans (10 minutes)	*to leave in (10 minutes)*
réduire en	*to reduce to*
traduire en	*to translate into (Spanish)*

French	English
transformer qqch en	*to transform smth. into*
se vendre en	*to be sold in (bottles)*
voyager en	*to travel by (taxi)*

Preposition *da (It.)*, *chez (Fr.)*

It. *da* and Fr. *chez* are usually used with a person, a person's name or pronoun in order to express *at, to, in the house of* in the English language, for example:

It. Vai *da* Peter domani?

Fr. Vas-tu *chez* Peter demain?

- Are you going to Peter's house tomorrow?

NOTE:

*In Spanish and Portuguese, the expressions Sp. **a/en casa de** and Port. **a (para)/em casa de** are used in this case:*

Sp. ¿Vas **a la casa de** Peter mañana?

Port. Você vai **para a casa de** Peter
amanhã?

- Are you going to Peter's house tomorrow?

This also extends to places of work, business, shops, groups as well as a person's profession or society in Italian and French. Study the following:

It. Andiamo *dal* medico la prossima settimana?

Fr. Nous allons *chez* le médecin la semaine prochaine.

- *We are going to the doctor's next week.*

NOTE:
In Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition
a is used in this case:

Sp. Vamos *al* médico la próxima semana.

Port. Vamos *ao* médico na próxima
semana.

- *We are going to the doctor's next week.*

Preposition *para* (Sp. Port.), *per* (It.), *pour* (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp., Port. *para*, It. *per* and Fr. *pour* are rather common and have an extensive variety of meanings and exceptions, which must be memorized. Generally it can be translated as *for* in English. These prepositions are used to indicate:

• **purpose (in order to):**

The prepositions Sp., Port. *para*, It. *per* and Fr. *pour* indicate a purpose or an aim that will be attained and are equivalent to English *in order to* or *to*:

Sp. Lo he hecho *para* ayudarte;

Port. O tenho feito *para* ajudá-lo;

It. L'ho fatto *per* aiutarti;

Fr. Je l'ai fait *pour* t'aider.

*- I have done it **to** help you.*

Sp. Aprendo francés **para** hablar con mi tía de Francia;

Port. Aprendo francês **para** falar com minha tia da França;

It. Imparo francese **per** parlare con la mia zia dalla Francia;

Fr. J'apprends le français **pour** parler avec ma tante de France.

*- I learn french **to** speak with my aunt from France.*

- **recipient (for):**

    The prepositions Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** are also used to indicate the person or the object who will receive the action and correspond to *for* in English:

Sp. Tengo un regalo **para** ti;

Port. Eu tenho um presente **para** você;

It. Ho un regalo **per** te;

Fr. J'ai un cadeau **pour** toi.

*- I have a gift **for** you.*

Sp. Él trabaja **para** IKEA;

Port. Ele trabalha **para** a IKEA;

It. Lui lavora **per** IKEA;

Fr. Il travaille **pour** IKEA.

*- He works **for** IKEA.*

- **opinion or point of view (for, according to):**

Sp., Port. ***para***, It. ***per*** and Fr. ***pour*** can be used to express an opinion, which is equivalent to *for* or *according to* in English:

Sp. ***Para*** mí, el chino es el idioma más difícil;

Port. ***Para*** mim, o chinês é o idioma mais difícil;

It. ***Per*** me, il cinese è la lingua più difficile;

Fr. ***Pour*** moi, le chinois est la langue la plus difficile.

- ***For*** *me, the Chinese is the most difficult language.*

Sp. ***Para*** mi amigo, es una buena opción;

Port. ***Para*** meu amigo, é uma boa opção;

It. ***Per*** il mio amico, è una buona opzione;

Fr. ***Pour*** mon ami, c'est une bonne option.

- ***According to*** *my friend, it is a good option.*

- **direction or destination (for):**

Sp., Port. ***para***, It. ***per*** and Fr. ***pour*** are also used to express the destination for a person or object:

Sp. Salen ***para*** República Dominicana mañana;

Port. Eles partem ***para*** a República Dominicana amanhã;

It. Partono ***per*** la Repubblica Dominicana domani;

Fr. Ils partent ***pour*** la République Dominicaine demain.

- *They leave for Dominican Republic tomorrow.*

Sp. Este es el bus ***para*** Guayaquil;

Port. Este é o ônibus **para** Guayaquil;

It. Questo è il bus **per** Guayaquil;

Fr. Ceci est le bus **pour** Guayaquil.

- *This is the bus **to** Guayaquil.*

• **deadline (for, on, by):**

This preposition can be used to express when something must be done by the particular time in the future. In this case the prepositions Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** imply particular dates in the future and are equivalent to *for*, *on* or *by* in English:

Sp. Debo preparar la lección **para** mañana;

Port. Devo preparar a lição **para** amanhã;

It. Devo preparare la lezione **per** domani;

Fr. Je dois préparer la leçon **pour** demain.

- *I must prepare the lesson for tomorrow.*

• **comparison (for, although, despite, in spite of):**

This preposition is used to compare inequalities or disparities of someone or something in order to differentiate him/her/it from others. In this case the prepositions Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** are equivalent to *for*, *although*, *despite*, *in spite of* in English:

Sp. **Para** ser español, conoce la cultura china muy bien;

Port. **Para** ser espanhol, ele conhece a cultura chinesa muito bem;

It. **Per** essere spagnolo, conosce la cultura cinese molto bene;

Fr. **Pour** être espagnol, il connaît très bien la culture chinoise.

649

*- **For** a Spaniard, he knows Chinese culture very well.*

Preposition *por (Sp. Port.), **da** (It.), **par** (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp., Port. ***por***, It. ***da*** and Fr. ***par*** can be translated as *by* in English. These prepositions are used to indicate:

- **passive voice:**

The prepositions Sp., Port. ***por***, It. ***da*** and Fr. ***par*** indicate the agent or the doer *by whom* or *by which* an action is started, which means that such phrases are usually used in passive constructions:

Sp. La puerta fue abierta ***por*** él;

Port. A porta foi aberta ***por*** ele;

It. La porta è stata aperta ***da*** lui;

Fr. La porte a été ouverte ***par*** lui.

*- The door was opened **by** him.*

Sp. El pueblo fue destruido ***por*** la inundación.;

Port. A aldeia foi destruída ***pela*** inundação;

It. Il villaggio è stato distrutto ***dall'***inondazione;

Fr. Le village a été détruit ***par*** l'inondation.

*- The village was destroyed **by** the flood.*

- **direction or location (through, along):**

650

The prepositions Sp., Port. **por**, It. **da** or **per** and Fr. **par** also designate a place or a direction through which movement takes place and are equivalent to English *through* or *along*:

Sp. ¡Vamos **por** allá!

Port. Vamos **por** ali!

It. Andiamo **da** quella parte!

Fr. Allons-y **par** là!

- *Let's go that way!*

Sp. Tuvimos que pasar **por** esta calle;

Port. Tivemos que passar **por** esta rua;

It. Abbiamo dovuto passare **per** questa strada;

Fr. Nous avons dû passer **par** cette rue.

- *We had to pass **through** this street.*

NOTE: *That in Italian the preposition **per** is used in this case.*

- **manner or means (by, through, out of or by means of):**

The prepositions Sp., Port. **por**, It. **da** or **per** and Fr. **par** also can express the manner or means by which something is done. It is equivalent to *by, through, out of* or *by means of* in English. Below are several of the phrases which denote manner:

651

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
por casualidad; por accidente	por acaso; por acidente	_per_ caso; _per_ accidente	par hazard; par accident	_by accident_
por costumbre	por hábito	_per_ abitudine	par habitude	_out of habit_

NOTE: _in Italian the preposition_ **per** _is used in this case._

Sp. Lo hace **por** costumbre;

Port. Ele faz isso **por** hábito;

It. Lo fa **per** abitudine;

Fr. Il le fait **par** habitude;

- _He does it_ **out of** _habit._

Sp. Vamos a hablar **por** teléfono más tarde;

Port. Vamos falar **por** telefone mais tarde;

It. Parleremo **_al_** telefono più tardi;

Fr. Nous allons parler **_au_** téléphone plus tard.

- _We will talk_ **on** _the phone later._

NOTE:

Italian preposition **al** _and French_ **au** _are used in this case._

- **amount and rate (per, a):**

The prepositions Sp., Port. *por* and Fr. *par* translates quantity per unit of measurement and rate. It is equivalent to English *per* or *a*:

Sp. Ella gana 20 dólares *por* hora.

Port. Ela ganha 20 dólares *por* hora.

It. Lei guadagna 20 dollari *all'*ora.

Fr. Elle gagne 20 dollars *de l'*heure.

- *She earns 20 dollars per hour.*

NOTE:
Italian preposition a and French de are used in this case.

Sp. Aprendo francés tres veces *por* semana;

Port. Aprendo francês três vezes *por* semana;

It. Studio francese tre volte *alla* settimana;

Fr. J'apprends le français trois fois *par* semaine.

- *I learn French three times per week.*

NOTE:
In Italian, the preposition a is used in this case.

Por in Spanish and Portuguese

The preposition Sp., Port. **por** has a number of peculiarities in usage which are only typical for Spanish and Portuguese. Spanish and Portuguese preposition **por** is used to indicate:

- **duration (for):**

The preposition Sp., Port. **por** indicates time during which something lasts or takes place. It corresponds to the English *for*:

Sp. Tengo la intención de vivir en Bruselas **por** un mes;

Port. Tenho a intenção de viver em Bruxelas **por** um mês;

- I have the intention of living in Brussels for a month.

NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**; Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

*It. Ho l'intenzione di vivere a Bruxelles **per** un mese.*

*Fr. J'ai l'intention de vivre à Bruxelles **pour** un mois.*

- I have the intention of living in Brussels for a month.

When the action takes place during the whole period of time, one can use Sp. **durante**; Port. **durante**; It. **durante (per)**; Fr. **pendant** - *during*. For example:

Sp. Hablamos **durante** dos horas;

Port. Nós conversamos **durante** duas horas;

It. Abbiamo parlato **per** due ore;

Fr. Nous avons parlé **pendant** deux heures.

- *We talked for two hours.*

NOTE:

In Italian, the preposition **per** is used in this case.

- **reason or cause (because of, for):**

The preposition Sp., Port. **por** expresses the reason or motive which brought about the action. It means *because of* or *for* in English:

Sp. Fue castigado **por** haber mentido;

Port. Ele foi punido **por** ter mentido;

- *He was punished because of lying.*

Sp. Ella lo adora **por** su valentía;

Port. Ela adora-o (Braz. Port. o adora) **por** sua bravura;

- *She adores him for his bravery.*

NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**; Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

*It. E 'stato punito **per** aver mentito;*
*Fr. Il a été puni **pour** avoir menti.*
- *He was punished because of lying.*

*It. Lei lo adora **per** il suo coraggio;*
*Fr. Elle l'adore **pour** sa bravoure.*
- *She adores him for his bravery.*

- **exchange (for):**

    Sp., Port. **por** can be used to express the exchange of one thing for another:

    Sp. Compré este anillo **por** 10.000 dólares;

    Port. Eu comprei este anel **por** 10.000 dólares;

    - *I bought this ring for 10,000 dollars.*

    Sp. He cambiado esta tarjeta postal **por** otra;

    Port. Eu mudei este cartão postal **por** outro;

    - *I changed this postcard for another.*

    NOTE:
    In Italian and French prepositions It. **per;** *Fr.* **pour** *are used in this case:*

    It. Ho comprato questo anello **per** *10.000 dollari;*

    Fr. Je l'ai acheté cette bague **pour** *10.000 dollars.*

    - *I bought this ring for 10,000 dollars.*

    It. Ho cambiato questa cartolina per una altra;

    Fr. J'ai changé cette carte postale pour une autre.

    - *I changed this postcard for another.*

- **meaning *on behalf of, in favour of*:**

Sp., Port. **por** also means *on behalf of, in favour of* in Spanish and Portuguese. For example:

Sp. Hablo **por** María.

Port. Falo **por** Maria.

- *I speak **on behalf of** Maria.*

Sp Él está **por** los derechos de las mujeres;

Port. Ele é **pelos** direitos das mulheres;

- *He is for women's rights.*

NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**;
Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

It. *Parlo **per** Maria.*

Fr. *Je parle **pour** Maria.*

- *I speak **on behalf of** Maria.*

It. *È **per** i diritti delle donne;*

Fr. *Il est **pour** les droits des femmes.*

- *He is for women's rights.*

• **substitution (instead of, for):**

This preposition also expresses substitution, which is close to *"exchange"* in a sense, meaning someone is taking place of another person in Spanish and Portuguese. For instance:

Sp. Voy a hacerlo **por** él;

Port. Eu vou fazê-lo **por** ele.

*- I will do it (instead of) **for** him.*

NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**;*
*Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

*It. Lo farò **per** lui.*
*Fr. Je vais le faire **pour** lui.*
*- I will do it (instead of) **for** him.*

- **personal evaluation (as, for):**

Sp., Port. ***por*** can also express a personal opinion or evaluation. It means *for* or *as* in English. Study the following:

Sp. Charles la tomó ***por*** otra persona;

Port. Charles tomou-a (Braz. Port. a tomou) ***por*** outra pessoa.

- Charles took her for someone else.

NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**;*
*Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

*It. Charles l'ha preso **per** un'altra persona.*
*Fr. Charles l'a pris **pour** une autre*
personne.
*- Charles took her **for** someone else.*

- **expressions that use *por*:**

In Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition Sp., Port. ***por*** is also used in the following expressions:

658

NOTE:

Unlike in Spanish, in Italian and French, and sometimes Portuguese, the expressions from the list below are formed differently. Even though Portuguese, Italian and French expressions are presented in the table for the sake of comparison, it is reasonable to memorize them too, since they are widely used in speech.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
día por día	dia a dia	giorno per giorno	jour après jour	*day by day*
estar por	estar por	essere per/ da	être pour	*to be in the mood to*
palabra por palabra	palavra por palavra	parola per parola	mot à mot	*word for word*
por ahí, allí	por aí, lá	da quella parte	par la	*around here, there*
por ahora	por hora	per il momento	pour l'instant	*for now*
por aquí	por aqui	da questa parte	par ici	*this way*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por casualidad	por acaso	per caso	par hasard	*by chance*
por ciento	porcento	per cento	pourcent	*percent*
por cierto	certamente	certamente	certainement	*certainly*
por completo	completamente	completamente	complètement	*completely*
por dentro	por dentro	all'/ nell'interno	à l'intérieur	*inside*
por desgracia	infelizmente	per disgrazia/ malaugurata mente	malheureusement	*unfortunately*
por ejemplo	por exemplo	per esempio	par exemple	*for example*
por escrito	por escrito	per (i)scritto	par écrit	*in writing*
por eso/ por lo tanto	por isso/ portanto	perciò/ pertanto	c'est pourquoi/ partant	*therefore*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por favor	por favor	per favore/ per piacere	s'il vous plait (formal) s'il te plait (informal)	*please*
por fin/ por último	por fim/ por último	infine/ alla fine	enfin/ à la fin	*finally*
por la mañana	pela manhã	la mattina	le matin	*in the morning*
por las buenas o por las malas	por bem ou por mal	con le buone o con le cattive	de gré ou de force/ en douceur ou à la dure	*whether you like it or not*
por lo menos	pelo menos	almeno	au moins	*at least*
por el mismo caso/ por lo mismo	pelo mesmo motivo	per la stessa ragione	pour la même raison	*for that very reason*
por lo que a mí me toca	pelo que me toca	per quanto mi riguarda	en ce qui me concerne	*as far as I am concerned*
por lo que he oído	pelo que eu tenho ouvido	da quello che ho sentito	suivant ce que j'ai entendu	*judging by what I've heard*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por lo visto	pelo visto/ aparentemente	apparentemente	apparemment	*apparently*
por medio de	por meio de	per mezzo di	au moyen de	*by means of*
por mi parte	da minha parte	da parte mia	pour ma part	*for my part*
por motivo de	por motivo de	per cagione di/ per motivo di	en raison de/ à cause de	*on account of*
por ningún lado	por nenhum lado	da nessuna parte	nulle part	*nowhere*
por poco	por pouco	pressapoco	à peu près	*almost*
por primera vez	pela primeira vez	per la prima volta	pour la première fois	*for the first time*
por última vez	pela última vez	per l'ultima volta	pour la dernière fois	*for the last time*
¿por qué?	por quê?	perché?	pourquoi?	*why?*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por si acaso	se por acaso/só por precaução	nel caso dei casi/ per ogni eventualità	à tout hazard/ à toute éventualité	*just in case*
por suerte	por sorte	per fortuna	par chance	*fortunate ly*
por teléfono	por telefone	per telefono	par/en téléphone	*on the phone*
por todas partes	por toda a parte	dappertutto / ovunque	partout	*everywh ere*
por un lado	por um lado	da un lato	d'un côté	*on the one hand*
por otro lado	por outro lado	dall'altro lato	d'un autre côté	*on the other hand*

Verbs with *por* (Sp., Port.), *per* (It.) and *pour* (Fr.)

Below is the list of the most common verbs that require Sp., Port. *por*, It. *per* and Fr. *pour* before an *infinitive*:

NOTE:
However, there are verbs which are used with different prepositions (especially in Italian and French). They are all italicized

*and underlined. Pay attention to them and
try to memorize them carefully.*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
disculparse por	desculpar- se por	scusarsi per	s'excuser *de*/pour	*to apologize for*
esforzarse por	esforçar-se por	sforzarsi *di*/*a*	s'efforcer *de*/*à*	*to struggle to*
estar por	estar por	essere per/ *da*	être pour	*to be in favor of*
luchar por	lutar por	lottare per	lutter pour	*to struggle for*
optar por/ *entre*	optar por	optare per	opter *entre*	*to opt for*

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition Sp., Port **por**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** *before an object (noun or pronoun).*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
asustarse por/*de*/ *com*	assustar-se por/*de*/ *com*	spaventars i per	s'effrayer *à*	*to get frightened about*
cambiar por	trocar por	scambiare *con*	échanger *contre*/ troquer *contre*	*to exchange for*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
comenzar por/_con_	começar _com_/por	iniziare _col_/_da_	commencer par / _avec_	_to begin by/with_
desvelarse por	desvelar-se por	inquietarsi per	s'inquiéter _de_/ se soucier _de_	_to be very concerned about_
disculparse por	desculpar-se por	scusarsi per	s'excuser _de_/pour	_to apologize for_
estar por	estar por	essere per/ _da_	être pour	_to be in favor of_
interesarse por	interessar-se por	interessarsi _a_	s'intéresser _à_	_to be interested in_
luchar por	lutar por	lottare per	lutter pour	_to struggle for_
jurar por	jurar por	giurare per/_su_	jurer par/ _sur_	_to swear by/on_
optar por/ entre	optar por	optare per	opter _entre_	_to opt for_
pagar por/ _con_	pagar por/ _com_	pagare per/_con_	payer pour/_avec_	_to pay by/ with_
preguntar por	perguntar por	chiedere _di_	demander _de_	_to ask about/ after_

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
preocupars e por	preocupar- se por/_com_	preoccupar si per	se préoccuper _de_	_to worry about_
rezar por	orar por rezar por	pregare per	prier pour	_to pray for_
salir por	sair por	uscire per	sortir par	_to leave via_
tomar por	tomar por	prendere per	prendre pour	_to take for_
viajar por	viajar por	viaggiare per	voyager par	_to travel by (train)_
votar por	votar por/ _em_	votare per	voter pour	_to vote for_

Preposition **con** (Sp.), **com** (Port.), **con** (It.), **avec** (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** mean _with_ and are basically used like its English equivalent. These prepositions are used to express:

- **accompaniment (with):**

Sp. Él va al cine **con** Anna;

666

Port. Ele vai ao cinema **com** Anna;

It. Lui va al cinema **con** Anna;

Fr. Il va au cinéma **avec** Anna.

- *He is going to the cinema **with** Anna.*

Sp. Ella quiere casarse **con** un extranjero;

Port. Ela quer se casar **com** um estrangeiro;

It. Lei vuole sposarsi **con** uno straniero;

Fr. Elle veut se marier **avec** un étranger.

- *She want to get married **to** a foreigner.*

- **instrument, means (with):**

The prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** are also used to indicate the instrument *with* which something is done in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. It corresponds to *with* in English:

Sp. Escribí esta carta **con** un lápiz;

Port. Eu escrevi esta carta **com** um lápis;

It. Ho scritto questa lettera **con** una matita;

Fr. J'ai écrit cette lettre **avec** un crayon.

- *I wrote this letter **with** a pencil.*

Sp. Lo vi **con** mis propios ojos;

Port. Eu vi isso **com** meus próprios olhos;

It. L'ho visto **con** i miei propri occhi;

Fr. Je l'ai vu **avec** mes propres yeux.

667

*- I saw it **with** my own eyes.*

- **reason, cause (with):**

> Sp. Es imposible trabajar **con** este ruido;
>
> Port. É impossível trabalhar **com** esse barulho;
>
> It. E 'impossibile lavorare **con** questo rumore;
>
> Fr. Il est impossible de travailler **avec** ce bruit.
>
> *- It is impossible to work **with** this noise.*

> Sp. Hay cosas que no se olvidan nunca **con** el tiempo;
>
> Port. Há coisas que nunca se esquecem **com** o tempo;
>
> It. Ci sono cose che la gente non si dimentica mai **con** il tempo;
>
> Fr. Il y a des choses qu'on n'oublie jamais **avec** le temps.
>
> *- There are things that one never forgets **with** time.*

- **attribute (with):**

    In order to express the attribute or describe a person's appearance the prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** are used in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian.

> *NOTE:*
> *Remember that in French, the preposition Fr. **à** is used in this sense. For example:*
>
> *Sp. Esa es una chica **con** el pelo largo;*
> *Port. Essa é uma menina **com** cabelos longos;*

*It. Quella è una ragazza **con** i capelli lunghi;*

*Fr. C'est une fille **aux** cheveux longs.*

*- That is a girl **with** long hair.*

However, in the Romance languages, the prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** can be found in a number of other meanings depending on the context. Below are the most common examples where the prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** are used differently from the use of *with* in the English language:

• **used to form adverbial phrases:**

The prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** can be used to compose phrases that function like adverbs. It is possible to do the same English using with and other preposition, but nevertheless it is more common to do so in the Romance languages. Observe the following:

Sp. Ella dijo eso **con** entusiasmo;

Port. Ela disse isso **com** entusiasmo;

It. Lei ha detto questo **con** entusiasmo;

Fr. Elle a dit ça **avec** enthousiasme.

- She said it enthusiastically.

Sp. Espero tu carta **con** paciencia;

Port. Eu espero a sua carta **com** paciência;

It. Aspetto la tua lettera **con** pazienza;

Fr. J'attends ta lettre **avec** patience.

- I am waiting for your letter patiently.

669

- **used to indicate conditions (in spite of, despite):**

    Sometimes Sp. *con*, and Fr. *avec* can occur in the phrases with the meanings of *despite, in spite of,* for instance:

    Sp. *Con* todo eso, todavía está feliz;

    Port. *__Apesar de__* tudo isso, ela ainda está feliz;

    It. *__Nonostante/Dopo__* tutto questo, è ancora felice;

    Fr. *Avec* tout cela, elle est toujours heureuse.

    - *Despite everything, she is still happy.*

NOTE:
*Portuguese **apesar de** and Italian **nonostante** or **dopo** should be used, since these expressions sound more natural in this case.*

Verbs with Spanish **con** and Portuguese **com**

    The prepositions Sp. *con* and Port. *com* (*with*) are used with particular verbs in Spanish and Portuguese. Below is the list of the most common verbs that require Sp. *con* and Port. *com* before an infinitive:

NOTE:
Unlike in Spanish and Portuguese, in Italian and French, most of the verbs from the list are used with different prepositions. It is advisable to memorize divergent cases.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
amenazar con	ameaçar com	minacciare _di_	menacer _de_	_to threaten to_
comenzar con/por	começar com/por	iniziare col/da	commencer avec/par	_to begin with/by_
contar con	contar com	contare _su_	compter _sur_	_to count/ rely on_
contentarse con	contentar com	accontentar si _di_	se contenter _de_	_to be satisfied with_
preocuparse con	se preocupar com	preoccupar si _di_	se soucier de; se préoccuper _de_	_to be concerned with_
soñar con	sonhar com	sognare _di_	rêver _de_	_to dream of_
tener que ver con	ter a ver com	aver a che fare con	avoir à faire avec	_to concern, to have to do with_

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition Sp. **con** and Port. **com** before an object (_noun or pronoun_).

NOTE:

Remember that in Italian and French many verbs from the list require different prepositions rather than with.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
acabar con	acabar com	finire con	en finir avec	*to finish, put an end to*
amenazar con	ameaçar com	minacciare <u>di</u>	menacer <u>de</u>	*to threaten with*
casarse con	casar-se com	sposarsi con	se marier avec	*to marry*
comenzar con/por	começar com/por	iniziare col/da	commencer avec/par	*to begin with/by*
contar con	contar com	contare <u>su</u>	compter <u>sur</u>	*to count on*
contentarse con	contentar-se com	accontentar si <u>di</u>	se contenter <u>de</u>	*to be satisfied with*
encontrarse con	encontrar-se com	incontrarsi con	se retrouver avec; se rencontrer avec	*to meet*
enfrentarse con/ encararse con	<u>*enfrentar*</u>	affrontarsi con	s'affronter avec	*to face*

672

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
enojarse con enfadarse con	enfadar-se com; zangar-se com; enraivar-se com	arrabbiarsi con	se fâcher _contre_	_to get angry with_
espantarse con asustarse con	assustar-se com	spaventarsi _di_	s'effrayer _de_	_to be frightened of_
pagar con	pagar com	pagare con	payer avec	_to pay with_
preocuparse con	se preocupar com	preoccupar si _per_	se soucier _de;_ se préoccuper _de_	_to be concerned with_
quedarse con	ficar com	rimanere con	rester avec	_to keep_
soñar con	sonhar com	sognare _di_	rêver _de_	_to dream of_
tropezar con	tropeçar _em_	intoppare _in_	tomber _sur_	_to run across_
tener que ver con	ter a ver com	aver a che fare con	avoir à faire avec	_to concern, to have to do with_

*Preposition **sin** (Sp.), **sem** (Port.), **senza** (It.), **sans** (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **sin**, Port. **sem**, It. **senza** and Fr. **sans** stand for *without* and are placed before nouns or verbs. These prepositions are used to indicate:

- **a lack (without):**

> Sp. Yo prefiero el té **sin** azúcar;
>
> Port. Eu prefiro o chá **sem** açúcar;
>
> It. Io preferisco il tè **senza** zucchero;
>
> Fr. Je préfère le thé **sans** sucre.
>
> - *I prefer the tea **without** sugar.*

> Sp. No puedo tomar una decisión **sin** usted;
>
> Port. Eu não posso tomar uma decisão **sem** o senhor (or você);
>
> It. Non posso prendere una decisione **senza** di voi;
>
> Fr. Je ne peux pas prendre une décision **sans** vous.
>
> - *I can't make a decision **without** you.*

- **constructions with an infinitive:**

The preposition Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** - *without* is also followed by an infinitive. It should be noted that in English a gerund used in this case (**See Infinitive p.468**). Observe the following:

674

Sp. Ella entró **sin** mirarme;

Port. Ela entrou **sem** olhar para mim;

It. Lei è entrato **senza** guardarmi;

Fr. Elle est entrée **sans** me regarder.

- *She entered **without** looking at me.*

Preposition **contra** *(Sp.)*, **contra** *(Port.)*, **contro** *(It.)*, **contre** *(Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. **contra**, Port. **contra**, It. **contro** and Fr. **contre** literally and figuratively means against in all contexts. It is used to express:

• **location or juxtaposition (against, next to):**

Sp. La mesa está **contra** la pared;

Port. A mesa está **contra** a parede;

It. Il tavolo sta **contro** la parete;

Fr. La table est **contre** le mur.

- *The table is **against** the wall.*

• **opposition (against):**

Sp. Están **contra** la guerra;

Port. Eles são **contra** a guerra;

It. Sono **contro** la guerra;

Fr. Ils sont **contre** la guerre.

*- They are **against** the war.*

NOTE:

*In Spanish, in order to express an opinion or a feeling the phrase **en contra de** can also be used:*

> *Sp. Están **en contra de** la guerra.*
> *- They are **against** the war.*

• **protection (against, from):**

> Sp. Eso es el medicamento **contra** la gripe;
>
> Port. Isso é o medicamento **contra** a gripe;
>
> It. Questa è la medicina **contro** l'influenza;
>
> Fr. C'est le médicament **contre** la grippe.
>
> *- That is the medicine for the flu.*

Preposition *entre (Sp.), entre (Port.), tra (It.), entre (Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. *contra*, Port. *contra*, It. *contro* and Fr. *contre* generally means *between, among*. It is used the way one uses its English equivalent:

> Sp. No hay ninguna diferencia **entre** tú y yo;
>
> Port. Não há nenhuma diferença **entre** você e eu;
>
> It. Non c'è nessuna differenza **tra** te e me;
>
> Fr. Il n'y a aucune différence **entre** toi et moi.

- *There is no difference **between** you and me.*

Sp. Tengo que elegir **entre** esos dos productos;

Port. Eu tenho que escolher **entre** esses dois produtos;

It. Devo scegliere **tra** questi due prodotti;

Fr. Je dois choisir **entre** ces deux produits.

- *I have to choose **between** those two products.*

Preposition **sobre** *(Sp.)*, **sobre** *(Port.)*, **su** *(It.)*, **sur** *(Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. **sobre**, Port. **sobre**, It. **su** and Fr. **sur** normally means *on, about* or *over*. It can be used in a number of ways depending on the context. Thus, Sp. **sobre**, Port. **sobre**, It. **su** and Fr. **sur** is used:

- **to mean location (on, upon, over):**

Sp. Puse un libro **sobre** la mesa;

Port. Eu coloquei um livro **sobre** a mesa;

It. Ho messo un libro **sul** tavolo;

Fr. J'ai mis un livre **sur** la table.

- *I put a book **on** the table.*

Sp. Puedes sentarte **sobre** la silla;

Port. Você pode se sentar **sobre** a cadeira.;

It. Puoi sederti **sulla** sedia;

Fr. Tu peux t'assoir **sur** la chaise.

*- You can sit **on** the chair.*

- **to mean subject or topic (about, on, concerning, with regard to):**

     The preposition Sp. ***sobre***, Port. ***sobre***, It. ***su*** and Fr. ***sur*** is used to show formal treatment of a subject or topic:

     Sp. Este autor escribió un libro ***sobre*** la cocina oriental;

     Port. Este autor escreveu um livro ***sobre*** culinária oriental;

     It. Questo autore ha scritto un libro ***sulla*** cucina orientale;

     Fr. Cet auteur a écrit un livre ***sur*** la cuisine orientale.

     *- This author wrote a book **about/on** oriental cuisine.*

     Sp. Ella participó en una conferencia ***sobre*** la pedagogía;

     Port. Ela participou de uma conferência ***sobre*** pedagogia;

     It. Lei ha partecipato a una conferenza ***sulla*** pedagogia;

     Fr. Elle a participé à une conférence ***sur*** la pédagogie.

     *- She participated in a conference **on** pedagogy.*

- **to express approximation of time (about, around, over):**

     Sp. Vamos a llegar ***sobre*** las cinco;

     Port. Vamos chegar ***por volta dàs*** cinco horas;

     It. Arriveremo ***verso le*** cinque;

     Fr. Nous arriverons ***sur*** les cinq heures.

     *- We will arrive **at around** five o'clock.*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese **por volta de**, and in Italian **verso le** should be used in this case.*

Sp. **Sobre** el 2012, la economía del país comenzó a crecer;

Port. **Em** 2012, a economia do país começou a crescer;

It. **Sul** 2012, l'economia del paese ha iniziato a crescere;

Fr. **Sur** 2012, l'économie du pays a commencé à croître.

- ***Around*** *2012 the economy of the country started to grow.*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese the preposition **em** should be used in this case.*

Preposition *frente a (Sp.), perante/em frente a (Port.), davanti a (It.), devant (Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. **ante**, Port. **perante**, It. **davanti a** and Fr. **devant** means *in front of* or *before* and designates a location or position. This preposition is used with nouns or pronouns. It is notable that in Italian the preposition **davanti** is used with **a**. Observe the following:

Sp. Estoy *frente a* la escuela;

Port. Estou **em frente** à escola;

It. Sono **davanti alla** scuola;

Fr. Je suis **devant** l'école.

- *I am **in front of** the school.*

Sp. Ella pasó *frente a* mí;

Port. Ela passou *perante* mim;

It. Lei è passato *davanti a* me;

Fr. Elle a passé *devant* moi.

- She passed *before* me.

NOTE:
*In Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition Sp. **delante de**; Port. **diante de** - in front of can also be used in this case, for example:*

Sp. Ella pasó **delante de** mí;
Port. Ela passou **diante de** mim.
- She passed **before** me.

Preposition *bajo (debajo de) (Sp.), sob (debaixo de) (Port.), sotto (It.), sous (Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. *bajo*, Port. *sob*, It. *sotto* and Fr. *sous* means *under*. It can be used literally when indicating position (e.g. under the sky), or figuratively (e.g. under, the pressure):

Sp. El perro está *bajo* la lluvia;

Port. O cão está *sob* a chuva;

It. Il cane è *sotto* la pioggia;

Fr. Le chien est *sous* la pluie.

- *The dog is in the rain.*

Sp. La situación está **bajo** control;

Port. A situação está **sob** controle;

It. La situazione è **sotto** controllo;

Fr. La situation est **sous** contrôle.

- *The situation is **under** control.*

NOTE:

*However, in Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition Sp. **debajo de**; Port. **debaixo de** is also used when one indicates position but in a more strict and literal way. Observe the following:*

*Sp. El perro está **debajo del** árbol;*
*Port. O cão está **debaixo da** árvore;*
- *The dog is **under** the tree.*

But In Italian and French, the preposition It. **sotto** and Fr. **sous** is still used in this sense:

It. Il cane è **sotto** l'albero;

Fr. Le chien est **sous** l'arbre.

- *The dog is **under** the tree.*

Preposition *desde (Sp.), desde (Port.), da (It.), depuis (Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. **desde**, Port. **desde**, It. **da** and Fr. **depuis** expresses *from* or *since*. It is used in order to emphasize:

- **range or distance (from):**

> Sp. Me gustaría viajar **_de_** Nápoles hasta Milán;
>
> Port. Eu gostaria de viajar **_desde_** Nápoles até Milan;
>
> It. Vorrei viaggiare **_da_** Napoli fino a Milano;
>
> Fr. Je voudrais voyager **_depuis_** Naples jusqu'à Milan.
>
> - _I would like to travel from Naples to Milan._

> **_NOTE:_**
> _Spanish preposition **de** should be used in this case._

> Sp. Hay zapatos **_desde_** veinte hasta setenta euros;
>
> Port. Há sapatos **_desde_** vinte até setenta euros;
>
> It. Ci sono scarpe **_da_** venti fino a settanta euro;
>
> Fr. Il y a des chaussures **_de_** vingt à soixante-dix euros.
>
> - _There are shoes from twenty to seventy euros._

> **_NOTE:_**
> _French preposition **de** should be used in this case._

- **time (from, since):**

> Sp. Él está buscando un trabajo **_desde_** junio;
>
> Port. Ele está à procurar um trabalho **_desde_** junho
>
> (Braz. Port. Ele está procurando um trabalho **_desde_** junho);
>
> It. Egli cerca un lavoro **_da_** giugno;

Fr. Il cherche un travail **depuis** Juin.

- *He has been looking for a job **since** June.*

Sp. Me conocen **desde** la infancia;

Port. Eles me conhecem **desde** a infância

It. Mi conoscono **dall'**infanzia.;

Fr. Ils me connaissent **depuis** l'enfance.

- *They have known me **since** childhood.*

Preposition *durante (Sp.), durante (Port.), durante (It.), pendant (durant) (Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. **durante**, Port. **durante**, It. **durante** and Fr. **pendant** (**durant**) means *during* or *for*. It is used to indicate:

- **duration of time (from):**

Sp. Hablamos **durante** toda la noche;

Port. Falamos **durante** toda a noite;

It. Abbiamo parlato **durante** tutta la notte;

Fr. Nous avons parlé **pendant** toute la nuit.

- *We talked **during** all night.*

Sp. **Durante** octubre, el tiempo se puso más frío;

Port. **Durante** outubro, o tempo tornou-se mais frio;

(Braz. Port. **Durante** outubro, o tempo se tornou mais frio);

683

It. **Durante** ottobre, il clima è diventato più freddo;

Fr. **Pendant (Durant)** octobre, le temps est devenu plus froid.

- In (during) October, the weather became colder.

Preposition *hasta (Sp.), até (Port.), fino a (It.), jusqu'à (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **hasta**, Port. **até**, It. **fino a** and Fr. **jusqu'à** generally express *until* or *up to*. These prepositions are used to demonstrate:

- **time** (until, up to):

  Sp. Quiero visitar Colombia **hasta** el fin del año;

  Port. Quero visitar a Colômbia **até** o fim do ano;

  It. Voglio visitare la Colombia fino **alla** fine dell'anno;

  Fr. Je veux visiter la Colombie *jusqu'à* la fin de l'année.

  *- I want to visit Colombia **until** the end of the year.*

- **place (until, up to, as far as):**

  Sp. Viajó **hasta** Barranquilla;

  Port. Ele viajou **até** Barranquilla;

  It. Ha viaggiato *fino a* Barranquilla;

  Fr. Il a voyagé *jusqu'à* Barranquilla.

  *- He travelled **as far as** Barranquilla.*

Preposition *hacia (Sp.), para (Port.), verso (It.), vers (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. ***hacia***, Port. ***para***, It. ***verso*** and Fr. ***vers*** literally and figuratively mean *towards* or *around* or *about*. These prepositions are used to indicate:

- **direction of movement (towards, to):**

> Sp. Lo vi ir ***hacia*** el parque;
>
> Port. Eu vi-o ir ***para*** o parque;
>
> (Braz. Port. Eu o vi ir ***para*** o parque);
>
> It. L'ho visto andare ***verso*** il parco;
>
> Fr. Je l'ai vu aller ***vers*** le parc.
>
> - *I saw him going **towards** the park.*

NOTE:

In Portuguese and French, the preposition towards *in figurative meaning is Port.* ***para com*** *and Fr.* ***envers***. *While in Spanish and Italian, the prepositions Sp.* ***hacia*** *and It.* ***verso*** *are still used. Observe the following:*

*Sp. ¿Cuál es su actitud **hacia** el feminismo?*

  *Port. Qual é a sua atitude **para com** o feminismo?*

  *It. Qual è il tuo atteggiamento **verso** il femminismo?*

  *Fr. Quelle est votre attitude **envers** le feminisme?*

*- What is your attitude **towards**
feminism?*

- **approximation of time (around, about):**

Sp. Ella prometió venir *hacia* las siete;

Port. Ela prometeu vir **por volta** sete horas;

It. Ha promesso di venire *verso* le sette;

Fr. Elle a promis de venir *vers* sept heures.

*- She promised to come **around** seven o'clock.*

NOTE:

*In Portuguese, the preposition around in
figurative meaning is Port. **por volta**.*

Preposition *excepto (salvo) (Sp.), exceto (salvo) (Port.), eccetto (salvo) (It.), excepté (sauf) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *excepto (salvo)*, Port. *excepto (salvo)*, It. *eccetto (salvo)* and Fr. *excepté (sauf)* mean *except*. These prepositions are used basically like their English equivalent. For example:

Sp. Todo el mundo vino *excepto (salvo)* Mario;

Port. Todo o mundo veio *exceto (salvo)* Mario;

It. Ognuno è venuto *eccetto (salvo)* Mario;

Fr. Tout le monde est venu *excepté (sauf)* Mario.

*- Everybody came **except** Mario.*

It should be mentioned that Sp. *salvo*, Port. *salvo*, It. *salvo* and Fr. *sauf* are much more frequent in everyday language.

> **NOTE:**
> *In Spanish, the preposition Sp. **menos** is also widely used in colloquial language in this case. Study the following:*

> Sp. *Todo el mundo vino **menos** Mario;*
> *- Everybody came **except** Mario.*

Preposition *según (conforme a) (Sp.), segundo (conforme) (Port.), secondo (conforme; conformemente a) (It.), selon (conformément à; d'après) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *según* (*conforme a*), Port. *segundo* (*conforme*), It. *secondo* (*conforme; conformemente a*) and Fr. *selon* (*conformément à*; *d'après*) corresponds to *according to*. These prepositions are used the same way as their English equivalent. For example:

> Sp. ***Según*** él, no es importante;

> Port. ***Segundo*** ele, não é importante;

> It. ***Secondo*** lui, non è importante;

> Fr. ***Selon*** lui, c'est pas important.

> *- **According to him**, it's not important.*

> Sp. ***Conforme al*** pronóstico, va a llover mañana;

> Port. ***Conforme*** a previsão, vai chover amanhã;

> It. ***Conforme*** le previsioni, sta per piovere domani;

Fr. *D'après* les prévisions, il va pleuvoir demain.

- *According to* the forecast, it will rain tomorrow.

It should be remembered that in the Romance languages, the prepositions Sp. *según*, Port. *segundo*, It. *secondo* and Fr. *selon* are also widely used in speech meaning *depending on*. Study the following:

Sp. *Según* las circunstancias, vamos a decidir qué hacer;

Port. *Segundo* as circunstâncias, vamos decidir o que fazer;

It. *Secondo* le circostanze, decideremo cosa fare;

Fr. *Selon* les circonstances, nous allons décider quoi faire.

- *Depending on* the circumstances, we will decide what to do.

Compound Prepositions (Prepositional Phrases)

Below is a list of the most frequent compound prepositions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en lo bajo de; abajo de	embaixo de; na parte de baixo de	nella parte bassa	au bas de	below; at the foot/ bottom of

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
encima de; por encima de; por arriba de	em cima de; por cima de; acima de	al di sopra di; *but*: sopra	au-dessus de; par-dessus	*above; over*
a través de	através de	attraverso	à travers	*across, through*
al lado de; junto a	ao lado de; junto de	allato a; accanto a	à côté de	*next to*
más allá de	além de	al di là di	au delà de	*beyond*
acerca de; a propósito de	acerca de; a propósito de	circa a; a proposito di	au sujet de; à propos de	*about, as regards, concerning*
alrededor de; en torno a	ao redor de; em torno de	attorno a; intorno a	autour de	*around*
cerca de	perto de	vicino a	près de	*near*
para con	para com	*but*: verso	*but*: envers	*towards*
a lo largo de	ao longo de	*but*: lungo	au long de	*along*

689

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
al pie de	ao pé de	ai piedi di	au pied de	*next to; nearby*
en vez de; en lugar de	em vez de; em lugar de	invece di; in luogo di	au lieu de; à la place de	*instead of, in place of*
a pesar de, a despecho de .	apesar de, a despeito de	*but:* malgrado, a dispetto di	*but:* malgré, en dépit de	*in spite of, despite*
a fin de	a fim de	a scopo di; affinché; al fine di	afin que/ de	*in order to*
antes de	antes de	prima di	avant de	*before*
después de	depois de	*but:* dopo	*but:* après	*after*
delante de; frente a; enfrente	diante de; em frente a	dinnanzi a; di fronte a; di faccia a	en face de;	*in front of*
detrás de; *but:* tras	atrás de	dietro a	*but:* derrière	*behind*
lejos de	longe de	lontano da	loin de	*away from*

690

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dentro de; en el interior de	dentro de; no interior de	dentro; all'interno di	à l'intérieur de	*inside, in*
respecto a; con respecto a; con relación a; en cuanto a	a respeito de; com respeito a; em relação a; quanto a	rispetto a; riguardo a; in quanto a; in merito a	par rapport à; quant à	*with respect to, in relation to, concerning*
de acuerdo con	de acordo com	in conformità con	conformément à; en conformité avec	*according to; in accordance with*
fuera de	fora de	fuori di	hors de; en dehors de	*outside, out of*
gracias a	graças a	grazie a	grâce à	*thanks to*
a causa de	por causa de	a causa di	à cause de	*because of*

*Prepositions **en lo bajo de (abajo de) (Sp.)**,*
***embaixo de (na parte de baixo de) (Port.)**,*
nella parte bassa (It.), au bas de (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. *en lo bajo de (abajo de)*, Port. *em baixo de (na parte de baixo de)*, It. *nella parte bassa* and Fr. *au bas de* mean *below, at the foot/bottom of:*

> *Did you know?*
>
> *Guarulhos is the 2nd most populous city in the Brazilian state of São Paulo, the 13th most populous city in Brazil, and is the most populous city in the country which is not a state capital. The population is over 1.3 million people.*

Sp. Vas a encontrar la respuesta *en lo bajo de (abajo de)* la página;

Port. Você vai encontrar a resposta *embaixo da (na parte de baixo da)* página;

It. Troverai la risposta *nella parte bassa della* pagina;

Fr. Tu vas trouver la réponse *au bas de* la page.

- *You will find the answer at the bottom of the page.*

Prepositions *encima de (por arriba de, por encima de) (Sp.), acima de (em cima de, por cima de) (Port.), al di sopra di (sopra) (It.), au-dessus de (par-dessus) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *encima de (por arriba de, por encima de)*, Port. *acima de (em cima de, por cima de)*, It. *al di sopra di (sopra)* and Fr. *au-dessus de (par-dessus)* mean *above*. Look at the example:

Sp. El avión estaba volando *encima de (por encima de; por arriba de)* la ciudad;

Port. O avião estava voando *em cima da (por cima da; acima da)* cidade;

It. L'aereo stava volando *al di sopra della (sopra)* città;

Fr. L'avion volait **au-dessus** (**par-dessus**) **de** la ville.

- *The plane was flying **above** (**over**) the city.*

Prepositions *a través de (Sp.), através de (Port.), attraverso (It.), à travers (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *a través de*, Port. *através de*, It. *attraverso* and Fr. *à travers* express *across, through*:

Sp. Decidieron pasar *a través del* bosque;

Port. Eles decidiram passar *através da* flóresta;

It. Hanno deciso di passare *attraverso* la foresta;

Fr. Ils ont décidé de passer *à travers* la forêt.

- *They decided to go **through** the forest.*

Prepositions *al lado de (junto a) (Sp.), ao lado de (junto de) (Port.), allato a (accanto a) (It.), à côté de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *al lado de* (*junto a*), Port. *ao lado de* (*junto de*), It. *allato a* (*accanto a*) and Fr. *à côté de* mean *next to*:

Sp. El restaurante está *al lado de* (*junto a*) mi casa;

Port. O restaurante está *ao lado da* (*junto da*) minha casa;

It. Il ristorante sta *allato alla* (*accanto alla*) mia casa;

Fr. Le restaurant est *à côté de* ma maison.

- *The restaurant is **next to** my house.*

Prepositions *más allá de (Sp.)*, *além de (Port.)*, *al di là di (It.)*, *au delà de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *más allá de*, Port. *além de*, It. *al di là di* and Fr. *au delà de* mean *beyond*:

Sp. Los exploradores no han viajado nunca *más allá de* los mares;

Port. Os exploradores nunca viajaram *além dos* mares; .

It. Gli esploratori non hanno mai viaggiato *al di là dei* mari;

Fr. Les explorateurs n'ont jamais voyagé *au-delà des* mers.

- *The explorers have never travelled **beyond** the seas.*

Prepositions *acerca de (a propósito de) (Sp.)*, *acerca de (a propósito de) (Port.)*, *circa a (a proposito di) (It.)*, *au sujet de (à propos de) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *acerca de (a propósito de)*, Port. *acerca de (a propósito de)*, It. *circa a (a proposito di)* and Fr. *au sujet de (à propos de)* stand for *about, as regards, concerning*:

Sp. Quiero saber todo *acerca de (a propósito de)* esta historia;

Port. Quero saber tudo *acerca desta (a propósito desta)* história;

It. Voglio sapere tutto *circa a (a proposito di)* questa storia;

Fr. Je veux tout savoir *au sujet de (à propos de)* cette histoire.

*- I want to know everything **about** this story.*

Prepositions *alrededor de (en torno a) (Sp.), ao redor de (em torno de) (Port.), attorno a (intorno a) (It.), autour de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **alrededor de** (**en torno a**), Port. **ao redor de** (**em torno de**), It. **attorno a** (**intorno a**) and Fr. **autour** de express *around*:

Sp. Sueña con viajar **alrededor del** (**en torno al**) mundo;

Port. Ele sonha em viajar **ao redor do** (**em torno do**) mundo;

It. Sogna di viaggiare **attorno al** (**intorno al**) mondo;

Fr. Il rêve de voyager **autour du** monde.

*- He dreams of travelling **around** the world.*

Prepositions *cerca de (Sp.), perto de (Port.), vicino a (It.), près de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **cerca de**, Port. **perto de**, It. **vicino a** and Fr. **près de** mean *near*:

Sp. Mi amigo vive **cerca de** la escuela;

Port. Meu amigo mora **perto da** escola;

It. Il mio amico vive **vicino alla** scuola.;

Fr. Mon ami vit **près de** l'école.

*- My friend lives **near** the school.*

Prepositions *para con (Sp.)*, *para com (Port.)*, *verso (It.)*, *envers (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *para con*, Port. *para com*, It. *verso* and Fr. *envers* mean *towards*:

> Sp. El profesor es muy amable *para con* los alumnos;

> Port. O professor é muito gentil *para com* os alunos;

> It. L'insegnante è molto gentile *verso* gli alunni;

> Fr. Le professeur est très gentil *envers* les élèves.

> - *The teacher is very kind towards the students.*

Prepositions *a lo largo de (Sp.)*, *ao longo de (Port.)*, *lungo (It.)*, *au long de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *a lo largo de*, Port. *ao longo de*, It. *lungo* and Fr. *au long de* mean *along, throughout, during* and can indicate:

- **time (throughout, during):**

> Sp. El festival durará *a lo largo de* una semana;

> Port. O festival vai durar *ao longo de* uma semana;

> It. Il festival durerà *lungo* una settimana;

> Fr. Le festival va durer *au long de* la semaine.

> - *The festival will last throughout a week.*

- **movement over or for the length of (along):**

Sp. Dos hombres caminaron *a lo largo del* río;

Port. Dois homens caminharam *ao longo do* rio;

It. Due uomini hanno camminato *lungo* il fiume;

Fr. Deux hommes ont marché *le long de* la rivière.

- *Two men walked **along** the river.*

Prepositions *al pie de (Sp.), ao pé de (Port.), ai piedi di (It.), au pied de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *al pie de*, Port. *ao pé de*, It. *ai piedi di* and Fr. *au pied de* express *next to; nearby; at the bottom of*:

Sp. Ellos estaban *al pie de* una montaña;

Port. Eles estavam, *ao pé de* uma montanha;

It. Stavano *ai piedi di* una montagna;

Fr. Ils étaient *au pied d'*une montagne.

- *They were **at the bottom of** a mountain.*

Prepositions *en vez de (en lugar de) (Sp.), em vez de (em lugar de) (Port.), invece di (in luogo di) (It.), au lieu de (à la place de) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *en vez de* (*en lugar de*), Port. *em vez de* (*em lugar de*), It. *invece di* (*in luogo di*) and Fr. *au lieu de* (*à la place de*) express *instead of, in place of*:

Sp. *En lugar de* (*en vez de*) ver la televisión, ella decidió leer un
libro;

Port. *Em lugar de* (*em vez de*) assistir a televisão, ela decidiu
ler um livro;

It. *In luogo di* (*invece di*) guardare la televisione, lei ha deciso
di leggere un libro;

Fr. *Au lieu de* (*à la place de*) regarder la télévision, elle a
décidé de lire un livre.

- *Instead of* watching TV, she decided to read a book.

Prepositions *a pesar de (a despecho de)* (Sp.), *apesar de (a despeito de) (Port.),* *malgrado (a dispetto di) (It.), malgré (en dépit de) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *a pesar de* (*a despecho de*), Port.
apesar de (*a despeito de*), It. *malgrado* (*a dispetto di*) and
Fr. *malgré* (*en dépit de*) designate *in spite of, despite*:

Sp. Salí *a pesar de* (*a despecho de*) la lluvia;

Port. Eu saí *apesar da* (*a despeito da*) chuva;

It. Sono uscito *malgrado* (*a dispetto della*) la pioggia;

Fr. Je suis sorti *malgré* (*en dépit de*) la pluie.

- *I went out despite the rain.*

Prepositions *a fin de (Sp.), a fim de (Port.), a scopo di (affinché) (It.), afin que/de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *a fin de*, Port. *a fim de*, It. *a scopo
di* (*affinché, al fine di*) and Fr. *afin que/de* stand for *in order
to*:

Sp. Él fue a una tienda *a fin de* comprar una nueva chaqueta;

Port. Ele foi a uma loja *a fim de* comprar um novo casaco;

It. È andato in un negozio *a scopo di* (*affinché/ al fine di*) comprare una nuova giacca;

Fr. Il est allé dans un magasin *afin d'*acheter une nouvelle veste.

- *He went to a store **in order to** buy a new jacket.*

Prepositions *antes de (Sp.), antes de (Port.), prima di (It.), avant de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *antes de*, Port. *antes de*, It. *prima di* and Fr. *avant de* stand for *before*:

Sp. *Antes de* salir, apagué la luz;

Port. *Antes de* sair, eu apaguei a luz;

It. *Prima di* uscire, ho spento la luce;

Fr. *Avant de* sortir, j'ai éteint la lumière.

- *Before going out I switched off the light.*

Prepositions *después de (Sp.), depois de (Port.), dopo (It.), après (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *después de*, Port. *depois de*, It. *dopo* and Fr. *après* mean *after*:

Sp. *Después de* haber cenado, se fue dormir;

Port. *Depois de* ter jantado, ele foi dormir;

It. **Dopo** aver cenato, è andato dormire;

Fr. **Après** avoir dîné, il est allé dormir.

- *After having dinner he went to sleep.*

Prepositions *delante de (frente a, enfrente) (Sp.), diante de (em frente de) (Port.), dinnanzi a (di fronte a, di faccia a) (It.), en face de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **delante de** (*frente a, enfrente*), Port. **diante de** (*em frente de*), It. **dinnanzi a** (*di fronte a, di faccia a*) and Fr. **en face de** mean *in front of*:

Sp. **Delante de** (**enfrente de, frente a**) nuestra casa hay un gran parque;

Port. **Diante da** (**em frente da**) nossa casa há um grande parque;

It. **Dinnanzi alla** (**di fronte alla, di faccia alla**) nostra casa c'è un grande parco;

Fr. **En face de** notre maison il y a un grand parc.

- *In front of our house there is a big park.*

Prepositions *detrás de (tras) (Sp.), atrás de (por trás de) (Port.), dietro a (It.), derrière (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **detrás de** (*tras*), Port. **atrás de** (*por trás de*), It. **dietro a** and Fr. **derrière** stand for *behind*. It is used when referring to position (e.g. behind the house):

Sp. La escuela se encuentra **detrás del** parque;

Port. A escola fica **atrás do** parque;

It. La scuola si trova **dietro al** parco;

Fr. L'école se trouve **derrière** le parc.

- *The school is **behind** the park.*

It is remarkable that instead of Spanish **detrás de**, the preposition **atrás de** can be used in Latin America.

Sp (Lat. Am.). La escuela se encuentra **atrás del** parque;

- The school is **behind** the park.

NOTE:

*It is worth saying that in Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition Sp. **tras**; Port. **por trás de** is used in more literary or journalistic style often implying hidden behind. Observe the following:*

*Sp. Alguien está **tras** la casa;*
*Port. Alguém está **por trás da** casa;*
*- Someone is **behind** the house.*

However, in Italian and French, the preposition It. **dietro** and Fr. **derrière** is still used in this sense:

It. Qualcuno è **dietro la** casa;

Fr. Quelqu'un est **derrière** la maison.

- *Someone is **behind** the house.*

NOTE:

*Take into consideration that, Sp. **tras** can be used to express <u>after</u> (meaning being in pursuit of) when following the verbs of motion. However, in Portuguese Port. **atrás de** is used and in Italian and French, the preposition It. **dopo di** and Fr. **après** is used in this case:*

Sp. El hombre salió **tras** ella;

Port. O homem saiu **atrás** dela.

It. L'uomo è uscito **dopo di** lei.

Fr. L'homme est sorti **après** elle.

- *The man went out **after** her.*

Prepositions *lejos de (Sp.)*, *longe de (Port.)*, *lontano da (It.)*, *loin de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **lejos de**, Port. **longe de**, It. **lontano da** and Fr. **loin de** mean *away from*:

Sp. Mi hermana vive **lejos del** centro de la ciudad;

Port. Minha irmã vive **longe do** centro da cidade;

It. Mia sorella vive **lontano dal** centro della città;

Fr. Ma soeur vit **loin du** centre-ville.

- *My sister lives **far from** the city center.*

Prepositions *dentro de (en el interior de) (Sp.)*, *dentro de (no interior de) (Port.)*, *dentro (all'interno di) (It.)*, *à l'intérieur de (Fr.)*

702

The prepositions Sp. *dentro de* (*en el interior de*), Port. *dentro de* (*no interior de*), It. *dentro* (*all'interno di*) and Fr. *à l'intérieur de* mean *inside, in:*

Sp. La muñeca está *dentro de* (*en el interior de*) la caja;

Port. A boneca está *dentro da* (*no interior da*) caixa;

It. La bambola è *dentro* la (*all'interno della*) scatola;

Fr. La poupée est *à l'intérieur de* la boîte.

*- The doll is **inside** the box.*

Prepositions *respecto a (con respecto a, con relación a, en cuanto a) (Sp.), a respeito de (com respeito a, em relação a, quanto a) (Port.), rispetto a (riguardo a, in quanto a, in merito a) (It.), par rapport à (quant à) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *respecto a (con respecto a, con relación a, en cuanto a)*, Port. *a respeito de (com respeito a, em relação a, quanto a)*, It. *rispetto a (riguardo a, in quanto a, in merito a)* and Fr. *par rapport à (quant à)* mean *with respect to, in relation to, concerning:*

Sp. Ya oí las noticias *respecto a* la celebración.;

Port. Já ouviu a notícia *a respeito da* celebração;

It. Ho già sentito la notizia *rispetto alla* celebrazione;

Fr. Je l'ai déjà entendu les nouvelles *par rapport à* la célébration.

*- I have already heard the news **regarding** the celebration.*

Prepositions *de acuerdo con (Sp.), de acordo com (Port.), in conformità con (It.), en conformité avec (conformément à) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *de acuerdo con*, Port. *de acordo com*, It. *in conformità con* and Fr. *en conformité avec* (*conformément à*) designate *according to, in accordance with*:

Sp. *De acuerdo con* esta señal de tráfico, debemos girar a la izquierda;

Port. *De acordo com* este sinal de estrada, devemos virar à esquerda;

It. *In conformità con* questo cartello stradale, dobbiamo girare a sinistra;

Fr. *En conformité avec* ce panneau de signalisation de route, nous devons tourner à gauche.

- *In accordance with* this road sign, we must turn left.

Prepositions *fuera de (Sp.), fora de (Port.), fuori di (It.), hors de (en dehors de) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. *fuera de*, Port. *fora de*, It. *fuori di* and Fr. *hors de* (*en dehors de*) mean *outside, out of*:

Sp. Los niños juegan *fuera de* la casa;

Port. As crianças brincam *fora de* casa;

It. I bambini giocano *fuori dalla* casa;

704

Fr. Les enfants jouent **hors de** (**en dehors de**) la maison.

- *The children play **outside** the house.*

Prepositions *gracias a (Sp.)*, *graças a (Port.)*, *grazie a (It.)*, *grâce à (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **gracias a**, Port. **graças a**, It. **grazie a** and Fr. **grâce à** express **thanks to**:

Sp. **Gracias a** mi profesor, yo sé el italiano muy bien;

Port. **Graças ao** meu professor, eu sei o italiano muito bem;

It. **Grazie al** mio insegnante, io so l'italiano molto bene;

Fr. **Merci à** mon professeur, je connais très bien l'Italien.

- ***Thanks to** my teacher, I know Italian very well.*

Prepositions *a causa de (Sp.)*, *por causa de (Port.)*, *a causa di (It.)*, *à cause de (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **a causa de**, Port. **por causa de**, It. **a causa di** and Fr. **à cause de** stand for *because of*:

Sp. La lección fue cancelada **a causa de** la fuerte nevada;

Port. A lição foi cancelada **por causa da** queda de neve pesada;

It. La lezione è stata annullata **a causa della** forte nevicata;

Fr. La leçon a été annulée **à cause de** fortes chutes de neige.

- *The lesson was canceled **because of** the heavy snowfall.*

Contraction of Prepositions with Article

Did you know?

Reggio Calabria or simply Reggio is a city in southern Italy. Reggio has several popular nicknames: "The city of Bronzes", because of the Riace Bronzes - ancient, life-size Greek statues; "the city of bergamot", which is cultivated in the region; and "the city of Fata Morgana", which is an optical phenomenon observed in Italy only from the Reggio coastal side.

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Overview

  Like the English conjunctions *"and"*, *"or"*, *"if"*, *"as well as"*, *"but"* Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French conjunctions are the words which connect two parts of a sentence together. Observe the following:

> Sp. Ella habla francés *e* italiano muy bien;
>
> Port. Ela fala francês *e* italiano muito bem;
>
> It. Lei parla francese *e* italiano molto bene;
>
> Fr. Elle parle très bien français *et* italien.
>
> - *She speaks French **and** Italian very well.*

  Conjunctions are divided into three major groups, **coordinating, subordinating** and **correlative,** in the Romance languages:

Coordinating Conjunctions

  Coordinating conjunctions join similar words or group of words, for example:

> Sp. Yo leo ***pero*** ella duerme;
>
> Port. Eu leio ***mas*** ela dorme;
>
> It. Io leggo ***ma*** lei dorme;
>
> Fr. Je lis ***mais*** elle dort.

707

*- I read **but** she sleeps.*

Note that the two parts of the clause bare independent of each other and could easily be separated by punctuation, in the Romance languages. Study the following:

Yo leo, ella duerme;
Port. Eu leio, ela dorme;
It. Io leggo, lei dorme;
Fr. Je lis, elle dort.
- I read, she sleeps.

Sp. Yo leo. Ella duerme;
Port. Eu leio. Ela dorme;
It. Io leggo. Lei dorme;
Fr. Je lis. Elle dort.
- I read. She sleeps.

Below is a list of the most common *coordinating* conjunctions in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
y	e	e	et	*and*
pero	mas	ma	mais	*but*
o	ou	o	ou	*or*
entonces	então	allora	alors	*so*

Subordinating Conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions connect a dependent clause to a main clause. It is noticeable that dependent clause cannot be used alone as its meaning is not complete without the main clause. Observe the following:

Sp. *Como* él no tiene tiempo, no puede hacerlo;

Port. *Como* ele não tem tempo, ele não pode fazê-lo;

It. **Come** lui non ha tempo, non può farlo;

Fr. **Comme** il n'a pas le temps, il ne peut pas le faire..

- *Since he doesn't have time, he cannot do it.*

Did you know?

Lyon is the 3rd largest city in France, located around 470 km (292 mi) south from Paris. It has a long culinary arts tradition. Lyon is considered "the gastronomic capital of the world". Popular local dishes are: coq au vin, quenelle, gras double, salade lyonnaise, rosette lyonnaise and others.

The main clause is "*he cannot do it*". The clause "*Since he doesn't have time*" is a dependent one and is not complete without the main one. In fact the idea is not that he doesn't want to do it, but he cannot do it since he doesn't have enough time.

It is noticeable that Subordinating conjunctions are usually placed at the beginning of the sentence they introduce in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Below is a list of some frequently used subordinating conjunctions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
a (con) condición de que;	a (com) condição de que;	a condizione che	à condition que	on the condition that

709

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a causa de que	por causa de	a causa di che;	à cause de	*because of;*
merced a que; debido a que	graças a que; devido a	grazie al fatto che; per il fatto che	grâce au fait que; dû au fait de/que	*owing to the fact that; thanks to*
a fin de que	a fim de que	affinché;	afin de/ que	*so that*
a menos que	a menos que	a meno che	à moins de/que	*unless*
antes bien; más bien	antes bem; mas antes	piuttosto	plutôt que	*rather, on the contrary*
antes de que	antes que	prima che (di)	avant de/ que	*before*
después que	depois que	dopo che; dopoché	après que	*after*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
así	assim	perciò; dunque; e così	comme ça, aussi (with invertion)	*thus*
así que; tan pronto como; en cuanto que	assim que; tão logo	appena che	aussitôt que, dès que, à peine (with invertion)	*as soon as, after,*
es por eso que	é por isso que	è per questo; è perciò;	c'est pourquoi; voilà pourquoi	*that is why*
así que; así pues; conque	pois que	cosicché, ebbene	donc; ainsi donc	*therefore*
a pesar de que	apesar de que	nonostante che, malgrado che	malgré que	*despite that*
aun cuando; más que	ainda quando	quandànche	même si	*even if*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aunque; bien que; sin embargo; por más que; no obstante	embora; entre-tanto; no entanto; todavia; contudo; porém; não obstante	però; anche se, benché, sebbene; ciò nonostante; cionondimeno; nondimeno; comunque; tuttavia	quoique, bien que; cependant; toutefois; néan-moins; pourtant	*however; yet; neverthel ess*
como; ya què; pues que; puesto que	como; já que; pois que	come; giacché siccome; poiché	comme; dès lors que; puisque	*as, for, since*
con el objeto de que; con el fin de que	com o objectivo de que; com o fim de que	con l'obiettivo di; allo scopo di che; al fine di/che	dans le but de/que; aux fins de/que; à l'effet de/que	*with the purpose of*
con tal que; siempre que	desde que; sempre que	purché	pourvu que	*provided that, as long as*
cuando	quando	quando	quand	*when*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dado que	dado que	dato che	étant donné que	*given that*
de manera que; de modo que	de maneira que; de modo que; de tal forma que	in maniera che; in modo che	de (telle) manière que; de telle sorte que; de telle façon que	*in such a way that*
en caso de que	em caso de que	in caso di che; nel caso di che	en cas de; au cas où; dans le cas où	*in case that*
en vista de que	tendo em conta o facto de	in considerazione del fatto che	compte tenu du fait que	*in view of the fact that*
excepto que; salvo que	exceto que; salvo que	eccetto che	excepté que; sauf que	*except that*
fuera de que; además de que	além de que	oltre che; oltre a ciò; oltreché	outre que; hormis que	*apart from that*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hasta que	até que	finché; fino a quando	avant de; jusqu'à ce que	*until*
más bien que	ao invés de que	piuttosto che	plutôt que	*rather than*
mientras (que)	enquanto	mentre (che)	pendant que; tandis que	*while*
luego	então	allora	alors	*then*
para que	para que	perché	pour que	*in order that; so that*
por cuanto	por- quanto	in quanto	(pour) autant que; puisque	*inasmuch as*
por más que	por mais que	per quanto	pour autant que	*(as) much as*

714

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por lo tanto; por tanto; por eso; por lo cual	portanto; por isso	pertanto	partant; par suite; par conséquent	*so, therefore*
por razón de que	pela razão de que	per la ragione che	pour la raison que	*for the reason that*
porque	porque	perché	parce que; car	*because*
que	que	che	que	*that*
si	se	se	si	*if*
visto que	visto que	visto che	vu que	*seeing that*
supuesto que	suposto que	supposto che	supposé que; à supposer que	*assumed that*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
una vez que	uma vez que	dal momento che	une fois que	*once*
como	como	come	comme	*as (comparative)*
...que	...(do) que	...che; ...di	...que	*...than*
al igual que; así como	bem como; assim como	così come	ainsi que; aussi bien que	*as well as*
como si	como se	come se	comme si	*as if*
tanto cuanto	tanto quanto	tanto quanto	autant que; autant	*as far as; as much as*

Remember that in the Romance languages, the conjunctions which are used with Sp., Port., Fr. **que** and It. **che** need the subjunctive following them. Otherwise the indicative is used.

Correlative Conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions are pairs of conjunctions.

Below is a list of some commonly used correlative conjunctions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tanto... como	tanto... como	sia...che	et...et	both...and
no...ni...ni	não...nem ...nem	non...né ...né	ni...ni...ne	neither... nor
no sólo...sino también.	não só... mas também	non solo... ma anche	non seulement ...mais encore	not only... but also
o...o; bien... bien; fuera... fuera; ora...ora; será ... ora	ou...ou	o...o; sia...sia	ou (bien) ...ou (bien); soit...soit	either...or (else)

Functions of Conjunctions

All the conjunctions in the Romance languages perform different functions, which are presented below:

Copulative conjunctions

Copulative conjunctions join two or more words, word groups or sentences which have similar function in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. The most frequent copulative conjunctions are:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
y (e)*	**e**	**e**	**et**	*and*
no sólo...sino también.	**não só... mas também**	**non solo...ma anche**	**non seulement ...mais encore**	*not only... but also*
no...ni...ni	**não...nem...nem**	**non...né...né**	**ne...ni...ni**	*neither... nor*
tanto... como	**tanto... como**	**sia...che**	**et...et**	*both...and*

NOTE:

*In Spanish, when the conjunction **y** precedes a word which begins with an i or hi, it changes to an **e** in order to differentiate the words (e.g. Ella habla frances **e** inglés con fluidez – She speaks French and English fluently).*

Sp. Mi colega es muy hábil **y** competente;

Port. Meu colega é muito hábil **e** competente;

It. Il mio collega è molto abile **e** competente;

Fr. Mon collègue est très qualifiée **et** compétent.

- *My colleague is very skilled **and** competent.*

718

Did you know?

Majorca is the biggest island in the Balearic islands, which located in the Mediterranean and belong to Spain. It is a very popular holiday destination. Tourists have been visiting Majorca for over 100 years. About 220 million visitors have been to the island.

Sp. Compré esta casa **no sólo** porque era barata, **sino también** porque estaba en buen estado;

Port. Eu comprei esta casa **não só** porque era barata, **mas também** porque ela estava em bom estado;

It. Ho comprato questa casa, **non solo** perché era a buon mercato, **ma anche** perché era in buone condizioni;

Fr. J'ai acheté cette maison **non seulement** parce qu'elle était bon marché, **mais aussi** parce qu'elle était en bon état.

*- I bought this house **not only** because it was cheap, **but also** because it was in good condition.*

Adversative conjunctions

These conjunctions demonstrate opposition among the units they connect. Below is a list of the most frequent adversative conjunctions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
pero	**mas**	**ma**	**mais**	*but*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aunque; bien que; sin embargo; por más que; no obstante	entretanto; no entanto; todavia; contudo; porém; não obstante	però; anche se, benché, sebbene; ciò nonostante; cionondimeno; nondimeno; comunque; tuttavia	quoique, bien que; cependant; toutefois; néanmoins; pourtant	*however; yet; nevertheless*
antes bien; más bien	antes bem; mas antes	piuttosto	plutôt	*rather*
más bien que	ao invés de que	piuttosto che	plutôt que	*rather than*
fuera de que; además de que	além de que	oltre che; oltre a ciò; oltreché	outre que; hormis que	*apart from that*
excepto (que); salvo (que)	exceto (que); salvo (que)	eccetto (che); tranne (che)	excepté (que); sauf (que)	*except (that)*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
aun cuando; más que	**ainda quando**	**quandanc he**	**même si**	*even if*
antes de que	**antes que**	**prima che (di)**	**avant que**	*before*

Sp. El día estaba caluroso, **sin embargo** (**aunque, no obstante** etc.) no fuimos a la playa;

Port. O dia estava quente, **no entanto** (**porém, não obstante** etc.) não fomos para a praia;

It. La giornata era calda, **comunque** (**però, ciò nonostante** etc.) non siamo andati in spiaggia;

Fr. La journée était chaude, **cependant** (**quoique, néanmoins** etc.) nous ne sommes pas allés à la plage.

- *It was a hot day, **however** (**yet, nevertheless**) we didn't go to the beach.*

Sp. Él va a caminar todos los días, **excepto** cuando hace frío;

Port. Ele vai para uma caminhada todos os dias, **exceto** quando está frio;

It. Egli va a fare una passeggiata ogni giorno, **tranne** quando è freddo;

Fr. Il se promène chaque jour, **sauf** quand il fait froid.

- *He goes for a walk every day, **except** when it is cold.*

Disjunctive conjunctions

Disjunctive conjunctions connect words or sentences in order to indicate different opinions or alternatives. Below are some frequently used disjunctive conjunctions in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
o (u)*	ou	o	ou	or
o...o; bien...bien; fuera... fuera; ora...ora; será ... ora	ou...ou; quer... quer	o...o; sia...sia	ou (bien) ...ou (bien); soit...soit	either... or
no...ni...ni	não...ne m...nem	non...né... né	ni...ni... ne	neither... nor

NOTE:

*In Spanish, if **o** precedes a word which begins with an o̲, it changes to a **u** in order to differentiate the words (e.g. Uno **u** otro plato me va – Either dish is ok for me).*

Sp. ¿Vas a cocinar **o** a limpiar la casa?

Port. Você vai cozinhar **ou** limpar a casa?

It. Cucinerai **o** pulirai la casa?

Fr. Tu vas cuisiner *ou* nettoyer la maison?

- *Will you cook **or** clean the house?*

Did you know?

Natal, the capital of the state of Rio Grande do Norte in northeastern Brazil, is the closest Brazilian state capital to Africa and Europe.

Sp. *O* (***bien, fuera*** and etc.) tú vas conmigo, *o* (***bien, fuera*** and etc.) te quedas;

Port. *Ou* (***quer***) você vai comigo, *ou* (***quer***) você fica;

It. *O* (***sia***) vieni con me, *o* (***sia***) rimani;

Fr. *Ou* (***soit***) tu viens avec moi, *ou* (***soit***) tu restes.

- ***Either*** *you go with me **or** you stay.*

Consecutive conjunctions

Consecutive conjunctions connect words or sentences in order to indicate the result of an action. The most frequent ones are the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
así que; así pues; conque	pois que	dunque; ebbene	donc; ainsi donc	*therefore*
luego	então	allora	alors	*then*

723

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
así	assim	cosicché; e così	comme ça, aussi (with invertion)	*thus*
es por eso que	é por isso que	è per questo; è perciò;	c'est pourquoi; voilà pourquoi	*that is why*
por lo tanto; por tanto; por eso; por lo cual	portanto; por isso	perciò; pertanto	partant; par suite; par conséquent	*so, therefore*
de (tal) manera que; de (tal) modo que	de (tal) maneira que; de (tal) modo que; de (tal) forma que	di (tale) maniera che; in (tale) modo che	de (telle) manière que; de (telle) sorte que; de (telle) façon que	*in such a way that*

It is noticeable that consecutive conjunctions are usually placed at the beginning of the clause they represent in the Romance languages.

Sp. No estudió, *por lo tanto* no pasó el examen;

Port. Ele não estudou, *por isso* não passou no exame;

It. Egli non ha studiato, **perciò** non ha passato l'esame;

Fr. Il n'a pas étudié, **donc** il n'a pas passé l'examen.

- *He did not study, **therefore** he did not pass the exam.*

Did you know?

Parma, a city in northern Italy, is famous for its proscicutto (cured ham), cheese, music and architecture. In 2004 Parma has a food tourism sector, which represented by Parma Golosa and Food Valley.

Sp. Ella lo dijo **de tal manera que** me enojé;

Port. Ela disse isso **de tal maneira que** eu fiquei com raiva;

It. Lei l'ha detto **di maniera che** mi arrabbiassi;

Fr. Elle l'a dit **de telle manière que** je me suis fâché.

- *She said it **in such a way that** I got angry.*

Causal conjunctions

These conjunctions subordinate one clause to another, where one causes the other to happen. Below is a list of the most common causal conjunctions:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
porque	porque	perché	parce que; car	*because*
como; ya que; pues que; puesto que	como; já que; pois que	come; giacché siccome; poiché	comme; dès lors que; puisque	*as, for, since*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
que	que	che	que	*that*
en vista de que	tendo em conta o facto de	in considerazione del fatto che	compte tenu du fait que	*in view of the fact that*
visto que	visto que	visto che	vu que;	*seeing that*
una vez que	uma vez que	dal momento che	du moment que	*once*
supuesto que	suposto que	supposto che	supposé que; à supposer que	*assumed that*
por razón de que	pela razão de que	per la ragione che	pour la raison que	*for the reason that*
dado que	dado que	dato che	étant donné que	*given that*
por cuanto	porquanto	in quanto	(pour) autant que; puisque	*inasmuch as*

Did you know?

Lille, a city in northern France, close to the border with Belgium, is distinguished by Flemish architectural style. It features 17th-century red brick town houses aligned in a row, cobbled pedestrian streets. This architectural style is uncommon in France.

Sp. Mark no vino **porque** estaba ocupado;

Port. Mark não veio **porque** estava ocupado;

It. Mark non è venuto **perché** era occupato;

Fr. Mark n'était pas venu **parce qu'**il était occupé.

*- Mark didn't come **because** he was busy.*

Sp. **Como** no llamaste, salí;

Port. **Como** você não ligou, eu saí;

It. **Come** non hai chiamato, sono partito;

Fr. **Comme** tu n'as pas appelé, je suis partie.

*- **Since** you didn't call, I left.*

Concessive conjunctions

These conjunctions express an idea that implies the opposite of the main part of the sentence. Below is a list of adversative conjunctions in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a pesar de que	apesar de que	nonostante; malgrado che	malgré le fait que	*despite the fact that*

727

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aun cuando/ que; más que	ainda quando/ que; mesmo que	quandanche	même si	*even if*
aunque; bien que; sin embargo; por más que; no obstante	embora; entre- tanto; no entanto; todavia; contudo; porém; não obstante	però; anche se, benché, sebbene; ciò nonostante; ciononostante mime no; nondimeno; comunque; tuttavia	bien que; cepend- ant; toutefois; néan- moins; pourtant	*however; yet; neverthel ess; although*
por más que	por mais que	per quanto che	pour autant que	*(as) much as*

Sp. A ella le gusta cocinar, **aunque** (**bien que** and etc.), no cocina a menudo;

Port. Ela gosta de cozinhar, **embora** (**entretanto** and etc.) ela não cozinhe muitas vezes;

It. Le piace cucinare, **anche se** (**però** and etc.) lei non cucina spesso;

Fr. Elle aime cuisiner, **bien qu**'elle (**néanmoins** and etc.) ne cuisine pas souvent.

- *She likes to cook, **although** she doesn't cook often.*

Sp. *A pesar de que* nos hemos esforzado mucho, no hemos ganado la competencia;

Port. *Apesar de que* nos temos esforçado muito, não ganhamos a competição;

It. *Nonostante* ci siamo sforzati molto, non abbiamo vinto il concorso;

Fr. *Malgré le fait que* nous nous sommes efforcés beaucoup, nous n'avons pas gagné la compétition.

- *Despite the fact that* we have tried hard, we have not won the competition.

Conditional conjunctions

Conditional conjunctions describe the condition that needs to be met in order to fulfil what is implied in the main clause. Below is a list of some frequently used conditional conjunctions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a (con) condición de que;	a (com) condição de que;	a condizione che	à condition que	*on the condition that*
si	se	se	si	*if*
como; ya que; pues que; puesto que	como; já que; pois que	come; giacché siccome; poiché	comme; dès lors que; puisque	*as, for, since*

729

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en caso de que	**em caso de que**	**in caso di che; nel caso**	**en cas que; au cas où; dans le cas où**	*in case that*
con tal que; siempre que	**desde que**	**purché**	**pourvu que**	*provided that, as long as*

Note that Conditional conjunctions usually take the verb either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive. In Portuguese, conditional subjunctives are followed by either the Subjunctive, the Infinitive or the Personal infinitive.

Did you know?

Granada, a city in southern Spain, hosts the Alhambra, a Moorish citadel. It is the most popular construction of the Islamic historical legacy. This makes Granada an attractive tourist destination among other cities of Spain.

Sp. ***En caso de que*** te pierdas, llama a este número;

Port. ***Em caso de que*** você se perca, chame esse número;

It. ***Nel caso*** ti perda, chiama questo numero;

Fr. ***Au cas où*** tu te perdes, appelle ce numéro.

- ***In case that*** *you get lost, call this number.*

Sp. ***Si*** ella quiere ser un médico, debe estudiar mucho;

Port. ***Se*** ela quer ser médica, ela deve estudar muito;

It. ***Se*** lei vuole essere un medico, deve studiare molto;

Fr. *Si* elle veut être un médecin, elle doit beaucoup étudier.

- *If she wants to be a doctor, she must study a lot.*

Final conjunctions

Final conjunctions are coordinating conjunctions and are used to express a clause that indicate the purpose or aim of the main clause, such as:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a fin de que	a fim de que	affinché	afin que	*so that*
con el objeto de que; con el fin de que	com o objectivo de que; com o fim de que	con l'obiettivo di; allo scopo di che; al fine di che	dans le but de/ que; aux fins de que; à l'effet de que	*with the purpose of*
para que	para que	perché	pour que	*in order that; so that*

Note that final conjunctions must be followed by the Subjunctive.

Sp. Te recuerdo *para que* no te olvides de comprar un regalo;

Port. Lembro-te (Braz. Port. Lembro-lhe) *para que* você não se esqueça de comprar um presente;

It. Ti ricordo *perché* non dimentichi di comprare un regalo;

Fr. Je te rappelle *pour que* tu n'oublies pas d'acheter un cadeau.

*- I remind you **so that** you will not forget to buy a gift.*

Sp. Ella trabaja duro *a fin de que (para que)* pueda comprar una casa;

Port. Ela trabalha duro *a fim de que (para que)* ela possa comprar uma casa;

It. Lavora sodo *affinché (perché)* possa comprare una casa;

Fr. Elle travaille dur *afin qu' (pour qu')* elle puisse acheter une maison.

*- She works hard **so that** she can buy a house.*

Temporal conjunctions

These conjunctions indicate the time and tells us when something has happened. Below is a list of some common temporal conjunctions in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
cuando	quando	quando	quand	*when*
así que; tan pronto como; en cuanto que	assim que; tão logo	appena che	aussitôt que, dès que, à peine (with invertion)	*as soon as, after*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
con tal que; siempre que	desde que; sempre que	purché	pourvu que; du moment que	*as long as*
antes de que	antes que	prima che (di)	avant que/ de	*before*
después que	depois que	dopo che; dopoché	après que	*after*
mientras (que)	enquanto	mentre (che)	pendant que; tandis que	*while*
a menos que	a menos que	a meno che	à moins que	*unless*
hasta que	até que	finché; fino a quando	jusqu'à ce que	*until*

Did you know?

Vitória is the capital city of Espírito Santo state in Brazil. It was considered the 4th best city to live in Brazil by United Nations in 2013, and has the highest gross domestic product per capita.

Sp. *Cuando* llegué, ella ya estaba durmiendo;

Port. *Quando* eu cheguei, ela já estava dormindo;

It. *Quando* sono arrivato, lei stava già dormendo;

Fr. *Quand* je suis arrivé, elle dormait déjà.

- *When I arrived she was already sleeping.*

733

Sp. *Mientras* él leía el periódico, su esposa hablaba por teléfono;

Port. *Enquanto* ele lia o jornal, sua mulher falava por telefone;

It. *Mentre* lui leggeva il giornale, sua moglie parlava al telefono;

Fr. *Pendant qu'*il lisait le journal, sa femme parlait au téléphone.

- *While* he was reading the newspaper, his wife spoke on the phone.

Comparative conjunctions

Comparative conjunctions are used to compare two ideas. Below are some common comparative conjunctions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
como	como	come	comme	as (comparative)
...del/de la que	...(do) que	...che; ...di quello que	...que	...than
al igual que; así como	bem como; assim como	così come	ainsi que; aussi bien que	as well as,
como si	como se	come se	comme si	as if
tanto cuanto	tanto quanto	tanto quanto	autant que; autant autant	as far as; as much as

Sp. Ella gana más dinero ***del que*** ganó hace dos años;

Port. Ela ganha mais dinheiro ***do que*** ganhou há dois anos;

It. Lei guadagna più soldi ***di quelli che*** ha guadagnato due anni fa;

Fr. Elle gagne plus d'argent ***qu'***elle en a gagné il y a deux ans.

- *She earns more money **than** she earned a couple of years ago.*

Did you know?

Messina is a city in norths Sicily. It is famous for the Norman Messina Cathedral (12 century), with the 3 late Gothic portals, the early 15th century windows and an astronomical clock on the bell tower.

Sp. Habla ***como si*** fuera mi jefe;

Port. Ele fala ***como se*** ele fosse meu chefe;

It. Parla ***come se*** fosse il mio capo;

Fr. Il parle ***comme s'***il était mon patron.

- *He talks **as if** he were my boss.*

Complementizer

These conjunctions are used to subordinate one sentence to another. The most frequent is:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
que	**que**	**che**	**que**	*that*

Sp. Gabriela dijo ***que*** iba a venir a la fiesta esta noche;

Port. Gabriela disse ***que*** ia vir à festa esta noite;

It. Gabriela ha detto ***che*** stava per venire alla festa di stasera;

Fr. Gabriela a dit **qu'**elle allait venir à la fête ce soir.

*- Gabriela said **that** she was going to come to the party tonight.*

CHAPTER 10:
INTERJECTIONS

Overview

Did you know?

Strasbourg, a French city, is the official seat of the European Parliament. The city is located near the border with Germany. Strasbourg is also one of the capitals of the European Union (along with Brussels, Luxembourg).

Like in English, in the Romance languages an interjection is a word that is used to express emotion, feeling or spontaneous reaction in the spoken language and can indicate exclamations (*wow!*), greetings (*hey!*), curses (*bloody hell!*) and etc. The use of these short words will make a speaker sound more natural and authentic.

Types of Interjections

Below are the most common interjections that are used:

- **To express greetings and farewell** in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Buenos día; ¡Buen día	Bom dia!	Buongiorno! Buondì!	Bonjour!	Good day! Good morning!

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Buenas tardes!	Boa tarde!	Buon pomeriggio!	Bon après-midi!	*Good afternoon!*
¡Buenas tardes!	Boa tarde!	Buonasera!	Bonsoir!	*Good evening!*
¡Buenas noches!	Boa noite!	Buonanotte!	Bonne nuit!	*Good night!*
¡Hola!	Olá!	Ciao! Salve!	Bonjour!	*Hello!*
¡Chao! ¡Chau!	Tchau!	Ciao!	Salut!; Ciao! Tchao! Coucou! (informal)	*Hi! Bye!*
¿Cómo está Usted?	Como o senhor está?	Come sta?	Comment allez-vous?	*How are you? (formal)*
¿Cómo estás? ¿Qué tal? ¿Qué ondas?	Como vai? (Braz. Port. Como você está?) E aí? Beleza?	Come stai?	Ça va?	*How are you? (informal)*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Adiós!; ¡Abur!; ¡Salú! (El Salvador)	Adeus!; Falou! (Brazil, slang) Um abraço! (Brazil, familiar) Fui! (slang) Beijo! (slang)	Arrivederci! (informal) Arrivederla! (formal) Addio!	Au revoir! Adieu! Babaille! (colloquial Quebec)	*Goodbye!*
¡Hasta luego! ¡Hasta después! ¡Nos vemos!	Até logo! Até já! Até!	A più tardi! A dopo! Di nuovo! Ci vediamo!	À plus! À plus tard!	*See you later!*
¡Hasta pronto!	Até breve!	A presto!	À bientôt!	*See you soon!*
¡Hasta la próxima! ¡Hasta la vista!	Até mais! Até! (informal)	Alla prossima!	À la prochaine!	*See you next time!*
¡Hasta mañana!	Até amanhã!	A domani!	À demain!	*See you tomorrow!*

• **Used as a polite formula when the speaker is introduced to somebody:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Encantado(-a)! ¡Mucho gusto!	Prazer em conhecê-lo(-la)!	Piacere! Molto lieto(-a)!	Enchanté (-e)!	*Nice to meet you!*

- Used to answer the telephone:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Aló!; ¡Diga! ¡Dígame!; ¡Bueno! (Mexico)	Alô!	Pronto!	Allô!	*Hello! Speaking!*

- Used as greeting upon someone's arrival:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Bienvenido (-a;-os;-as)!	Bem-vindo (-a,-os,-as)!	Benvenuto (-a;-i;-e)!	Bienvenue!	*Welcome!*

- To indicate gratitude or politeness in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Gracias!	Obrigado (-a)! valeu (familiar)	Grazie!	Merci!	*Thank you! Thanks!*
¡Muchas gracias!	Muito obrigado (-a)!	Grazie mille!	Merci beaucoup!	*Thank you very much!*
¡De nada!	De nada! Disponha!	Di niente! Prego! Di nulla!	De rien! Service! (Switzerland)	*You're welcome!*
¡No hay de qué!	Não há de quê!	Non c'è di che!	Il n'y pas de quoi!	*Don't mention it!*
¡Por favor! ¡Porfa! (informal por favor)	Por favor! Faz favor! Por favorzinho! (familiar)	Per favore! Per piacere! Prego!	S'il te plait! (informal) S'il vous plait! (formal)	*Please!*

- To express: 1) a regret or sorrow; 2) a request for attention or request to pass; 3) a request for someone to repeat something

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Lo siento	Desculpe-me; Foi mal (Brazil, informal)	Mi dispiace	Je suis désolé(-e)	*I'm sorry*
Con permiso	Com licença	Con permesso	Excusez-moi (formal) Excusez-moi (informal)	*Excuse me* (request for attention or request to pass)
Perdón	Perdão	Mi scusi (formal) Mi scusa (informal)	Pardon	*Pardon me* (request for attention or request to pass)
¿Cómo?	Como? Oi? (informal)	Come? Prego?	Comment? Quoi? (informal)	*Pardon?* (interrogative) (expressing of surprise or asking to repeat)

- **To mean praise and approval:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Felicitaciones!	Parabéns!	Congratulazioni! Auguri! Felicitazioni!	Félicitations!	*Congratulations!*

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
¡Bravo!	Bravo! Boa!	Bravo!	Bravo!	*Bravo! Well done!*

- To say or write to someone who is celebrating something (his or her birthday or some other holiday) in order to express the good wishes:

Spanish	Portugu ese	Italian	French	English
¡Felicitaci ones!	Parabé ns!	Congratulaz ioni! auguri!	Félicitati ons!	*Congratula tion!*
¡Feliz navidad!	Feliz natal!	Buon natale!	Joyeux noël!	*Merry Christmas!*
¡Feliz año nuevo!	Feliz ano novo!	Buon anno!	Bonne année!	*Happy New Year!*
¡Feliz Pascua!	Feliz Páscoa!	Buona Pasqua!	Joyeuses Pâques!	*Happy Easter!*

- To wish something (e.g.: a nice day, safe trip, good night and etc.):

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Que tenga un buen día! (formal) ¡Que tengas un buen día! (informal)	Tenha um bom dia!	Buona giornata!	Bonne journée!	*Have a nice day!*
¡Que tenga una buena noche! ¡Que tengas una buena noche!	Tenha uma boa noite!	Buona serata!	Bonne soirée!	*Have a good evening!*
¡Que duermas bien! ¡Arrorró (Canary Islands)	Durma bem!	Dormi bene!	Dormez bien! (formal) Dors bien! (informal)	*Sleep well!*
¡Que tenga dulces sueños! (formal) ¡Que tengas dulces sueños! (informal)	Bons sonhos!	Sogni d'oro!	Faites de beaux rêves! (formal) Fais de beaux rêves! (informal)	*Sweet dreams!*
¡Buen viaje!	Boa viagem!	Buon viaggio!	Bon voyage!	*Have a safe journey!*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Buena suerte!	Boa sorte!	Buona fortuna!	Bonne chance!	*Good luck!*
¡Buenas vacaciones!	Desejo-lhe umas boas férias! (formal) Desejo-te (Braz. te desejo) umas boas férias! (informal)	Buone vacanze!	Bonne vacances!	*Have a good holiday!*
¡Salud!	Saúde! Santinho!	Salute!	À tes (vos) souhaits! À tes amours!	*Bless you! (said after a sneeze)*
¡Salud!	Saúde!	Salute! Alla salute!	Santé! À la tienne! (formal) À la vôtre! (informal) À ta (vôtre) santé!	*Cheers! (toast when drinking alcohol)*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Chinchín!	Tchim-tchim! Tim tim!	Cin cin! (Cincin!)	Tchin-tchin!	Chin chin (toasting)
¡Buen apetito! ¡Que Aproveche! ¡Buen provecho!	Bom apetite!	Buon appetito!	Bon appétit!	Enjoy your meal! Bon appetit!

- **To express agreement or disagreement:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Sí! ¡Sip!\¡Síp! (colloquial)	Sim!	Sì!	Oui! Ouais! (colloquial) Si! (contradict a negative statement)	Yes!
¡No!	Não!	No!	Non!	No!

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Vale! ¡Dale! (Latin America) ¡De acuerdo! ¡Está bien! Sale!\Sale y vale! (Mexico)	Está bem! Tá bem! Tá! Tudo bem! Está bom! Tá bom!	Va bene! D'accordo! Ebbene!	D'accord! Bien! C'est bien! C'est bon!	*Okay!*
¡Claro que sí!	Claro que sim!	Certamente! Ma certo!	Bien sûr!	*Of course!*
¡Es la verdad! ¡Verdad! ¡De veras!	Verdade! É verdade!	È vero!	C'est vrai!	*That's true!* *True!*
¡Eso es! ¡Es cierto! ¡Eso mismo! ¡Eso!	Com certeza! Certeza! É certo! Isso! Isso mesmo! É! Isso aí! É isso aí!	Proprio così! Appunto! Giust'appunto!	C'est cela! C'est ça (colloquial) Ça y est! C'est cela même!	*That's it!* *That's right!*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Exacto! ¡Exactamente!	Exato! Exatamente!	Esatto! Esattamente!	Exact! Exactement!	*Exact! Exactly!*
En efecto!	De fato!	Infatti!	En effet!	*Indeed!*

- **To indicate that someone does not consider the matter important enough:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Dices tonterías! Dices disparates!	Você fala bobagem! Você fala besteira!	Dici sciocchezze! Dici fesserie! Parli a vanvera!	Tu dis n'importe quoi! Tu dis des bêtises!	*Nonsense! Whatever!*
No importa!	Não importa!	Non importa!	Peu importe! Cela (Ça) ne fait rien!	*It doesn't matter!*

- **Used as a reply to an unimportant statement, which indicates indifference on the part of the speaker:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¿Y pues?	E daí? Grande coisa!	E allora?	Et alors?	*So what?*

- **To express astonishment, admiration or surprise:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Guao! ¡Guau! ¡Uau!	Uau! Uia!	Guai! Bah!	Waouh! Ouah! Oh là là! Ayoye! (Quebec)	*Wow!*
¡Ah!\¡Ay! ¡Híjole! (Mexico, Costa Rica, Bolivia, Ecuador etc.)	A!\Ah!	Ahi! Ahime!	Ah! Coudonc! (Canada)	*Oh!*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Anda! ¡Hombre! ¡Caray! ¡Caramba! ¡Jo! ¡Juelacha! /¡Juelule! (El Salvador, colloquial) ¡Hostia!\ ¡Es la hostia! (vulgar) ¡Órale! (Mexico) ¡Rediós! ¡Jolines! ¡Leche!	Bá! (Rio Gr. do Sul) Caraca! Caramba! \Carago! Nossa! Oh, gente! Pô! Puxa! (colloquial) Safa! Com a breca! Cacilda! Porcaria!	Bah! Va'! Accidempoli! Accidenti! Ma! Acciderba! Ammazza! Cribbio! Diamine! Osteria! Per la miseria! Porca vacca! Porca miseria! Porca troia! Porca puttana!	Aweille! \Enweille! (Quebec) Mazette! Mince! Mais! Malepeste ! (dated) Viarge! (Quebec, vulgar, slang) Nom de bleu! (Switzerland) La vache! Nom d'un chien! Nom d'une pipe! Nom de Dieu! Bon sang de bonsoir !	*Damn! Come on!* (expression surprise, in either a positive or negative sense)
¡Dios mío!	Meu Deus! Deus meu!	Dio mio!	Mon Dieux!	*My God!*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Jesús!	Jesus Cristo!	Gesù Cristo!	Mon Dieu!	*Jesus Christ! Good Lord!*
¡Cielos!	Céus!	Cielo!	Ciel!	*Good heavens!*
¡Señor!	Senhor!	Signore!	Seigneur!	*Lord!*
¡Por Dios! ¡Por el amor de Dios!	Por Deus! Pelo amor de Deus!	Per l'amor di Dio Caspita! Per carità! Perdio!	Pour l'amour de Dieu! Nom de Dieu!	*For God's sake!*
¡Madre mía!	Mamma mia!	Mamma mia!	Mamma mia!	*Mamma mia!*

- **To express pain or sorrow:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Ay!	Ai!	Ahi!	Aïe! Ayoye ! \Ouille! (Quebec)	*Ouch!*
¡Ay!	Ah!	Ahimè! Aimè!	Ha! Hélas!	*Ah! Alas!*

- **To express encouragement:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Vamos! ¡Alá! ¡Ea! ¡Olé!	Vamos! Bora! ēia! Vamos lá! Vamo! Vamo lá!	Andiamo! Alé! Avanti! Orsù! Su! Suvvia!	Allez! Allez-y! Vas-y! Aweille/ Enweille! (Canada)	*Let's..* *Let's go!*

- **To indicate exclamation to get attention:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Ey! ¡Oiga! ¡Oye! ¡Che! (in Argentine, Uruguay, Bolivia, Paraguay);	Ei! Epa!	Ehi! Ehilà! Ohilà!	Ohé!	*Hey!*

- **To express irritation, anger or annoyed remark:**

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
¡Vete a la mierda! ¡Vete a la verga! ¡Chupe mantequil la de mi culo!	Foda-se! Foda você! Vai se fuder! Chispa!	Vai a farti friggere! Vai a fare in culo! Fanculo! Vaffanculo!	Va te faire foutre! Vas te faire enculer!	*Fuck you, Fuck off, Go to hell* (vulgar)
¡Diablo!\ ¡Diablos! ¡Diantre!\ ¡Diantres!	Diabo! \Diabos! Diacho!	Diavolo!	Diable! Diantre!	*Bloody hell! Damn!*
¡Coño! ¡Maldito!	Droga! Pindarol as!	Accidenti! Mannaggia!	Zut!\ Zut alors! Punaise!	*Damn!*
¡Mierda!	Merda!	Merda!	Merde!	*Shit!* (vulgar)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Carajo! ¡Joder! ¡Puñetas! ¡Porras! ¡Qué pasada!	Caralho! Cacete! Boceta! Puta merda! Porra! \Poça!	Cazzo! \Sticazzi! Cazzo duro!	Putain! Putain de merde! Bordel de merde! Bordel! (Quebec) Câlisse! Tabarnak! Crisse! Calvaire!	*Fuck!* (vulgar)
¡Hijo de puta! ¡Jueputa! (Central America) ¡La madre que te parió!	Filho da puta!	Figlio di puttana!	Fils de pute! Fils de garce!	*Son of a bitch* (vulgar)
¡Tu madre!	Tua (Braz. Sua) mãe!	Tua madre!	Ta mère!	*lit.: Your mother; Shut the fuck up* (an insult, especially in reply to another insult) (vulgar, offensive)

Spanish	Portugue se	Italian	French	English
¡Basta!	Basta!	Basta! Abbastanza!	Ça suffit!	*Enough!*
¡Tch! ¡Chito!\ ¡Chitón!	Psiu! \Psit! Xiu!\Xô!	Pst! Sst!	Chut!	*Shh! Hush!* (requestin g silence)
¡Silencio!	Silêncio!	Silenzio!	Silence!	*Silence!*
¡Cállate! ¡Punto en boca!	Cale-se! Cala a boca! Cale a boca!	Taci! Zitto!	Tais-toi! La ferme! Ferme ta gueule! \Ta gueule! (slang, vulgar, offensive)	*Shut up! Shut your mouth!*

- **To tell someone to use his\her caution:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Cuidado! ¡Aguas!	Cuidado!	Fate attenzione! (formal) Fa' attenzione! (informal)	Faites attention! (formal) Fais attention! (informal)	*Be careful!*

- **Used as a cry of distress or a request for assistance:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Socorro! ¡Ayuda!	Socorro! Ajuda!	Aiuto!	Au secours!	*Help!*

- **Used as acknowledgement of a mistake:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Ups!	Ups!\Ops! \Opa!	Ops!	Oups!	*Oops!*

- **Used as a pause for thought to introduce a new topic or reinforcement of a question or filler, which expresses hesitation or pause in speech:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Eh... Este...	É...	Ehm... Ecco...	Euh...	*Uh..., Um...*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Entonces...	Então...	Allora...	Alors...	*So..*
Bueno\ Vale... Dale\Sale ... (Mexico)	Bem\ Bom...	Ba\Beh! \Bè... Bene\Ben ...	Bah!\Ben! Bien! \Bon!	*Well..*
Como...	Tipo...	Tipo...	Comme..,	*Like..*
Sabes...	Você sabe...	Sai...	Tu sais (T'sais)...	*You know...*
Es decir...	Ou seja...	Cioè...	C'est-à-dire...	*That is (to say)..*
Entendiste?	Entendeu? Viu?	Capito?	Compris? Tu vois?	*Understood?*
Hein?	Hein? Né? Será?	Neh?	Hein? Pigé? Hé? (Quebec)	*Huh? (a tag question)*

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
No?	Não?	No?	Non?	*OK?* *isn't it?* *\doesn't it?* (used as filler at the end of a sentence)
Verdad?	Verdade?	Vero? Nevvero?	Vrai? N'est-ce pas?	*Right?*

- **To express the sound of a sneeze:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Achís!	Atchim!	Eccì!	Atchoum!	*Artishoo!* *Achoo!*

- **To express animal sounds:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Miau!	Miau!	Miao!	Miaou!	*Meow!* (cat's sound)
Guau-guau! Gua-gua!	Au-au!	Bau-bau! Arf-arf!	Wouaff-wouaff!	*Bow-bow!* *Woof-woof* (dog's sound)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Pio-pio!	Piu-piu!	Chip-chip!	Cui-cui!	*Tweet!* *Chirp!* (bird's sound)

Interjections with Exclamatory Words

(See Exclamations with Interrogative Pronouns p.168)

Did you know?

Las Palmas is a capital of Gran Canaria island, in the Canary Islands, around 150 km (93 ml) off northwestern Africa. Las Palmas is considered "the best climate in the world", with warm temperatures throughout the year.

VERB CHARTS

Regular Verbs

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	Indicative mood			
	Present tenses			
Present tense	*trabajo*	*trabalho*	*lavoro*	*je travaille*
Present Perfect	*he trabajado*	*tenho trabalhado*	*ho lavorato*	*j'ai travaillé*
	Past tenses			
Preterite	*trabajé*	*trabalhei*	*lavorai*	*je travaillai*
Imperfect	*trabajaba*	*trabalhava*	*lavoravo*	*je travaillais*
Past Perfect	*hube trabajado*	*tinha trabalhado*	*ebbi lavorato*	*j'eus travaillé*
Pluperfect	*había trabajado*	*trabalhara*	*avevo lavorato*	*j'avais travaillé*
	Future tense			

VERB CHARTS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Future	*trabajaré*	*trabalharei*	*lavorerò*	*je travailler-ai*
Future Perfect	*habré trabajado*	*terei trabalhado*	*avrò lavorato*	*j'aurai travaillé*
Conditionals				
Conditional present	*trabajaría*	*trabalharia*	*lavorerei*	*je travailler-ais*
Conditional Perfect (Past)	*habría trabajado*	*teria trabalhado*	*avrei lavorato*	*j'aurais travaillé*
Subjunctive mood				
Present tenses				
Present tense	*trabaje*	*trabalhe*	*lavori*	*je travaille*
Present Perfect	*haya trabajado*	*tenha trabalhado*	*abbia lavorato*	*j'aie travaillé*
Past tenses				
Past tense	1st option *trabaj ara* 2nd option *trabaj ase*	*trabalhasse*	*lavorassi*	*je travaill-asse*

	Spanish		Portuguese	Italian	French
Past Perfect	1st option *hubiera trabajado*	2nd option *hubiese trabajado*	*tivesse trabalhado*	*avessi lavorato*	*j'eusse travaillé*
	Future tenses				
Future tense	*trabajare*		*trabalhar*	—	—
Future Perfect	*hubiere trabajado*		*tiver trabalhado*	—	—
	Imperative mood				
	trabaja (tu) *trabaje (usted)* *trabajemos (nosotros)* *trabajad (vosotros)* *trabajen (ustedes)*		*trabalha (tu)* *trabalhe (você)* *trabalhemos (nós)* *trabalhai (vós)* *trabalhem (vocês)*	*lavora (tu)* *lavori (Lei)* *lavoriamo (noi)* *lavorate (voi)* *lavorino (Loro)*	*travaille (tu)* *travaillez (vous)* *travaillons (nous)* *travaillez (vous)* *travaillez (vous)*
	Infinitive				
	trabajar		*trabalhar*	*lavorare*	*travailler*
	Compound infinitive				

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	haber trabajado	*ter trabalhado*	*avere lavorato*	*avoir travaillé*
	Participle			
Present Participle (gerund)	*trabajando*	*trabalh- ando*	*(gerund) lavor ando* / *(part. pres) lavor ante*	*travaillant*
Compound Present Participle	——	*tendo trabalhado*	——	——
Past Participle	*trabajado*	*trabalhado*	*lavorato*	*travaillé*

Irregular Verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Present Tense				
Haber (he, has, ha, hemos, han)	**Haver** (hei, hás, há, havemos, haveis, hão)	**Avere** (ho, hai, ha, abbiamo, avete, hanno)	**Avoir** (j'ai, tu as, il\elle a, nous avons, vous avez, ils\elles ont)	*To have*
Tener (tengo, tienes, tiene, tienen)	**Ter** (tenho, tens, tem, temos, tendes, têm)	**Tenere** (tengo, tieni, tiene, tengono)	——	*To have*

VERB CHARTS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Ser (soy, eres, es, somos, sois, son)	**Ser** (sou, és, é, somos, sois, são)	**Essere** (sono, sei, è, siamo, siete, sono)	**Être** (suis, es, est, sommes, êtes, sont)	*To be*
Estar (estoy, estás, están)	**Estar** (estou, estás, está, estão)	**Stare** (stai, stanno)	___	*To be*
Ir (voy, vas, va, vamos, vais, van)	**Ir** (vou, vais, vai, vamos, ides, vão)	**Andare** (vado, vai, va, vanno)	**Aller** (vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont)	*To go*
Dar (doy, dais)	**Dar** (dou, dás, dá, damos, dais, dão)	**Dare** (dai, dà, danno)	***Donner*** (regular)	*To give*
Hacer (hago)	**Fazer** (faço)	**Fare** (faccio, fai, facciamo, fanno)	**Faire** (faisons, faites, font)	*To do*
Decir (digo, dices, dice, dicen)	**Dizer** (digo, diz)	**Dire** (dico, dici, dice, diciamo, dicono)	**Dire** (disons, dites, disent)	*To say*
Poder (puedo, puedes, puede, pueden)	**Poder** (posso)	**Potere** (posso, puoi, può, possiamo, possono)	**Pouvoir** (peux, peux, peut, peuvent)	*Can*
Querer (quiero, quieres, quiere, quieren)	**Querer** (quer)	**Volere** (voglio, vuoi, vuole, vogliamo, vogliono)	**Vouloir** (veux, veux, veut, veulent)	*To want*
Saber (sé)	**Saber** (sei)	**Sapere** (so, sai, sa, sappiamo, sanno)	**Savoir** (sais, sais, sait)	*To know*

764

VERB CHARTS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Poner (pongo)	**Pôr** (ponho, pões, põe, pomos, pondes, poem)	**Porre** (pongo, poni, pone, poniamo, ponete, pongono)	**Mettre** (mets, mets, met)	*To put*
Conocer (conozco)	**Conhecer** (conheço)	***Conoscere*** (regular)	**Connaître** (connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent)	*To get to know*
Venir (vengo, vienes, viene, vienen)	**Vir** (venho, vens, vem, vimos, vindes, vêm)	**Venire** (vengo, vieni, viene, vengono)	**Venir** (viens, viens, vient, viennent)	*To come*
Dormir (duermo, duermes, duerme, duermen)	**Dormir** (durmo)	***Dormire*** (regular)	**Dormir** (dors, dors, dort)	*To sleep*
Sentir (siento, sientes, siente, sienten)	**Sentir** (sinto)	***Sentire*** (regular)	**Sentir** (sens, sens, sent)	*To feel*
Morir (muero, mueres, muere, mueren)	***Morrer*** (regular)	**Morire** (muoio, muori, muore, muoiono)	**Mourir** (meurs, meurs, meurt, meurent)	*To die*
Preterite				
Ser (fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron)	***Ser*** (fui, foste, foi, fomos, fostes, foram)	***Essere*** (fui, fosti, fu, fummo, foste, furono)	***Être*** (fus, fus, fut, fûmes, fûtes, furent)	*To be*

VERB CHARTS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Estar (estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron)	**Estar** (estive, estiveste, esteve, estivemos, estivestes, estiveram)	**Stare** (stetti, stesti, stette, stemmo, steste, stettero)	*(no equivalent)*	*To be*
Haber (hube, hubiste, hubo, hubimos, hubisteis, hubieron)	**Haver** (houve, houveste, houve, houvemos, houvestes, houveram)	**Avere** (ebbi, avesti, ebbe, avemmo, aveste, ebbero)	**Avoir** (eus, eus, eut, eûmes, eûtes, eurent)	*To have*
Poner (puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusisteis, pusieron)	**Pôr** (pus, puseste, pôs, pusemos, pusestes, puseram)	**Mettere** (misi, mettesti, mise, mettemmo, metteste, misero)	**Mettre** (mis, mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent)	*To put*
Hacer (hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron)	**Fazer** (fiz, fizeste, fez, fizemos, fizestes, fizeram)	**Fare** (feci, facesti, fece, facemmo, faceste, fecero)	**Faire** (fis, fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent)	*To do*
Decir (dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dijeron)	**Dizer** (disse, disseste, disse, dissemos, dissestes, disseram)	**Dire** (dissi, dicesti, disse, dicemmo, diceste, dissero)	**Dire** (dis, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent)	*To say'*

766

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Venir (vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinisteis, vinieron)	**Vir** (vim, vieste, veio, viemos, viestes, vieram)	**Venire** (venni,venne, vennero)	**Venir** (vins, vins, vint, vînmes, vîntes, vinrent)	*To come*
Saber (supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supisteis, supieron)	**Saber** (soube, soubeste, soube, soubemos, soubestes, souberam)	**Sapere** (seppi, seppe, seppero)	**Savoir** (sus, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent)	*To know*
—	—	**Prendere** (presi, prese, presero)	**Prendre** (pris, pris, prit, primes, prîtes, prirent)	*To take*
Conocer (regular)	**Conhecer** (regular)	**Conoscere** (conobbi, conobbe, conobbero)	**Connaître** (connus, connus, connut, connûmes, connûtes, connurent)	*To know*
Leer (regular)	**Ler** (regular)	**Leggere** (lessi, lesse, lessero)	**Lire** (lus, lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent)	*To read*
Escribir (regular)	**Escrever** (regular)	**Scrivere** (scrissi, scrisse, scrissero) vedere	**Écrire** (écrivis, écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent)	*To write*

VERB CHARTS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Tener (tuve, tuviste, tuvo, tuvimos, tuvisteis, tuvieron)	**Ter** (regular)	**Tenere** (tenni, tenne, tennero)	**Tenir** (tins, tins, tint, tînmes, tîntes, tînrent)	*To have\to hold*
Traer (traje, trajiste, trajo, trajimos, trajisteis, trajeron)	**Trazer** (trouxe, trouxeste, trouxe, trouxemos, trouxestes, trouxeram)	**Portare** (regular)	**Apporter** (regular)	*To bring*

768

INDEX